

Free Pascal supplied units :  
Reference guide.

---

Reference guide for standard Free Pascal units.

1.8  
July 2000

Michaël Van Canneyt  
Florian Klämpfl

---

# Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>The CRT unit.</b>	<b>25</b>
1.1	Types, Variables, Constants . . . . .	25
1.2	Procedures and Functions . . . . .	26
	AssignCrt . . . . .	26
	CursorBig . . . . .	27
	ClrEol . . . . .	27
	ClrScr . . . . .	28
	CursorOff . . . . .	28
	CursorOn . . . . .	28
	Delay . . . . .	28
	DelLine . . . . .	29
	GotoXY . . . . .	29
	HighVideo . . . . .	30
	InsLine . . . . .	30
	KeyPressed . . . . .	31
	LowVideo . . . . .	31
	NormVideo . . . . .	32
	NoSound . . . . .	32
	ReadKey . . . . .	33
	Sound . . . . .	33
	TextBackground . . . . .	33
	TextColor . . . . .	34
	TextMode . . . . .	34
	WhereX . . . . .	35
	WhereY . . . . .	35
	Window . . . . .	35
<b>2</b>	<b>The DOS unit.</b>	<b>37</b>
2.1	Types, Variables, Constants . . . . .	37
	Constants . . . . .	37
	Types . . . . .	38

	Variables . . . . .	39
2.2	Function list by category . . . . .	40
	File handling . . . . .	40
	Directory and disk handling . . . . .	40
	Process handling . . . . .	41
	System information . . . . .	41
2.3	Functions and Procedures . . . . .	41
	AddDisk . . . . .	41
	DiskFree . . . . .	42
	DiskSize . . . . .	42
	DosExitCode . . . . .	43
	DosVersion . . . . .	43
	EnvCount . . . . .	44
	EnvStr . . . . .	44
	Exec . . . . .	45
	FExpand . . . . .	45
	FindClose . . . . .	45
	FindFirst . . . . .	46
	FindNext . . . . .	47
	FSearch . . . . .	47
	FSplit . . . . .	47
	GetCBreak . . . . .	48
	GetDate . . . . .	48
	GetEnv . . . . .	49
	GetFAttr . . . . .	49
	GetFTime . . . . .	50
	GetIntVec . . . . .	51
	GetLongName . . . . .	51
	GetShortName . . . . .	51
	GetTime . . . . .	51
	GetVerify . . . . .	52
	Intr . . . . .	52
	Keep . . . . .	52
	MSDos . . . . .	53
	PackTime . . . . .	53
	SetCBreak . . . . .	54
	SetDate . . . . .	54
	SetFAttr . . . . .	54
	SetFTime . . . . .	54
	SetIntVec . . . . .	55

SetTime . . . . .	55
SetVerify . . . . .	55
SwapVectors . . . . .	55
UnPackTime . . . . .	55
<b>3 The DXELOAD unit</b>	<b>56</b>
3.1 Introduction . . . . .	56
3.2 Constants, types and variables . . . . .	56
Constants . . . . .	56
Types . . . . .	56
3.3 Functions and Procedures . . . . .	56
dx_load . . . . .	56
<b>4 The EMU387 unit</b>	<b>58</b>
4.1 Functions and procedures . . . . .	58
npxsetup . . . . .	58
<b>5 The GETOPTS unit.</b>	<b>59</b>
5.1 Types, Constants and variables : . . . . .	59
Constants . . . . .	59
Types . . . . .	59
Variables . . . . .	60
5.2 Procedures and functions . . . . .	60
GetLongOpts . . . . .	60
Getopt . . . . .	60
<b>6 The GPM unit</b>	<b>63</b>
6.1 Introduction . . . . .	63
6.2 Constants, types and variables . . . . .	63
constants . . . . .	63
Types . . . . .	64
Variables . . . . .	65
6.3 Functions and procedures . . . . .	65
Gpm_AnyDouble . . . . .	65
Gpm_AnySingle . . . . .	66
Gpm_AnyTriple . . . . .	66
Gpm_Close . . . . .	66
Gpm_FitValues . . . . .	66
Gpm_FitValuesM . . . . .	66
Gpm_GetEvent . . . . .	67
Gpm_GetLibVersion . . . . .	68

Gpm_GetServerVersion . . . . .	68
Gpm_GetSnapshot . . . . .	68
Gpm_LowerRoi . . . . .	69
Gpm_Open . . . . .	69
Gpm_PopRoi . . . . .	69
Gpm_PushRoi . . . . .	69
Gpm_RaiseRoi . . . . .	70
Gpm_Repeat . . . . .	70
Gpm_StrictDouble . . . . .	70
Gpm_StrictSingle . . . . .	70
Gpm_StrictTriple . . . . .	71
<b>7 The GO32 unit</b>	<b>72</b>
7.1 Introduction . . . . .	72
7.2 Protected mode memory organization . . . . .	72
What is DPMI . . . . .	72
Selectors and descriptors . . . . .	72
FPC specialities . . . . .	73
DOS memory access . . . . .	73
I/O port access . . . . .	73
Processor access . . . . .	73
Interrupt redirection . . . . .	73
Handling interrupts with DPMI . . . . .	74
Protected mode interrupts vs. Real mode interrupts . . . . .	74
Creating own interrupt handlers . . . . .	74
Disabling interrupts . . . . .	74
Hardware interrupts . . . . .	74
Software interrupts . . . . .	76
Real mode callbacks . . . . .	78
7.3 Types, Variables and Constants . . . . .	79
Constants . . . . .	79
Predefined types . . . . .	80
Variables. . . . .	81
7.4 Functions and Procedures . . . . .	81
allocate_ldt_descriptors . . . . .	81
allocate_memory_block . . . . .	83
copyfromdos . . . . .	83
copytodos . . . . .	84
create_code_segment_alias_descriptor . . . . .	84
disable . . . . .	84

dosmemfillchar . . . . .	85
dosmemfillword . . . . .	86
dosmemget . . . . .	86
dosmemmove . . . . .	86
dosmemput . . . . .	87
enable . . . . .	87
free_ldt_descriptor . . . . .	87
free_memory_block . . . . .	87
free_rm_callback . . . . .	88
get_cs . . . . .	88
get_descriptor_access_rights . . . . .	88
get_ds . . . . .	88
get_linear_addr . . . . .	89
get_meminfo . . . . .	89
get_next_selector_increment_value . . . . .	90
get_page_size . . . . .	90
get_pm_interrupt . . . . .	90
get_rm_callback . . . . .	91
get_rm_interrupt . . . . .	94
get_run_mode . . . . .	94
get_segment_base_address . . . . .	95
get_segment_limit . . . . .	95
get_ss . . . . .	95
global_dos_alloc . . . . .	96
global_dos_free . . . . .	97
inportb . . . . .	97
inportl . . . . .	97
inportw . . . . .	98
lock_code . . . . .	98
lock_data . . . . .	98
lock_linear_region . . . . .	99
outportb . . . . .	99
outportl . . . . .	99
outportw . . . . .	100
realintr . . . . .	100
seg_fillchar . . . . .	101
seg_fillword . . . . .	101
segment_to_descriptor . . . . .	102
seg_move . . . . .	102
set_descriptor_access_rights . . . . .	102

set_pm_interrupt . . . . .	103
set_rm_interrupt . . . . .	104
set_segment_base_address . . . . .	104
set_segment_limit . . . . .	104
tb_size . . . . .	105
transfer_buffer . . . . .	105
unlock_code . . . . .	105
unlock_data . . . . .	105
unlock_linear_region . . . . .	106
<b>8 The GRAPH unit.</b>	<b>107</b>
8.1 Introduction . . . . .	107
Requirements . . . . .	107
A word about mode selection . . . . .	107
8.2 Constants, Types and Variables . . . . .	112
Types . . . . .	112
8.3 Function list by category . . . . .	112
Initialization . . . . .	112
screen management . . . . .	113
Color management . . . . .	113
Drawing primitives . . . . .	114
Filled drawings . . . . .	114
Text and font handling . . . . .	115
8.4 Functions and procedures . . . . .	115
Arc . . . . .	115
Bar . . . . .	115
Bar3D . . . . .	115
Circle . . . . .	116
ClearDevice . . . . .	116
ClearViewPort . . . . .	116
CloseGraph . . . . .	116
DetectGraph . . . . .	116
DrawPoly . . . . .	117
Ellipse . . . . .	117
FillEllipse . . . . .	117
FillPoly . . . . .	117
FloodFill . . . . .	117
GetArcCoords . . . . .	118
GetAspectRatio . . . . .	118
GetBkColor . . . . .	118

GetColor . . . . .	118
GetDefaultPalette . . . . .	118
GetDriverName . . . . .	118
GetFillPattern . . . . .	119
GetFillSettings . . . . .	119
GetGraphMode . . . . .	119
GetImage . . . . .	119
GetLineSettings . . . . .	119
GetMaxColor . . . . .	119
GetMaxMode . . . . .	120
GetMaxX . . . . .	120
GetMaxY . . . . .	120
GetModeName . . . . .	120
GetModeRange . . . . .	120
GetPalette . . . . .	121
GetPaletteSize . . . . .	121
GetPixel . . . . .	121
GetTextSettings . . . . .	121
GetViewSettings . . . . .	121
GetX . . . . .	121
GetY . . . . .	122
GraphDefaults . . . . .	122
GraphErrorMsg . . . . .	122
GraphResult . . . . .	122
ImageSize . . . . .	123
InitGraph . . . . .	123
InstallUserDriver . . . . .	123
InstallUserFont . . . . .	124
Line . . . . .	124
LineRel . . . . .	124
LineTo . . . . .	124
MoveRel . . . . .	124
MoveTo . . . . .	125
OutText . . . . .	125
OutTextXY . . . . .	125
PieSlice . . . . .	125
PutImage . . . . .	125
PutPixel . . . . .	126
Rectangle . . . . .	126
RegisterBGIDriver . . . . .	126



RegisterBGIFont . . . . .	126
RestoreCRTMode . . . . .	126
Sector . . . . .	127
SetActivePage . . . . .	127
SetAllPalette . . . . .	127
SetAspectRatio . . . . .	127
SetBkColor . . . . .	127
SetColor . . . . .	128
SetFillPattern . . . . .	128
SetFillStyle . . . . .	128
SetGraphBufSize . . . . .	128
SetGraphMode . . . . .	129
SetLineStyle . . . . .	129
SetPalette . . . . .	129
SetRGBPalette . . . . .	129
SetTextJustify . . . . .	130
SetTextStyle . . . . .	130
SetUserCharSize . . . . .	130
SetViewPort . . . . .	131
SetVisualPage . . . . .	131
SetWriteMode . . . . .	131
TextHeight . . . . .	131
TextWidth . . . . .	131
8.5 Target specific issues . . . . .	132
DOS . . . . .	132
WINDOWS 32-BIT . . . . .	132
LINUX . . . . .	132
<b>9 The HEAPTRC unit.</b>	<b>133</b>
9.1 Purpose . . . . .	133
9.2 Usage . . . . .	133
9.3 Constants, Types and variables . . . . .	134
9.4 Functions and procedures . . . . .	135
DumpHeap . . . . .	135
MarkHeap . . . . .	135
SetExtraInfo . . . . .	136
SetHeapTraceOutput . . . . .	137
<b>10 The IPC unit.</b>	<b>138</b>
10.1 Types, Constants and variables : . . . . .	138
Variables . . . . .	138

Constants . . . . .	138
Types . . . . .	139
10.2 Functions and procedures . . . . .	143
ftok . . . . .	143
msgget . . . . .	143
msgsnd . . . . .	143
msgrcv . . . . .	144
msgctl . . . . .	144
semget . . . . .	147
semop . . . . .	147
semctl . . . . .	148
shmget . . . . .	152
shmat . . . . .	153
shmdt . . . . .	153
shmctl . . . . .	153
<b>11 The LINUX unit.</b>	<b>156</b>
11.1 Type, Variable and Constant declarations . . . . .	156
Types . . . . .	156
Variables . . . . .	159
Constants . . . . .	160
11.2 Function list by category . . . . .	163
File Input/Output routines . . . . .	163
General File handling routines . . . . .	164
Pipes, FIFOs and streams . . . . .	165
Directory handling routines . . . . .	165
Process handling . . . . .	165
Signals . . . . .	166
System information . . . . .	166
Terminal functions . . . . .	167
Port input/output . . . . .	167
Utility routines . . . . .	167
11.3 Functions and procedures . . . . .	168
Access . . . . .	168
Alarm . . . . .	169
AssignPipe . . . . .	169
AssignStream . . . . .	170
BaseName . . . . .	172
CFMakeRaw . . . . .	172
CFSetISpeed . . . . .	173

---

CFSetOSpeed . . . . .	173
Chown . . . . .	173
Chmod . . . . .	174
Clone . . . . .	175
CloseDir . . . . .	176
CreateShellArgV . . . . .	176
DirName . . . . .	177
Dup . . . . .	178
Dup2 . . . . .	178
EpochToLocal . . . . .	179
Execl . . . . .	180
Execle . . . . .	180
Execlp . . . . .	181
Execv . . . . .	182
Execve . . . . .	183
Execvp . . . . .	184
FD_ZERO . . . . .	184
FD_Clr . . . . .	185
FD_IsSet . . . . .	185
FD_Set . . . . .	185
fdClose . . . . .	185
fdFlush . . . . .	186
fdOpen . . . . .	186
fdRead . . . . .	187
fdSeek . . . . .	188
fdTruncate . . . . .	188
fdWrite . . . . .	189
FExpand . . . . .	189
FLock . . . . .	189
FNMatch . . . . .	190
FSearch . . . . .	190
FSplit . . . . .	191
FSSStat . . . . .	191
FStat . . . . .	192
Fcntl . . . . .	193
Fcntl . . . . .	194
Fork . . . . .	194
FRename . . . . .	194
GetDate . . . . .	195
GetDateTime . . . . .	196

GetDomainName . . . . .	196
GetEGid . . . . .	196
GetEUid . . . . .	197
GetEnv . . . . .	197
GetEpochTime . . . . .	198
GetFS . . . . .	198
GetGid . . . . .	199
GetHostName . . . . .	199
GetLocalTimezone . . . . .	200
GetPid . . . . .	200
GetPPid . . . . .	200
GetPriority . . . . .	201
GetTime . . . . .	201
GetTimeOfDay . . . . .	202
GetTimeOfDay . . . . .	202
GetTimezoneFile . . . . .	202
GetUid . . . . .	202
Glob . . . . .	203
GlobFree . . . . .	203
IOCtl . . . . .	204
IOPerm . . . . .	204
IsATTY . . . . .	205
S_ISBLK . . . . .	205
S_ISCHR . . . . .	205
S_ISDIR . . . . .	205
S_ISFIFO . . . . .	205
S_ISLNK . . . . .	206
S_ISREG . . . . .	206
S_ISSOCK . . . . .	206
Kill . . . . .	207
LStat . . . . .	207
Link . . . . .	208
LocalToEpoch . . . . .	210
MkFifo . . . . .	210
MMap . . . . .	210
MUnMap . . . . .	212
Nice . . . . .	212
Octal . . . . .	213
OpenDir . . . . .	213
pause . . . . .	214

PClose . . . . .	214
POpen . . . . .	215
ReadDir . . . . .	216
ReadLink . . . . .	216
ReadPort . . . . .	217
ReadPortB . . . . .	217
ReadPortL . . . . .	217
ReadPortW . . . . .	218
ReadTimezoneFile . . . . .	218
SeekDir . . . . .	218
Select . . . . .	219
SelectText . . . . .	220
SetPriority . . . . .	220
Shell . . . . .	220
SigAction . . . . .	221
SigPending . . . . .	222
SigProcMask . . . . .	222
SigRaise . . . . .	223
SigSuspend . . . . .	223
Signal . . . . .	224
StringToPPchar . . . . .	224
SymLink . . . . .	225
SysInfo . . . . .	226
TCDrain . . . . .	227
TCFlow . . . . .	227
TCFlush . . . . .	228
TCGetAttr . . . . .	228
TCGetPGrp . . . . .	229
TCSendBreak . . . . .	229
TCSetAttr . . . . .	229
TCSetPGrp . . . . .	230
TTYName . . . . .	230
TellDir . . . . .	230
Umask . . . . .	230
Uname . . . . .	231
UnLink . . . . .	231
Utime . . . . .	231
WaitPid . . . . .	232
WritePort . . . . .	233
WritePortB . . . . .	233

WritePortL . . . . .	233
WritePortW . . . . .	233
<b>12 The MATH unit</b>	<b>235</b>
12.1 Constants and types . . . . .	235
12.2 Function list by category . . . . .	236
Min/max determination . . . . .	236
Angle conversion . . . . .	236
Trigonometric functions . . . . .	236
Hyperbolic functions . . . . .	237
Exponential and logarithmic functions . . . . .	237
Number converting . . . . .	237
Statistical functions . . . . .	237
Geometrical functions . . . . .	238
12.3 Functions and Procedures . . . . .	238
arccos . . . . .	238
arcosh . . . . .	238
arcsin . . . . .	239
arctan2 . . . . .	240
arsinh . . . . .	240
artanh . . . . .	241
ceil . . . . .	241
cosh . . . . .	242
cotan . . . . .	242
cycletorad . . . . .	242
degtograd . . . . .	243
degtorad . . . . .	243
floor . . . . .	244
frexp . . . . .	244
gradtodeg . . . . .	245
gradtorad . . . . .	245
hypot . . . . .	246
intpower . . . . .	246
ldexp . . . . .	247
lnxpl . . . . .	247
log10 . . . . .	248
log2 . . . . .	248
logn . . . . .	249
max . . . . .	249
maxIntValue . . . . .	250

maxvalue . . . . .	250
mean . . . . .	251
meanandstddev . . . . .	252
min . . . . .	253
minIntValue . . . . .	253
minvalue . . . . .	254
momentskewkurtosis . . . . .	255
norm . . . . .	255
popnstddev . . . . .	256
popnvariance . . . . .	257
power . . . . .	257
radtocycle . . . . .	258
radtodeg . . . . .	258
radtograd . . . . .	259
randg . . . . .	259
sincos . . . . .	260
sinh . . . . .	261
stddev . . . . .	261
sum . . . . .	262
sumofsquares . . . . .	262
sumsandsquares . . . . .	263
tan . . . . .	264
tanh . . . . .	264
totalvariance . . . . .	265
variance . . . . .	265
<b>13 The MMX unit</b>	<b>267</b>
13.1 Variables, Types and constants . . . . .	267
13.2 Functions and Procedures . . . . .	268
Emms . . . . .	268
<b>14 The MsMouse unit</b>	<b>269</b>
14.1 Constants, types and variables . . . . .	269
14.2 Functions and procedures . . . . .	270
GetLastButtonPress . . . . .	270
GetLastButtonRelease . . . . .	271
GetMouseState . . . . .	271
HideMouse . . . . .	272
InitMouse . . . . .	273
LPressed . . . . .	273
MPressed . . . . .	274

RPressed . . . . .	274
SetMouseAscii . . . . .	274
SetMouseHideWindow . . . . .	275
SetMousePos . . . . .	275
SetMouseShape . . . . .	276
SetMouseSpeed . . . . .	277
SetMouseWindow . . . . .	277
SetMouseXRange . . . . .	278
SetMouseYRange . . . . .	278
ShowMouse . . . . .	278
<b>15 The Objects unit.</b>	<b>280</b>
15.1 Constants . . . . .	280
15.2 Types . . . . .	281
15.3 Procedures and Functions . . . . .	282
NewStr . . . . .	282
DisposeStr . . . . .	283
Abstract . . . . .	283
RegisterObjects . . . . .	283
RegisterType . . . . .	283
LongMul . . . . .	285
LongDiv . . . . .	285
15.4 TRect . . . . .	285
TRect.Empty . . . . .	286
TRect.Equals . . . . .	286
TRect.Contains . . . . .	287
TRect.Copy . . . . .	287
TRect.Union . . . . .	287
TRect.Intersect . . . . .	288
TRect.Move . . . . .	289
TRect.Grow . . . . .	289
TRect.Assign . . . . .	290
15.5 TObject . . . . .	290
TObject.Init . . . . .	290
TObject.Free . . . . .	291
TObject.Done . . . . .	291
15.6 TStream . . . . .	292
TStream.Get . . . . .	292
TStream.StrRead . . . . .	293
TStream.GetPos . . . . .	294



TStream.GetSize . . . . .	294
TStream.ReadStr . . . . .	295
TStream.Open . . . . .	295
TStream.Close . . . . .	295
TStream.Reset . . . . .	296
TStream.Flush . . . . .	296
TStream.Truncate . . . . .	296
TStream.Put . . . . .	296
TStream.StrWrite . . . . .	297
TStream.WriteStr . . . . .	297
TStream.Seek . . . . .	297
TStream.Error . . . . .	297
TStream.Read . . . . .	298
TStream.Write . . . . .	298
TStream.CopyFrom . . . . .	298
15.7 TDosStream . . . . .	299
TDosStream.Init . . . . .	300
TDosStream.Done . . . . .	300
TDosStream.Close . . . . .	300
TDosStream.Truncate . . . . .	301
TDosStream.Seek . . . . .	301
TDosStream.Open . . . . .	302
TDosStream.Read . . . . .	303
TDosStream.Write . . . . .	303
15.8 TBufStream . . . . .	303
TBufStream.Init . . . . .	304
TBufStream.Done . . . . .	304
TBufStream.Close . . . . .	305
TBufStream.Flush . . . . .	305
TBufStream.Truncate . . . . .	306
TBufStream.Seek . . . . .	306
TBufStream.Open . . . . .	306
TBufStream.Read . . . . .	306
TBufStream.Write . . . . .	307
15.9 TMemoryStream . . . . .	307
TMemoryStream.Init . . . . .	307
TMemoryStream.Done . . . . .	308
TMemoryStream.Truncate . . . . .	308
TMemoryStream.Read . . . . .	308
TMemoryStream.Write . . . . .	309

15.10	TCollection	309
	TCollection.Init	310
	TCollection.Load	310
	TCollection.Done	311
	TCollection.At	311
	TCollection.IndexOf	312
	TCollection.GetItem	313
	TCollection.LastThat	313
	TCollection.FirstThat	314
	TCollection.Pack	314
	TCollection.FreeAll	315
	TCollection.DeleteAll	316
	TCollection.Free	317
	TCollection.Insert	317
	TCollection.Delete	318
	TCollection.AtFree	318
	TCollection.FreeItem	319
	TCollection.AtDelete	319
	TCollection.ForEach	320
	TCollection.SetLimit	321
	TCollection.Error	321
	TCollection.AtPut	321
	TCollection.AtInsert	322
	TCollection.Store	322
	TCollection.PutItem	323
15.11	TSortedCollection	323
	TSortedCollection.Init	324
	TSortedCollection.Load	324
	TSortedCollection.KeyOf	324
	TSortedCollection.IndexOf	325
	TSortedCollection.Compare	325
	TSortedCollection.Search	326
	TSortedCollection.Insert	327
	TSortedCollection.Store	328
15.12	TStringCollection	328
	TStringCollection.GetItem	328
	TStringCollection.Compare	329
	TStringCollection.FreeItem	329
	TStringCollection.PutItem	330
15.13	TStrCollection	330

TStrCollection.GetItem . . . . .	330
TStrCollection.Compare . . . . .	330
TStrCollection.FreeItem . . . . .	331
TStrCollection.PutItem . . . . .	331
15.14 TUnSortedStrCollection . . . . .	332
TUnSortedStrCollection.Insert . . . . .	332
15.15 TResourceCollection . . . . .	333
TResourceCollection.KeyOf . . . . .	333
TResourceCollection.GetItem . . . . .	333
TResourceCollection.FreeItem . . . . .	334
TResourceCollection.PutItem . . . . .	334
15.16 TResourceFile . . . . .	334
TResourceFile Fields . . . . .	334
TResourceFile.Init . . . . .	335
TResourceFile.Done . . . . .	335
TResourceFile.Count . . . . .	335
TResourceFile.KeyAt . . . . .	335
TResourceFile.Get . . . . .	335
TResourceFile.SwitchTo . . . . .	336
TResourceFile.Flush . . . . .	336
TResourceFile.Delete . . . . .	336
TResourceFile.Put . . . . .	336
15.17 TStringList . . . . .	336
TStringList.Load . . . . .	337
TStringList.Done . . . . .	337
TStringList.Get . . . . .	337
15.18 TStrListMaker . . . . .	337
TStrListMaker.Init . . . . .	338
TStrListMaker.Done . . . . .	338
TStrListMaker.Put . . . . .	338
TStrListMaker.Store . . . . .	338
<b>16 The PORTS unit</b>	<b>339</b>
16.1 Introduction . . . . .	339
16.2 Types, constants and variables . . . . .	339
Types . . . . .	339
variables . . . . .	340
<b>17 The PRINTER unit.</b>	<b>341</b>
17.1 Types, Constants and variables : . . . . .	341
17.2 Procedures and functions . . . . .	341

AssignLst . . . . .	341
<b>18 The SOCKETS unit.</b>	<b>343</b>
18.1 Types, Constants and variables : . . . . .	343
18.2 Functions and Procedures . . . . .	344
Accept . . . . .	344
Accept . . . . .	346
Accept . . . . .	346
Accept . . . . .	346
Bind . . . . .	346
Bind . . . . .	347
Connect . . . . .	347
Connect . . . . .	348
Connect . . . . .	348
Connect . . . . .	348
GetPeerName . . . . .	349
GetSocketName . . . . .	349
GetSocketOptions . . . . .	350
Listen . . . . .	350
Recv . . . . .	351
Send . . . . .	351
SetSocketOptions . . . . .	352
Shutdown . . . . .	352
Sock2File . . . . .	352
Sock2Text . . . . .	353
Socket . . . . .	353
SocketPair . . . . .	353
Str2UnixSockAddr . . . . .	353
<b>19 The STRINGS unit.</b>	<b>354</b>
19.1 Functions and procedures. . . . .	354
StrAlloc . . . . .	354
StrCat . . . . .	354
StrComp . . . . .	355
StrCopy . . . . .	355
StrDispose . . . . .	356
StrECopy . . . . .	356
StrEnd . . . . .	357
StrIComp . . . . .	357
StrLCat . . . . .	358
StrLComp . . . . .	358

StrLCopy . . . . .	359
StrLen . . . . .	359
StrLComp . . . . .	360
StrLower . . . . .	360
StrMove . . . . .	361
StrNew . . . . .	361
StrPas . . . . .	362
StrPCopy . . . . .	362
StrPos . . . . .	363
StrRScan . . . . .	363
StrScan . . . . .	363
StrUpper . . . . .	364
<b>20 The SYSUTILS unit.</b>	<b>365</b>
20.1 Constants and types . . . . .	365
20.2 Function list by category . . . . .	368
String functions . . . . .	368
Formatting strings . . . . .	369
File input/output routines . . . . .	369
File handling routines . . . . .	370
Date/time routines . . . . .	370
20.3 Miscellaneous conversion routines . . . . .	371
20.4 Date and time functions . . . . .	372
Date and time formatting characters . . . . .	372
TDateTime . . . . .	373
Date . . . . .	373
DateTimeToFileDate . . . . .	373
DateTimeToStr . . . . .	374
DateTimeToString . . . . .	374
DateTimeToSystemTime . . . . .	375
DateTimeToTimeStamp . . . . .	375
DateToStr . . . . .	376
DayOfWeek . . . . .	376
DecodeDate . . . . .	377
DecodeTime . . . . .	377
EncodeDate . . . . .	378
EncodeTime . . . . .	378
FileDateToDateTime . . . . .	379
FormatDateTime . . . . .	379
IncMonth . . . . .	380

IsLeapYear . . . . .	380
MSecsToTimeStamp . . . . .	381
Now . . . . .	381
StrToDate . . . . .	382
StrToDateTime . . . . .	382
StrToTime . . . . .	383
SystemTimeToDateTime . . . . .	384
Time . . . . .	384
TimeStampToDateTime . . . . .	384
TimeStampToMSecs . . . . .	385
TimeToStr . . . . .	385
20.5 Disk functions . . . . .	386
AddDisk (Linux only) . . . . .	386
CreateDir . . . . .	386
DiskFree . . . . .	387
DiskSize . . . . .	387
GetCurrentDir . . . . .	388
RemoveDir . . . . .	388
SetCurrentDir . . . . .	388
20.6 File handling functions . . . . .	389
ChangeFileExt . . . . .	389
DeleteFile . . . . .	389
DoDirSeparators . . . . .	390
ExpandFileName . . . . .	390
ExpandUNCFileName . . . . .	391
ExtractFileDir . . . . .	391
ExtractFileDrive . . . . .	392
ExtractFileExt . . . . .	392
ExtractFileName . . . . .	392
ExtractFilePath . . . . .	392
ExtractRelativePath . . . . .	393
FileAge . . . . .	393
FileClose . . . . .	394
FileCreate . . . . .	394
FileExists . . . . .	395
FileGetAttr . . . . .	395
FileGetDate . . . . .	396
FileOpen . . . . .	397
FileRead . . . . .	397
FileSearch . . . . .	398

FileSeek . . . . .	398
FileSetAttr (Not on Linux) . . . . .	399
FileSetDate (Not on Linux) . . . . .	399
FileTruncate . . . . .	399
FileWrite . . . . .	400
FindClose . . . . .	400
FindFirst . . . . .	400
FindNext . . . . .	401
GetDirs . . . . .	401
RenameFile . . . . .	402
SetDirSeparators . . . . .	402
20.7 PChar functions . . . . .	403
Introduction . . . . .	403
StrAlloc . . . . .	404
StrBufSize . . . . .	404
StrDispose . . . . .	404
StrPCopy . . . . .	405
StrPLCopy . . . . .	405
StrPas . . . . .	405
20.8 String handling functions . . . . .	405
AdjustLineBreaks . . . . .	405
AnsiCompareStr . . . . .	406
AnsiCompareText . . . . .	407
AnsiExtractQuotedStr . . . . .	408
AnsiLastChar . . . . .	408
AnsiLowerCase . . . . .	409
AnsiQuotedStr . . . . .	409
AnsiStrComp . . . . .	409
AnsiStrIComp . . . . .	410
AnsiStrLastChar . . . . .	411
AnsiStrLComp . . . . .	412
AnsiStrLIComp . . . . .	412
AnsiStrLower . . . . .	413
AnsiStrUpper . . . . .	414
AnsiUpperCase . . . . .	414
AppendStr . . . . .	415
AssignStr . . . . .	415
BCDToInt . . . . .	416
CompareMem . . . . .	416
CompareStr . . . . .	417

CompareText . . . . .	418
DisposeStr . . . . .	418
FloatToStr . . . . .	419
FloatToStrF . . . . .	419
FloatToText . . . . .	421
FmtStr . . . . .	422
Format . . . . .	422
FormatBuf . . . . .	427
IntToHex . . . . .	428
IntToStr . . . . .	428
IsValidIdent . . . . .	429
LeftStr . . . . .	430
LoadStr . . . . .	430
LowerCase . . . . .	430
NewStr . . . . .	431
QuotedStr . . . . .	431
RightStr . . . . .	431
StrFmt . . . . .	432
StrLFmt . . . . .	432
StrToInt . . . . .	433
StrToIntDef . . . . .	433
Trim . . . . .	434
TrimLeft . . . . .	435
TrimRight . . . . .	435
UpperCase . . . . .	436



## About this guide

This document describes all constants, types, variables, functions and procedures as they are declared in the units that come standard with Free Pascal.

Throughout this document, we will refer to functions, types and variables with `typewriter` font. Functions and procedures have their own subsections, and for each function or procedure we have the following topics:

**Declaration** The exact declaration of the function.

**Description** What does the procedure exactly do ?

**Errors** What errors can occur.

**See Also** Cross references to other related functions/commands.

The cross-references come in two flavors:

- References to other functions in this manual. In the printed copy, a number will appear after this reference. It refers to the page where this function is explained. In the on-line help pages, this is a hyperlink, on which you can click to jump to the declaration.
- References to Unix manual pages. (For Linux related things only) they are printed in `typewriter` font, and the number after it is the Unix manual section.

The chapters are ordered alphabetically. The functions and procedures in most cases also, but don't count on it. Use the table of contents for quick lookup.

# Chapter 1

## The CRT unit.

This chapter describes the CRT unit for Free Pascal, both under DOS LINUX and WINDOWS 32-BIT. The unit was first written for DOS by Florian klämpfl. The unit was ported to LINUX by Mark May<sup>1</sup>, and enhanced by Michaël Van Canneyt and Peter Vreman. It works on the LINUX console, and in xterm and rxvt windows under X-Windows. The functionality for both is the same, except that under LINUX the use of an early implementation (versions 0.9.1 and earlier of the compiler) the crt unit automatically cleared the screen at program startup. This chapter is divided in two sections.

- The first section lists the pre-defined constants, types and variables.
- The second section describes the functions which appear in the interface part of the CRT unit.

### 1.1 Types, Variables, Constants

Color definitions :

```
Black = 0;  
Blue = 1;  
Green = 2;  
Cyan = 3;  
Red = 4;  
Magenta = 5;  
Brown = 6;  
LightGray = 7;  
DarkGray = 8;  
LightBlue = 9;  
LightGreen = 10;  
LightCyan = 11;  
LightRed = 12;  
LightMagenta = 13;  
Yellow = 14;  
White = 15;  
Blink = 128;
```

Miscellaneous constants

```
TextAttr: Byte = $07;
```

---

<sup>1</sup>Current e-mail address [mmay@dnaco.net](mailto:mmay@dnaco.net)

```
TextChar: Char = ' ';
CheckBreak: Boolean = True;
CheckEOF: Boolean = False;
CheckSnow: Boolean = False;
DirectVideo: Boolean = False;
LastMode: Word = 3;
WindMin: Word = $0;
WindMax: Word = $184f;
ScreenWidth = 80;
ScreenHeight = 25;
```

Some variables for compatibility with Turbo Pascal. However, they're not used by Free Pascal.

```
var
  checkbreak : boolean;
  checkeof : boolean;
  checksnow : boolean;
```

The following constants define screen modes on a DOS system:

```
Const
  bw40 = 0;
  co40 = 1;
  bw80 = 2;
  co80 = 3;
  mono = 7;
```

The `TextAttr` variable controls the attributes with which characters are written to screen.

```
var TextAttr : byte;
```

The `DirectVideo` variable controls the writing to the screen. If it is `True`, the the cursor is set via direct port access. If `False`, then the BIOS is used. This is defined under DOS only.

```
var DirectVideo : Boolean;
```

The `Lastmode` variable tells you which mode was last selected for the screen. It is defined on DOS only.

```
var lastmode : Word;
```

## 1.2 Procedures and Functions

### AssignCrt

Declaration: `Procedure AssignCrt (Var F: Text);`

Description: `AssignCrt` Assigns a file `F` to the console. Everything written to the file `F` goes to the console instead. If the console contains a window, everything is written to the window instead.

Errors: None.

See also: `Window` (35)

**Listing:** crtex/ex1.pp

---

```
Program Example1;  
uses Crt;  
  
{ Program to demonstrate the AssignCrt function . }  
  
var  
    F : Text;  
begin  
    AssignCrt(F);  
    Rewrite(F); { Don't forget to open for output! }  
    WriteLn(F, 'This is written to the Assigned File');  
    Close(F);  
end.
```

---

## CursorBig

Declaration: `Procedure CursorBig ;`

Description: Makes the cursor a big rectangle. Not implemented on LINUX.

Errors: None.

See also: `CursorOn (28)`, `CursorOff (28)`

## ClrEol

Declaration: `Procedure ClrEol ;`

Description: `ClrEol` clears the current line, starting from the cursor position, to the end of the window. The cursor doesn't move

Errors: None.

See also: `DelLine (29)`, `InsLine (30)`, `ClrScr (28)`

**Listing:** crtex/ex9.pp

---

```
Program Example9;  
uses Crt;  
  
{ Program to demonstrate the ClrEol function . }  
  
begin  
    Write('This line will be cleared from the',  
        ' cursor position until the right of the screen');  
    GotoXY(27, WhereY);  
    ReadKey;  
    ClrEol;  
    WriteLn;  
end.
```

---

## ClrScr

Declaration: `Procedure ClrScr ;`

Description: `ClrScr` clears the current window (using the current colors), and sets the cursor in the top left corner of the current window.

Errors: None.

See also: `Window` (35)

**Listing:** `crtex/ex8.pp`

---

```
Program Example8;  
uses Crt ;  
  
  { Program to demonstrate the ClrScr function . }  
  
begin  
  WriteLn('Press any key to clear the screen');  
  ReadKey;  
  ClrScr;  
  WriteLn('Have fun with the cleared screen');  
end.
```

---

## CursorOff

Declaration: `Procedure CursorOff ;`

Description: Switches the cursor off (i.e. the cursor is no longer visible). Not implemented on LINUX.

Errors: None.

See also: `CursorOn` (28), `CursorBig` (27)

## CursorOn

Declaration: `Procedure CursorOn ;`

Description: Switches the cursor on. Not implemented on LINUX.

Errors: None.

See also: `CursorBig` (27), `CursorOff` (28)

## Delay

Declaration: `Procedure Delay (DTime: Word);`

Description: `Delay` waits a specified number of milliseconds. The number of specified seconds is an approximation, and may be off a lot, if system load is high.

Errors: None

See also: `Sound` (33), `NoSound` (32)

**Listing:** `crtex/ex15.pp`

---

```
Program Example15;  
uses Crt;  
  
{ Program to demonstrate the Delay function . }  
var  
    i : longint;  
begin  
    WriteLn(' Counting Down' );  
    for i:=10 downto 1 do  
        begin  
            WriteLn(i );  
            Delay(1000); { Wait one second }  
        end;  
    WriteLn(' BOOM!!!' );  
end.
```

---

## DelLine

Declaration: Procedure DelLine ;

Description: DelLine removes the current line. Lines following the current line are scrolled 1 line up, and an empty line is inserted at the bottom of the current window. The cursor doesn't move.

Errors: None.

See also: ClrEol (27), InsLine (30), ClrScr (28)

**Listing:** crtex/ex11.pp

---

```
Program Example10;  
uses Crt;  
  
{ Program to demonstrate the InsLine function . }  
  
begin  
    ClrScr;  
    WriteLn;  
    WriteLn(' Line 1' );  
    WriteLn(' Line 2' );  
    WriteLn(' Line 2' );  
    WriteLn(' Line 3' );  
    WriteLn;  
    WriteLn(' Oops, Line 2 is listed twice, ',  
            ' let ' 's delete the line at the cursor postion' );  
    GotoXY(1,3);  
    ReadKey;  
    DelLine;  
    GotoXY(1,10);  
end.
```

---

## GotoXY

Declaration: Procedure GotoXY (X: Byte; Y: Byte);

Description: Positions the cursor at (X,Y), X in horizontal, Y in vertical direction relative to the origin of the current window. The origin is located at (1,1), the upper-left corner of the window.

Errors: None.

See also: WhereX (35), WhereY (35), Window (35)

**Listing:** crtex/ex6.pp

---

```
Program Example6;  
uses Crt;  
  
{ Program to demonstrate the GotoXY function . }  
  
begin  
  ClnScr;  
  GotoXY(10,10);  
  Write('10,10');  
  GotoXY(70,20);  
  Write('70,20');  
  GotoXY(1,22);  
end.
```

---

## HighVideo

Declaration: Procedure HighVideo ;

Description: HighVideo switches the output to highlighted text. (It sets the high intensity bit of the video attribute)

Errors: None.

See also: TextColor (34), TextBackground (33), LowVideo (31), NormVideo (32)

**Listing:** crtex/ex14.pp

---

```
Program Example14;  
uses Crt;  
  
{ Program to demonstrate the LowVideo, HighVideo, NormVideo functions . }  
  
begin  
  LowVideo;  
  WriteLn('This is written with LowVideo');  
  HighVideo;  
  WriteLn('This is written with HighVideo');  
  NormVideo;  
  WriteLn('This is written with NormVideo');  
end.
```

---

## InsLine

Declaration: Procedure InsLine ;

Description: InsLine inserts an empty line at the current cursor position. Lines following the current line are scrolled 1 line down, causing the last line to disappear from the window. The cursor doesn't move.

Errors: None.

See also: `ClrEol` (27), `DelLine` (29), `ClrScr` (28)

**Listing:** `crtex/ex10.pp`

---

```
Program Example10;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the InsLine function . }

begin
  ClrScr;
  WriteLn;
  WriteLn(' Line 1 ');
  WriteLn(' Line 3 ');
  WriteLn;
  WriteLn('Oops, forgot Line 2, let''s insert at the cursor postion');
  GotoXY(1,3);
  ReadKey;
  InsLine;
  Write(' Line 2 ');
  GotoXY(1,10);
end.
```

---

## KeyPressed

Declaration: `Function KeyPressed : Boolean;`

Description: The `KeyPressed` function scans the keyboard buffer and sees if a key has been pressed. If this is the case, `True` is returned. If not, `False` is returned. The `Shift`, `Alt`, `Ctrl` keys are not reported. The key is not removed from the buffer, and can hence still be read after the `KeyPressed` function has been called.

Errors: None.

See also: `ReadKey` (33)

**Listing:** `crtex/ex2.pp`

---

```
Program Example2;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the KeyPressed function . }

begin
  WriteLn('Waiting until a key is pressed');
  repeat
    until KeyPressed;
  { The key is not Read,
    so it should also be outputted at the commandline }
end.
```

---

## LowVideo

Declaration: `Procedure LowVideo ;`



**Description:** LowVideo switches the output to non-highlighted text. (It clears the high intensity bit of the video attribute)

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** TextColor (34), TextBackground (33), HighVideo (30), NormVideo (32)

For an example, see HighVideo (30)

## NormVideo

**Declaration:** Procedure NormVideo ;

**Description:** NormVideo switches the output to the defaults, read at startup. (The defaults are read from the cursor position at startup)

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** TextColor (34), TextBackground (33), LowVideo (31), HighVideo (30)

For an example, see HighVideo (30)

## NoSound

**Declaration:** Procedure NoSound ;

**Description:** Stops the speaker sound. This is not supported in LINUX

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** Sound (33)

**Listing:** crtex/ex16.pp

---

```
Program Example16;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the Sound and NoSound function. }

var
  i : longint;
begin
  WriteLn('You will hear some tones from your speaker');
  while ( i < 15000) do
    begin
      inc(i,500);
      Sound(i);
      Delay(100);
    end;
  WriteLn(' Quiet now! ');
  NoSound; {Stop noise}
end.
```

---

## ReadKey

Declaration: `Function ReadKey : Char;`

Description: The ReadKey function reads 1 key from the keyboard buffer, and returns this. If an extended or function key has been pressed, then the zero ASCII code is returned. You can then read the scan code of the key with a second ReadKey call. **Remark.** Key mappings under Linux can cause the wrong key to be reported by ReadKey, so caution is needed when using ReadKey.

Errors: None.

See also: KeyPressed (31)

**Listing:** crtex/ex3.pp

---

```
Program Example3;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the ReadKey function . }

var
  ch : char;
begin
  writeln ( ' Press Left / Right , Esc=Quit ' );
  repeat
    ch:=ReadKey;
    case ch of
      #0 : begin
        ch:=ReadKey; {Read ScanCode}
        case ch of
          #75 : WriteLn ( ' Left ' );
          #77 : WriteLn ( ' Right ' );
        end;
      end;
      #27 : WriteLn ( ' ESC ' );
    end;
  until ch=#27 {Esc}
end.
```

---

## Sound

Declaration: `Procedure Sound (hz : word);`

Description: Sounds the speaker at a frequency of hz. This is not supported in LINUX

Errors: None.

See also: NoSound (32)

## TextBackground

Declaration: `Procedure TextBackground (CL: Byte);`

Description: TextBackground sets the background color to CL. CL can be one of the predefined color constants.

Errors: None.

See also: TextColor (34), HighVideo (30), LowVideo (31), NormVideo (32)

**Listing:** crtex/ex13.pp

---

```
Program Example13;  
uses Crt;  
  
{ Program to demonstrate the TextBackground function . }  
  
begin  
  TextColor(White);  
  WriteLn('This is written in with the default background color');  
  TextBackground(Green);  
  WriteLn('This is written in with a Green background');  
  TextBackground(Brown);  
  WriteLn('This is written in with a Brown background');  
  TextBackground(Black);  
  WriteLn('Back with a black background');  
end.
```

---

## TextColor

Declaration: `Procedure TextColor (CL: Byte);`

Description: TextColor sets the foreground color to CL. CL can be one of the predefined color constants.

Errors: None.

See also: TextBackground (33), HighVideo (30), LowVideo (31), NormVideo (32)

**Listing:** crtex/ex12.pp

---

```
Program Example12;  
uses Crt;  
  
{ Program to demonstrate the TextColor function . }  
  
begin  
  WriteLn('This is written in the default color');  
  TextColor(Red);  
  WriteLn('This is written in Red');  
  TextColor(White);  
  WriteLn('This is written in White');  
  TextColor(LightBlue);  
  WriteLn('This is written in Light Blue');  
end.
```

---

## TextMode

Declaration: `procedure TextMode(Mode: Integer);`

Description: TextMode sets the textmode of the screen (i.e. the number of lines and columns of the screen).

The lower byte is use to set the VGA text mode.

This procedure is only implemented on DOS.

Errors: None.

See also: Window (35)

## WhereX

Declaration: `Function WhereX : Byte;`

Description: WhereX returns the current X-coordinate of the cursor, relative to the current window. The origin is ( 1 , 1 ), in the upper-left corner of the window.

Errors: None.

See also: GotoXY (29), WhereY (35), Window (35)

**Listing:** crtex/ex7.pp

---

```
Program Example7;  
uses Crt;  
  
{ Program to demonstrate the WhereX and WhereY functions . }  
  
begin  
  WriteLn ( ' Cursor position : X=', WhereX, ' Y=', WhereY );  
end.
```

---

## WhereY

Declaration: `Function WhereY : Byte;`

Description: WhereY returns the current Y-coordinate of the cursor, relative to the current window. The origin is ( 1 , 1 ), in the upper-left corner of the window.

Errors: None.

See also: GotoXY (29), WhereX (35), Window (35)

**Listing:** crtex/ex7.pp

---

```
Program Example7;  
uses Crt;  
  
{ Program to demonstrate the WhereX and WhereY functions . }  
  
begin  
  WriteLn ( ' Cursor position : X=', WhereX, ' Y=', WhereY );  
end.
```

---

## Window

Declaration: `Procedure Window (X1, Y1, X2, Y2: Byte);`

Description: Window creates a window on the screen, to which output will be sent. ( X1 , Y1 ) are the coordinates of the upper left corner of the window, ( X2 , Y2 ) are the coordinates of the bottom right corner of the window. These coordinates are relative to the entire screen, with the top left corner equal to ( 1 , 1 ) Further coordinate operations, except for the next Window call, are relative to the window's top left corner.

Errors: None.

See also: GotoXY (29), WhereX (35), WhereY (35), ClrScr (28)

**Listing:** crtex/ex5.pp

---

```
Program Example5;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the Window function . }

begin
  ClrScr;
  WriteLn('Creating a window from 30,10 to 50,20');
  Window(30,10,50,20);
  WriteLn('We are now writing in this small window we just created, we '+
    'can''t get outside it when writing long lines like this one');
  Write('Press any key to clear the window');
  ReadKey;
  ClrScr;
  Write('The window is cleared, press any key to restore to fullscreen');
  ReadKey;
  { Full Screen is 80x25 }
  Window(1,1,80,25);
  Clrscr;
  WriteLn('Back in Full Screen');
end.
```

---

## Chapter 2

# The DOS unit.

This chapter describes the DOS unit for Free pascal, both under DOS, OS/2, WINDOWS 32-BIT and LINUX. The unit was first written for DOS by Florian klämpfl. It was ported to LINUX by Mark May<sup>1</sup>, and enhanced by Michaël Van Canneyt.

Under non-DOS systems, some of the functionality is lost, as it is either impossible or meaningless to implement it. Other than that, the functionality for all operating systems is the same.

This chapter is divided in three sections:

- The first section lists the pre-defined constants, types and variables.
- The second section gives an overview of all functions available, grouped by category.
- The third section describes the functions which appear in the interface part of the DOS unit.

## 2.1 Types, Variables, Constants

### Constants

The DOS unit implements the following constants:

```
{Bitmasks for CPU Flags}
fcarry =      $0001;
fparity =     $0004;
fauxiliary =  $0010;
fzero =       $0040;
fsign =       $0080;
foverflow =   $0800;
{Bitmasks for file attribute}
readonly =    $01;
hidden =      $02;
sysfile =     $04;
volumeid =    $08;
directory =   $10;
archive =     $20;
anyfile =     $3F;
fmclosed =    $D7B0;
fminput =     $D7B1;
```

---

<sup>1</sup>Current e-mail address [mmay@dnaco.net](mailto:mmay@dnaco.net)

```
fmoutput =    $D7B2;
fminout  =    $D7B3;
```

## Types

The following string types are defined for easy handling of filenames :

```
ComStr  = String[255];    { For command-lines }
PathStr = String[255];    { For full path for file names }
DirStr  = String[255];    { For Directory and (DOS) drive string }
NameStr = String[255];    { For Name of file }
ExtStr  = String[255];    { For Extension of file }
```

```
SearchRec = Packed Record
  Fill : array[1..21] of byte;
  { Fill replaced with declarations below, for Linux}
  Attr : Byte; {attribute of found file}
  Time : LongInt; {last modify date of found file}
  Size : LongInt; {file size of found file}
  Reserved : Word; {future use}
  Name : String[255]; {name of found file}
  SearchSpec: String[255]; {search pattern}
  NamePos: Word; {end of path, start of name position}
End;
```

Under LINUX, the Fill array is replaced with the following:

```
SearchNum: LongInt; {to track which search this is}
SearchPos: LongInt; {directory position}
DirPtr: LongInt; {directory pointer for reading directory}
SearchType: Byte; {0=normal, 1=open will close}
SearchAttr: Byte; {attribute we are searching for}
Fill: Array[1..07] of Byte; {future use}
```

This is because the searching mechanism on Unix systems is substantially different from DOS's, and the calls have to be mimicked.

```
const
  filerecnamelength = 255;
type
  FileRec = Packed Record
    Handle,
    Mode,
    RecSize : longint;
    _private : array[1..32] of byte;
    UserData : array[1..16] of byte;
    name : array[0..filerecnamelength] of char;
  End;
```

FileRec is used for internal representation of typed and untyped files. Text files are handled by the following types :

```
const
```

```
TextRecNameLength = 256;
TextRecBufSize    = 256;
type
  TextBuf = array[0..TextRecBufSize-1] of char;
  TextRec = Packed Record
    Handle,
    Mode,
    bufsize,
    _private,
    bufpos,
    bufend    : longint;
    bufptr    : ^textbuf;
    openfunc,
    inoutfunc,
    flushfunc,
    closefunc : pointer;
    UserData  : array[1..16] of byte;
    name      : array[0..textrecnamelength-1] of char;
    buffer    : textbuf;
  End;
```

Remark that this is not binary compatible with the Turbo Pascal definition of TextRec, since the sizes of the different fields are different.

```
Registers = record
  case i : integer of
    0 : (ax,f1,bx,f2,cx,f3,dx,f4,bp,f5,si,
         f51,di,f6,ds,f7,es,f8,flags,fs,gs : word);
    1 : (al,ah,f9,f10,bl,bh,f11,f12,
         cl,ch,f13,f14,dl,dh : byte);
    2 : (eax, ebx, ecx, edx, ebp, esi, edi : longint);
  End;
```

The registers type is used in the MSDos call.

```
DateTime = record
  Year: Word;
  Month: Word;
  Day: Word;
  Hour: Word;
  Min: Word;
  Sec: word;
End;
```

The DateTime type is used in PackTime (53) and UnPackTime (55) for setting/reading file times with GetFTime (50) and SetFTime (54).

## Variables

```
DosError : integer;
```

The DosError variable is used by the procedures in the DOS unit to report errors. It can have the following values :



- 2 File not found.
- 3 path not found.
- 5 Access denied.
- 6 Invalid handle.
- 8 Not enough memory.
- 10 Invalid environment.
- 11 Invalid format.
- 18 No more files.

Other values are possible, but are not documented.

## 2.2 Function list by category

What follows is a listing of the available functions, grouped by category. For each function there is a reference to the page where you can find the function.

### File handling

Routines to handle files on disk.

Name	Description	Page
FExpand	Expand filename to full path	45
FindClose	Close finfirst/findnext session	45
FindFirst	Start find of file	46
FindNext	Find next file	47
FSearch	Search for file in a path	47
FSplit	Split filename in parts	47
GetFAttr	Return file attributes	49
GetFTime	Return file time	50
GetLongName	Convert short filename to long filename	51
GetShortName	Convert long filename to short filename	51
SetFAttr	Set file attributes	54
SetFTime	Set file time	54

### Directory and disk handling

Routines to handle disk information.

Name	Description	Page
AddDisk	Add disk to list of disks	41
DiskFree	Return size of free disk space	42
DiskSize	Return total disk size	42

## Process handling

Functions to handle process information and starting new processes.

Name	Description	Page
DosExitCode	Exit code of last executed program	43
EnvCount	Return number of environment variables	44
EnvStr	Return environment string pair	44
Exec	Execute program	45
GetEnv	Return specified environment string	49

## System information

Functions for retrieving and setting general system information such as date and time.

Name	Description	Page
DosVersion	Get OS version	43
GetCBreak	Get setting of control-break handling flag	48
GetDate	Get system date	48
GetIntVec	Get interrupt vector status	51
GetTime	Get system time	51
GetVerify	Get verify flag	52
Intr	Execute an interrupt	52
Keep	Keep process in memory and exit	52
MSDos	Execute MS-dos function call	53
PackTime	Pack time for file time	53
SetCBreak	Set control-break handling flag	54
SetDate	Set system date	54
SetIntVec	Set interrupt vectors	55
SetTime	Set system time	55
SetVerify	Set verify flag	55
SwapVectors	Swap interrupt vectors	55
UnPackTime	Unpack file time	55

## 2.3 Functions and Procedures

### AddDisk

Declaration: `Procedure AddDisk (Const S : String);`

Description: `AddDisk` adds a filename `S` to the internal list of disks. It is implemented for `LINUX` only. This list is used to determine which disks to use in the `DiskFree` (42) and `DiskSize` (42) calls. The `DiskFree` (42) and `DiskSize` (42) functions need a file on the specified drive, since this is required for the `statfs` system call. The names are added sequentially. The dos initialization code presets the first three disks to:

- ' . ' for the current drive,
- ' /fd0/ . ' for the first floppy-drive.
- ' /fd1/ . ' for the second floppy-drive.
- ' / ' for the first hard disk.

The first call to `AddDisk` will therefore add a name for the second harddisk, The second call for the third drive, and so on until 23 drives have been added (corresponding to drives 'D:' to 'Z:')

Errors: None

See also: `DiskFree` (42), `DiskSize` (42)

## DiskFree

Declaration: `Function DiskFree (Drive: byte) : Int64;`

Description: `DiskFree` returns the number of free bytes on a disk. The parameter `Drive` indicates which disk should be checked. This parameter is 1 for floppy a:, 2 for floppy b:, etc. A value of 0 returns the free space on the current drive. Typically, the free space is the size of a disk block, multiplied by the number of free blocks on the disk. **For LINUX only:**

The `diskfree` and `disksize` functions need a file on the specified drive, since this is required for the `statfs` system call. These filenames are set in the initialization of the dos unit, and have been preset to :

- ' . ' for the current drive,
- ' /fd0/ . ' for the first floppy-drive.
- ' /fd1/ . ' for the second floppy-drive.
- ' / ' for the first hard disk.

There is room for 1-26 drives. You can add a drive with the `AddDisk` (41) procedure. These settings can be coded in `dos.pp`, in the initialization part.

Errors: -1 when a failure occurs, or an invalid `drivenr` is given.

See also: `DiskSize` (42), `AddDisk` (41)

**Listing:** `dosex/ex6.pp`

---

```
Program Example6;  
uses Dos;  
  
{ Program to demonstrate the DiskSize and DiskFree function. }  
  
begin  
  WriteLn('This partition size has ', DiskSize(0), ' bytes');  
  WriteLn('Currently ', DiskFree(0), ' bytes are free');  
end.
```

---

## DiskSize

Declaration: `Function DiskSize (Drive: byte) : Int64;`

**Description:** `DiskSize` returns the total size (in bytes) of a disk. The parameter `Drive` indicates which disk should be checked. This parameter is 1 for floppy a:, 2 for floppy b:, etc. A value of 0 returns the size of the current drive. **For LINUX only:**

The `diskfree` and `disksize` functions need a file on the specified drive, since this is required for the `statfs` system call. These filenames are set in the initialization of the dos unit, and have been preset to :

- ' . ' for the current drive,
- '/fd0/ . ' for the first floppy-drive.
- '/fd1/ . ' for the second floppy-drive.
- ' / ' for the first hard disk.

There is room for 1-26 drives. You can add a drive with the `AddDisk (41)` procedure. These settings can be coded in `dos.pp`, in the initialization part.

**Errors:** -1 when a failure occurs, or an invalid drive number is given.

See also: `DiskFree (42)`, `AddDisk (41)`

For an example, see `DiskFree (42)`.

## DosExitCode

**Declaration:** `Function DosExitCode : Word;`

**Description:** `DosExitCode` contains (in the low byte) the exit-code of a program executed with the `Exec` call.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `Exec (45)`

**Listing:** `dosex/ex5.pp`

---

```
Program Example5;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the Exec and DosExitCode function . }

begin
  {$IFDEF LINUX}
    WriteLn( ' Executing / bin / ls -la ' );
    Exec( ' / bin / ls ' , '-la' );
  {$ELSE}
    WriteLn( ' Executing Dir ' );
    Exec( GetEnv( ' COMSPEC ' ), ' / C dir ' );
  {$ENDIF}
  WriteLn( ' Program returned with ExitCode ' , DosExitCode );
end.
```

---

## DosVersion

**Declaration:** `Function DosVersion : Word;`

**Description:** `DosVersion` returns the DOS version number. On LINUX systems, it returns the Linux version (The first 2 numbers, e.g Linux version 2.1.76 will give you `DosVersion 2.1`)

Errors: None.

See also:

**Listing:** dosex/ex1.pp

---

```
Program Example1;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the DosVersion function . }

var
  OS      : string [32];
  Version : word;
begin
  {$IFDEF LINUX}
    OS:= 'Linux' ;
  {$ENDIF}
  {$IFDEF DOS}
    OS:= 'Dos' ;
  {$ENDIF}
  Version:=DosVersion;
  WriteLn(' Current ',OS,' version is ',Lo(Version), '.',Hi(Version));
end.
```

---

## EnvCount

Declaration: `Function EnvCount : longint;`

Description: `EnvCount` returns the number of environment variables.

Errors: None.

See also: `EnvStr` (44), `Dos:GetEnv` (49)

## EnvStr

Declaration: `Function EnvStr (Index: integer) : string;`

Description: `EnvStr` returns the Index-th Name=Value pair from the list of environment variables. The index of the first pair is zero.

Errors: The length is limited to 255 characters. This may cause problems under LINUX. The LINUX unit solves this problem.

See also: `EnvCount` (44), `Dos:GetEnv` (49)

**Listing:** dosex/ex13.pp

---

```
Program Example13;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the EnvCount and EnvStr function . }

var
  i : Longint;
```

```
begin
  WriteLn(' Current Environment is :');
  for i:=1 to EnvCount do
    WriteLn( EnvStr(i));
end.
```

---

## Exec

Declaration: Procedure Exec (const Path: pathstr; const ComLine: comstr);

Description: Exec executes the program in Path, with the options given by ComLine. After the program has terminated, the procedure returns. The Exit value of the program can be consulted with the DosExitCode function.

Errors: Errors are reported in DosError.

See also: DosExitCode (43)

For an example, see DosExitCode (43)

## FExpand

Declaration: Function FExpand (const path: pathstr) : pathstr;

Description: FExpand takes its argument and expands it to a complete filename, i.e. a filename starting from the root directory of the current drive, prepended with the drive-letter (under DOS). The resulting name is converted to uppercase on DOS systems. Under LINUX, the name is left as it is. (filenames are case sensitive under Unix)

Errors: FSplit (47)

See also:

---

```
Program Example5;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the Exec and DosExitCode function . }

begin
  {$IFDEF LINUX}
    WriteLn(' Executing / bin / ls -la ');
    Exec( '/ bin / ls ', '-la ');
  {$ELSE}
    WriteLn(' Executing Dir ');
    Exec( GetEnv( 'COMSPEC' ), '/ C dir ');
  {$ENDIF}
  WriteLn(' Program returned with ExitCode ', DosExitCode);
end.
```

---

## FindClose

Declaration: Procedure FindClose (Var F: SearchRec);

Description: **LINUX, WINDOWS 32-BIT and OS/2 wonly** FindClose frees any resources associated with the search record F.

Under LINUX, WINDOWS 32-BIT and OS/2 the `findFirst/findnext` calls have to be mimicked. This call is needed to free any internal resources allocated by the `FindFirst` (400) or `FindNext` (401) calls.

E.g. on LINUX, an internal table of file descriptors is kept. When using different `searchrecs` at the same time, the system may run out of file descriptors for directories.

The LINUX implementation of the DOS unit therefore keeps a table of open directories, and when the table is full, closes one of the directories, and reopens another. This system is adequate but slow if you use a lot of `searchrecs`. So, to speed up the `findFirst/findnext` system, the `FindClose` call was implemented. When you don't need a `searchrec` any more, you can tell this to the DOS unit by issuing a `FindClose` call. The directory which is kept open for this `searchrec` is then closed, and the table slot freed.

It is recommended to use the LINUX call `Glob` when looking for files on LINUX.

Errors: None.

See also: `Glob` (203).

## FindFirst

**Declaration:** `Procedure FindFirst (const Path: pathstr; Attr: word; var F: SearchRec);`

**Description:** `FindFirst` searches the file specified in `Path`, checks the attributes specified in `Attr`. It returns a `SearchRec` record for further searching in `F`. `Path` can contain the wildcard characters `?` (matches any single character) and `*` (matches 0 or more arbitrary characters). In this case `FindFirst` will return the first file which matches the specified criteria. If `DosError` is different from zero, no file(s) matching the criteria was(were) found.

On OS/2, you cannot issue two different `FindFirst` calls. That is, you must close any previous search operation with `FindClose` (45) before starting a new one. Failure to do so will end in a Run-Time Error 6 (Invalid file handle)

Also, on OS/2, the boolean variable `FileNameCaseSensitive` indicates whether searches are conducted case-sensitive or not. By default, searches are not case sensitive. If the variable is set to `True`, searches on OS/2 are case sensitive.

Errors: Errors are reported in `DosError`.

See also: `FindNext` (47), `FindClose` (45)

**Listing:** `dosex/ex7.pp`

---

```
Program Example7;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the FindFirst and FindNext function. }

var
  Dir : SearchRec;
begin
  FindFirst ( '*.*', $20, Dir );
  WriteLn ( ' FileName' + Space(32), ' FileSize' :9);
  while ( DosError=0) do
    begin
      WriteLn ( Dir.Name+Space(40-Length( Dir.Name)), Dir.Size :9);
      FindNext( Dir );
    end;
  FindClose( Dir );
end.
```

---

## FindNext

Declaration: `Procedure FindNext (var f: searchRec);`

Description: `FindNext` takes as an argument a `SearchRec` from a previous `FindNext` call, or a `FindFirst` call, and tries to find another file which matches the criteria, specified in the `FindFirst` call. If `DosError` is different from zero, no more files matching the criteria were found.

Errors: `DosError` is used to report errors.

See also: `FindFirst` (46), `FindClose` (45)

For an example, see `FindFirst` (46).

## FSearch

Declaration: `Function FSearch (Path: pathstr; DirList: string) : pathstr;`

Description: `FSearch` searches the file `Path` in all directories listed in `DirList`. The full name of the found file is returned. `DirList` must be a list of directories, separated by semi-colons (or colons under LINUX). When no file is found, an empty string is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `FExpand` (45)

**Listing:** `dosex/ex10.pp`

---

```
Program Example10;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the FSearch function. }

var
  s : string;
begin
  s:=FSearch(ParamStr(1), GetEnv('PATH'));
  if s='' then
    WriteLn(ParamStr(1), ' not Found in PATH')
  else
    WriteLn(ParamStr(1), ' Found in PATH at ',s);
end.
```

---

## FSplit

Declaration: `Procedure FSplit (path: pathstr; var dir: dirstr; var name: namestr; var ext: extstr);`

Description: `FSplit` splits a full file name into 3 parts : A Path, a Name and an extension (in ext.) Under LINUX, the extension is taken to be all letters after the last dot (.).

Errors: None.

See also: `FSearch` (47)

**Listing:** `dosex/ex12.pp`



---

```
Program Example12;  
uses Dos;  
  
{ Program to demonstrate the FSplit function. }  
  
var  
    Path,Name,Ext : string;  
begin  
    FSplit ( ParamStr(1), Path,Name,Ext );  
    WriteLn ( ' Splitted ', ParamStr(1), ' in : ' );  
    WriteLn ( ' Path      : ', Path );  
    WriteLn ( ' Name      : ', Name );  
    WriteLn ( ' Extension : ', Ext );  
end.
```

---

## GetCBreak

Declaration: `Procedure GetCBreak (var breakvalue: boolean);`

Description: `GetCBreak` gets the status of CTRL-Break checking under DOS. When `BreakValue` is false, then DOS only checks for the CTRL-Break key-press when I/O is performed. When it is set to True, then a check is done at every system call.

Errors: Under Linux, this exists but is not implemented, i.e. the call does nothing.

See also: `SetCBreak` (54)

## GetDate

Declaration: `Procedure GetDate (var year, month, mday, wday: word);`

Description: `GetDate` returns the system's date. `Year` is a number in the range 1980..2099. `mday` is the day of the month, `wday` is the day of the week, starting with Sunday as day 0.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetTime` (51), `SetDate` (54)

**Listing:** `dosex/ex2.pp`

---

```
Program Example2;  
uses Dos;  
  
{ Program to demonstrate the GetDate function. }  
  
const  
    DayStr: array [0..6] of string [3] = ( 'Sun', 'Mon', 'Tue', 'Wed', 'Thu', 'Fri', 'Sat' );  
    MonthStr: array [1..12] of string [3] = ( 'Jan', 'Feb', 'Mar', 'Apr', 'May', 'Jun',  
                                                'Jul', 'Aug', 'Sep', 'Oct', 'Nov', 'Dec' );  
  
var  
    Year, Month, Day, WDay : word;  
begin  
    GetDate ( Year, Month, Day, WDay );  
    WriteLn ( ' Current date ' );  
    WriteLn ( DayStr[WDay], ' ', Day, ' ', MonthStr[Month], ' ', Year, ' ' );  
end.
```

---

## GetEnv

Declaration: `Function GetEnv (EnvVar: String) : String;`

Description: `Getenv` returns the value of the environment variable `EnvVar`. Under LINUX, case is important when looking for `EnvVar`. When there is no environment variable `EnvVar` defined, an empty string is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `EnvCount` (44), `EnvStr` (44)

**Listing:** `dosex/ex14.pp`

---

```
Program Example14;  
uses Dos;  
  
{ Program to demonstrate the GetEnv function . }  
  
begin  
  WriteLn( ' Current PATH is ' , GetEnv( ' PATH' ) );  
end.
```

---

## GetFAttr

Declaration: `Procedure GetFAttr (var F; var Attr: word);`

Description: `GetFAttr` returns the file attributes of the file-variable `f`. `F` can be a untyped or typed file, or of type `Text`. `f` must have been assigned, but not opened. The attributes can be examined with the following constants :

- `ReadOnly` = 01h
- `Hidden` = 02h
- `SysFile` = 04h
- `VolumeId` = 08h
- `Directory` = 10h
- `Archive` = 20h

Under LINUX, supported attributes are:

- `Directory`
- `ReadOnly` if the current process doesn't have access to the file.
- `Hidden` for files whose name starts with a dot ( `' . '` ).

Errors: Errors are reported in `DosError`

See also: `SetFAttr` (54)

**Listing:** `dosex/ex8.pp`

---

```
Program Example8;  
uses Dos;  
  
{ Program to demonstrate the GetFAttr function . }
```

---

```
var
  Attr : Word;
  f     : File;
begin
  Assign(f, ParamStr(1));
  GetFAttr(f, Attr);
  WriteLn(' File ', ParamStr(1), ' has attribute ', Attr);
  if (Attr and $20) <> 0 then WriteLn(' - Archive ');
  if (Attr and $10) <> 0 then WriteLn(' - Directory ');
  if (Attr and $4) <> 0 then WriteLn(' - Read-Only ');
  if (Attr and $2) <> 0 then WriteLn(' - System ');
  if (Attr and $1) <> 0 then WriteLn(' - Hidden ');
end.
```

---

## GetFTime

Declaration: Procedure GetFTime (var F: var Time: longint);

Description: GetFTime returns the modification time of a file. This time is encoded and must be decoded with UnPackTime. F must be a file type, which has been assigned, and opened.

Errors: Errors are reported in DosError

See also: SetFTime (54), PackTime (53), UnPackTime (55)

### Listing: dosex/ex9.pp

---

```
Program Example9;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the GetFTime function. }

Function L0(w: word): string;
var
  s : string;
begin
  Str(w, s);
  if w < 10 then
    L0 := '0' + s
  else
    L0 := s;
end;

var
  f     : File;
  Time : Longint;
  DT    : DateTime;
begin
  Assign(f, ParamStr(1));
  Reset(f);
  GetFTime(f, Time);
  Close(f);
  UnPackTime(Time, DT);
  Write(' File ', ParamStr(1), ' is last modified on ');
  Writeln(L0(DT.Month), '-', L0(DT.Day), '-', DT.Year,
    ' at ', L0(DT.Hour), ':', L0(DT.Min));
end.
```

---

### **GetIntVec**

Declaration: `Procedure GetIntVec (IntNo: byte; var Vector: pointer);`

Description: `GetIntVec` returns the address of interrupt vector `IntNo`.

Errors: Under non- DOS operating systems, this call does nothing.

See also: `SetIntVec` (55)

### **GetLongName**

Declaration: `function GetLongName(var p : String) : boolean;`

Description: This function is only implemented in the GO32V2 version of Free Pascal.

`GetLongName` changes the filename `p` to a long filename if the DOS call to do this is successful.

The resulting string is the long file name corresponding to the short filename `p`.

The function returns `True` if the DOS call was successful, `False` otherwise.

This function should only be necessary when using the DOS extender under Windows 95 and higher.

Errors: If the DOS call was not successful, `False` is returned.

See also: `GetShortName` (51)

### **GetShortName**

Declaration: `function GetShortName(var p : String) : boolean;`

Description: This function is only implemented in the GO32V2 version of Free Pascal.

`GetShortName` changes the filename `p` to a short filename if the DOS call to do this is successful.

The resulting string is the short file name corresponding to the long filename `p`.

The function returns `True` if the DOS call was successful, `False` otherwise.

This function should only be necessary when using the DOS extender under Windows 95 and higher.

Errors: If the DOS call was not successful, `False` is returned.

See also: `GetLongName` (51)

### **GetTime**

Declaration: `Procedure GetTime (var hour, minute, second, sec100: word);`

Description: `GetTime` returns the system's time. `Hour` is on a 24-hour time scale. `sec100` is in hundredth of a second.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetDate` (48), `SetTime` (55)

**Listing:** `dosex/ex3.pp`

---

```
Program Example3;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the GetTime function . }

Function L0(w: word): string ;
var
  s : string ;
begin
  Str (w, s);
  if w<10 then
    L0:= '0' +s
  else
    L0:=s;
end;

var
  Hour, Min, Sec, HSec : word;
begin
  GetTime ( Hour, Min, Sec, HSec);
  WriteLn ( ' Current time ' );
  WriteLn ( L0(Hour), ': ' , L0( Min), ': ' , L0( Sec));
end.
```

---

## GetVerify

Declaration: Procedure GetVerify (var verify: boolean);

Description: GetVerify returns the status of the verify flag under DOS. When Verify is True, then DOS checks data which are written to disk, by reading them after writing. If Verify is False, then data written to disk are not verified.

Errors: Under LINUX, Verify is always True.

See also: SetVerify (55)

## Intr

Declaration: Procedure Intr (IntNo: byte; var Regs: registers);

Description: Intr executes a software interrupt number IntNo (must be between 0 and 255), with processor registers set to Regs. After the interrupt call returned, the processor registers are saved in Regs.

Errors: Under LINUX this call does nothing, because interrupts are managed by the kernel. The only allowed interrupt is 80h, the Linux kernel entry interrupt.

See also: MSDos (53), see the LINUX unit.

## Keep

Declaration: Procedure Keep (ExitCode: word);

Description: Keep terminates the program, but stays in memory. This is used for TSR (Terminate Stay Resident) programs which catch some interrupt. ExitCode is the same parameter as the Halt function takes.

Errors: Under non-DOS operating systems, this call does nothing.

See also: `Halt ()`

## MSDos

Declaration: `Procedure MSDos (var regs: registers);`

Description: `MSDos` executes an MS-DOS call (int 21h). This is the same as doing a `Intr` call with an interrupt number of 21h.

Errors: None.

See also: `Intr (52)`

## PackTime

Declaration: `Procedure PackTime (var T: datetime; var P: longint);`

Description: `UnPackTime` converts the date and time specified in `T` to a packed-time format which can be fed to `SetFTime`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetFTime (54)`, `FindFirst (46)`, `FindNext (47)`, `UnPackTime (55)`

**Listing:** `dosex/ex4.pp`

---

```
Program Example4;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the PackTime and UnPackTime functions. }

var
  DT   : DateTime;
  Time : longint;
begin
  with DT do
    begin
      Year:=1998;
      Month:=11;
      Day:=11;
      Hour:=11;
      Min:=11;
      Sec:=11;
    end;
  PackTime(DT, Time);
  WriteLn('Packed Time : ', Time);
  UnPackTime(Time, DT);
  WriteLn('Unpacked Again: ');
  with DT do
    begin
      WriteLn('Year  ', Year);
      WriteLn('Month ', Month);
      WriteLn('Day   ', Day);
      WriteLn('Hour  ', Hour);
      WriteLn('Min   ', Min);
      WriteLn('Sec   ', Sec);
    end;
end.
```

---

### SetCBreak

Declaration: `Procedure SetCBreak (breakvalue: boolean);`

Description: `SetCBreak` sets the status of CTRL-Break checking under DOS. When `BreakValue` is false, then DOS only checks for the CTRL-Break key-press when I/O is performed. When it is set to True, then a check is done at every system call.

Errors: Under Linux, this call exists but is not implemented, i.e. it does nothing.

See also: `GetCBreak` (48)

### SetDate

Declaration: `Procedure SetDate (year,month,day: word);`

Description: `SetDate` sets the system's internal date. Year is a number between 1980 and 2099.

Errors: On a LINUX machine, this is not implemented (although a procedure exists, it just doesn't do anything. The setting of the date is a root-only privilege, and is hence not implemented.

See also: `Dos:GetDate` (48), `SetTime` (55)

### SetFAttr

Declaration: `Procedure SetFAttr (var F; Attr: word);`

Description: `SetFAttr` sets the file attributes of the file-variable `F`. `F` can be a untyped or typed file, or of type `Text`. `F` must have been assigned, but not opened. The attributes can be a sum of the following constants:

- `ReadOnly` = 01h
- `Hidden` = 02h
- `SysFile` = 04h
- `VolumeId` = 08h
- `Directory` = 10h
- `Archive` = 20h
- `AnyFile` = 3fh

Errors: Errors are reported in `DosError`. Under LINUX the call exists, but is not implemented, i.e. it does nothing.

See also: `GetFAttr` (49)

### SetFTime

Declaration: `Procedure SetFTime (var F; Time: longint);`

Description: `SetFTime` sets the modification time of a file, this time is encoded and must be encoded with `PackTime`. `F` must be a file type, which has been assigned, and opened.

Errors: Errors are reported in `DosError`

See also: `GetFTime` (50), `PackTime` (53), `UnPackTime` (55)

### **SetIntVec**

Declaration: `Procedure SetIntVec (IntNo: byte; Vector: pointer);`

Description: `SetIntVec` sets interrupt vector `IntNo` to `Vector`. `Vector` should point to an interrupt procedure.

Errors: Under non- DOS operating systems, this call does nothing.

See also: `GetIntVec` (51)

### **SetTime**

Declaration: `Procedure SetTime (hour,minute,second,sec100: word);`

Description: `SetTime` sets the system's internal clock. The `Hour` parameter is on a 24-hour time scale.

Errors: this call exists, but is not implemented on LINUX, as setting the time is a root-only privilege.

See also: `Dos:GetTime` (51), `SetDate` (54)

### **SetVerify**

Declaration: `Procedure SetVerify (verify: boolean);`

Description: `SetVerify` sets the status of the verify flag under DOS. When `Verify` is `True`, then DOS checks data which are written to disk, by reading them after writing. If `Verify` is `False`, then data written to disk are not verified.

Errors: Under LINUX, `Verify` is always `True`.

See also: `SetVerify` (55)

### **SwapVectors**

Declaration: `Procedure SwapVectors ;`

Description: `SwapVectors` swaps the contents of the internal table of interrupt vectors with the current contents of the interrupt vectors. This is called typically in before and after an `Exec` call.

Errors: Under LINUX this call does nothing, as the interrupt vectors are managed by the kernel.

See also: `Exec` (45), `SetIntVec` (55)

### **UnPackTime**

Declaration: `Procedure UnPackTime (p: longint; var T: datetime);`

Description: `UnPackTime` converts the file-modification time in `p` to a `DateTime` record. The file-modification time can be returned by `GetFTime`, `FindFirst` or `FindNext` calls.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetFTime` (50), `FindFirst` (46), `FindNext` (47), `PackTime` (53)

For an example, see `PackTime` (53).



## Chapter 3

# The DXELOAD unit

### 3.1 Introduction

The `dxeload` unit was implemented by Pierre Müller for DOS, it allows to load a DXE file (an object file with 1 entry point) into memory and return a pointer to the entry point.

It exists only for DOS.

### 3.2 Constants, types and variables

#### Constants

The following constant is the magic number, found in the header of a DXE file.

```
DXE_MAGIC = $31455844;
```

#### Types

The following record describes the header of a DXE file. It is used to determine the magic number of the DXE file and number of relocations that must be done when the object file is loaded in memory.

```
dx_header = record
    magic,
    symbol_offset,
    element_size,
    nrelocs      : longint;
end;
```

### 3.3 Functions and Procedures

#### `dx_load`

Declaration: `function dx_load(filename : string) : pointer;`

Description: `dx_load` loads the contents of the file `filename` into memory. It performs the necessary relocations in the object code, and returns then a pointer to the entry point of the code.

**Errors:** If an error occurs during the load or relocations, `Nil` is returned.

For an example, see the `emu387` unit in the RTL.

## Chapter 4

# The EMU387 unit

The `emu387` unit was written by Pierre Müller for DOS. It sets up the coprocessor emulation for FPC under DOS. It is not necessary to use this unit on other OS platforms because they either simply do not run on a machine without coprocessor, or they provide the coprocessor emulation themselves.

It shouldn't be necessary to use the function in this unit, it should be enough to place this unit in the `uses` clause of your program to enable the coprocessor emulation under DOS. The unit initialization code will try and load the coprocessor emulation code and initialize it.

### 4.1 Functions and procedures

#### **npxsetup**

Declaration: `procedure npxsetup(prog_name : string);`

Description: `npxsetup` checks whether a coprocessor is found. If not, it loads the file `wmemu387.dxe` into memory and initializes the code in it.

If the environment variable `387` is set to `N`, then the emulation will be loaded, even if there is a coprocessor present. If the variable doesn't exist, or is set to any other value, the unit will try to detect the presence of a coprocessor unit.

The function searches the file `wmemu387.dxe` in the following way:

- 1.If the environment variable `EMU387` is set, then it is assumed to point at the `wmemu387.dxe` file.
- 2.if the environment variable `EMU387` does not exist, then the function will take the path part of `prog_name` and look in that directory for the file `wmemu387.dxe`.

It should never be necessary to call this function, because the initialization code of the unit contains a call to the function with as an argument `paramstr(0)`. This means that you should deliver the file `wmemu387.dxe` together with your program.

Errors: If there is an error, an error message is printed to standard error, and the program is halted, since any floating-point code is bound to fail anyhow.

# Chapter 5

## The GETOPTS unit.

This document describes the GETOPTS unit for Free Pascal. It was written for LINUX by Michaël Van Canneyt. It now also works for all supported platforms.

The getopt unit provides a mechanism to handle command-line options in a structured way, much like the GNU getopt mechanism. It allows you to define the valid options for your program, and the unit will then parse the command-line options for you, and inform you of any errors.

The chapter is divided in 2 sections:

- The first section lists types, constants and variables from the interface part of the unit.
- The second section describes the functions defined in the unit.

### 5.1 Types, Constants and variables :

#### Constants

No\_Argument=0 : Specifies that a long option does not take an argument.

Required\_Argument=1 : Specifies that a long option needs an argument.

Optional\_Argument=2 : Specifies that a long option optionally takes an argument.

EndOfOptions=#255 : Returned by getopt, getlongopts to indicate that there are no more options.

#### Types

```
TOption = record
  Name      : String;
  Has_arg   : Integer;
  Flag      : PChar;
  Value     : Char;
end;
POption = ^TOption;
```

The option type is used to communicate the long options to GetLongOpts. The Name field is the name of the option. Has\_arg specifies if the option wants an argument, Flag is a pointer to a char, which is set to Value, if it is non-nil. POption is a pointer to a Option record. It is used as an argument to the GetLongOpts function.

## Variables

`OptArg: String` Is set to the argument of an option, if the option needs one.

`Optind: Longint` Is the index of the current `paramstr()`. When all options have been processed, `optind` is the index of the first non-option parameter. This is a read-only variable. Note that it can become equal to `paramcount+1`

`OptErr: Boolean` Indicates whether `getopt()` prints error messages.

`OptOpt: Char` In case of an error, contains the character causing the error.

## 5.2 Procedures and functions

### GetLongOpts

**Declaration:** `Function GetLongOpts (Shortopts : String, LongOpts : POption; var Longint : Longint) : Char;`

**Description:** Returns the next option found on the command-line, taking into account long options as well. If no more options are found, returns `EndOfOptions`. If the option requires an argument, it is returned in the `OptArg` variable. `ShortOptions` is a string containing all possible one-letter options. (see `Getopt` (60) for its description and use) `LongOpts` is a pointer to the first element of an array of `Option` records, the last of which needs a name of zero length. The function tries to match the names even partially (i.e. `-app` will match e.g. the append option), but will report an error in case of ambiguity. If the option needs an argument, set `Has_arg` to `Required_argument`, if the option optionally has an argument, set `Has_arg` to `Optional_argument`. If the option needs no argument, set `Has_arg` to zero. Required arguments can be specified in two ways :

1. Pasted to the option : `-option=value`
2. As a separate argument : `-option value`

Optional arguments can only be specified through the first method.

Errors: see `Getopt` (60), `getopt` (3)

See also: `Getopt`

### Getopt

**Declaration:** `Function Getopt (Shortopts : String) : Char;`

**Description:** Returns the next option found on the command-line. If no more options are found, returns `EndOfOptions`. If the option requires an argument, it is returned in the `OptArg` variable. `ShortOptions` is a string containing all possible one-letter options. If a letter is followed by a colon (:), then that option needs an argument. If a letter is followed by 2 colons, the option has an optional argument. If the first character of `shortoptions` is a '+' then options following a non-option are regarded as non-options (standard Unix behavior). If it is a '-', then all non-options are treated as arguments of a option with character #0. This is useful for applications that require their options in the exact order as they appear on the command-line. If the first character of `shortoptions` is none of the above, options and non-options are permuted, so all non-options are behind all options. This allows options and non-options to be in random order on the command line.

Errors: Errors are reported through giving back a '?' character. `OptOpt` then gives the character which caused the error. If `OptErr` is `True` then `getopt` prints an error-message to `stdout`.

See also: `GetLongOpts` (60), `getopt` (3)

---

```
program testopt;  
  
{ Program to depmonstrate the getopt function. }  
  
{  
  Valid calls to this program are  
  optex --verbose --add me--delete you  
  optex --append --create child  
  optex -ab -c me -d you  
  and so on  
}  
uses getopt;  
  
var c : char;  
    optionindex : Longint;  
    theopts : array[1..7] of TOption;  
  
begin  
  with theopts[1] do  
    begin  
      name:= 'add';  
      has_arg:=1;  
      flag := nil;  
      value :=#0;  
    end;  
  with theopts[2] do  
    begin  
      name:= 'append';  
      has_arg:=0;  
      flag := nil;  
      value :=#0;  
    end;  
  with theopts[3] do  
    begin  
      name:= 'delete';  
      has_arg:=1;  
      flag := nil;  
      value :=#0;  
    end;  
  with theopts[4] do  
    begin  
      name:= 'verbose';  
      has_arg:=0;  
      flag := nil;  
      value :=#0;  
    end;  
  with theopts[5] do  
    begin  
      name:= 'create';  
      has_arg:=1;  
      flag := nil;  
      value := 'c'  
    end;  
  with theopts[6] do  
    begin  
      name:= 'file';  
      has_arg:=1;
```

```
    flag := nil ;
    value := #0;
end;
with theopts[7] do
begin
    name:= '' ;
    has_arg:=0;
    flag := nil ;
end;
c:=#0;
repeat
    c:=getlongopts ( 'abc:d:012' , @theo[1], optionindex );
    case c of
        '1','2','3','4','5','6','7','8','9' :
            begin
                writeln ( 'Got optind : ' ,c)
            end;
        #0 : begin
                write ( 'Long option : ' ,theo[optionindex].name);
                if theopts[optionindex].has_arg>0 then
                    writeln ( ' With value : ' ,optarg)
                else
                    writeln
                end;
            'a' : writeln ( ' Option a.' );
            'b' : writeln ( ' Option b.' );
            'c' : writeln ( ' Option c : ' , optarg);
            'd' : writeln ( ' Option d : ' , optarg);
            '?' , ':' : writeln ( ' Error with opt : ' ,optopt);
        end; { case }
    until c=endofoptions;
if optind<=paramcount then
begin
    write ( 'Non options : ' );
    while optind<=paramcount do
        begin
            write ( paramstr(optind), ' ' );
            inc(optind)
        end;
    writeln
end
end.
```

---

# Chapter 6

## The GPM unit

### 6.1 Introduction

The GPM unit implements an interface to filelibgpm, the console program for mouse handling. This unit was created by Peter Vreman, and is only available on LINUX.

When this unit is used, your program is linked to the C libraries, so you must take care of the C library version. Also, it will only work with version 1.17 or higher of the libgpm library.

### 6.2 Constants, types and variables

#### constants

The following constants are used to denote filenames used by the library:

```
_PATH_VARRUN = '/var/run/';
_PATH_DEV    = '/dev/';
GPM_NODE_DIR = _PATH_VARRUN;
GPM_NODE_DIR_MODE = 0775;
GPM_NODE_PID  = '/var/run/gpm.pid';
GPM_NODE_DEV  = '/dev/gpmctl';
GPM_NODE_CTL  = GPM_NODE_DEV;
GPM_NODE_FIFO = '/dev/gpmdata';
```

The following constants denote the buttons on the mouse:

```
GPM_B_LEFT    = 4;
GPM_B_MIDDLE  = 2;
GPM_B_RIGHT   = 1;
```

The following constants define events:

```
GPM_MOVE = 1;
GPM_DRAG = 2;
GPM_DOWN = 4;
GPM_UP   = 8;
GPM_SINGLE = 16;
GPM_DOUBLE = 32;
```



```
GPM_TRIPLE = 64;  
GPM_MFLAG = 128;  
GPM_HARD = 256;  
GPM_ENTER = 512;  
GPM_LEAVE = 1024;
```

The following constants are used in defining margins:

```
GPM_TOP = 1;  
GPM_BOT = 2;  
GPM_LFT = 4;  
GPM_RGT = 8;
```

## Types

The following general types are defined:

```
TGpmEtype = longint;  
TGpmMargin = longint;
```

The following type describes an event; it is passed in many of the gpm functions.

```
PGpmEvent = ^TGpmEvent;  
TGpmEvent = record  
  buttons : byte;  
  modifiers : byte;  
  vc : word;  
  dx : word;  
  dy : word;  
  x : word;  
  y : word;  
  EventType : TGpmEType;  
  clicks : longint;  
  margin : TGpmMargin;  
end;  
TGpmHandler=function(var event:TGpmEvent;clientdata:pointer):longint;cdecl;
```

The following types are used in connecting to the gpm server:

```
PGpmConnect = ^TGpmConnect;  
TGpmConnect = record  
  eventMask : word;  
  defaultMask : word;  
  minMod : word;  
  maxMod : word;  
  pid : longint;  
  vc : longint;  
end;
```

The following type is used to define *regions of interest*

```
PGpmRoi = ^TGpmRoi;  
TGpmRoi = record
```

```
xMin : integer;  
xMax : integer;  
yMin : integer;  
yMax : integer;  
minMod : word;  
maxMod : word;  
eventMask : word;  
owned : word;  
handler : TGpmHandler;  
clientdata : pointer;  
prev : PGpmRoi;  
next : PGpmRoi;  
end;
```

## Variables

The following variables are imported from the gpm library

```
gpm_flag          : longint;cvar;external;  
gpm_fd            : longint;cvar;external;  
gpm_hflag         : longint;cvar;external;  
gpm_morekeys     : Longbool;cvar;external;  
gpm_zerobased    : Longbool;cvar;external;  
gpm_visiblepointer : Longbool;cvar;external;  
gpm_mx           : longint;cvar;external;  
gpm_my           : longint;cvar;external;  
gpm_timeout      : TTimeVal;cvar;external;  
_gpm_buf         : array[0..0] of char;cvar;external;  
_gpm_arg         : ^word;cvar;external;  
gpm_handler      : TGpmHandler;cvar;external;  
gpm_data         : pointer;cvar;external;  
gpm_roi_handler  : TGpmHandler;cvar;external;  
gpm_roi_data     : pointer;cvar;external;  
gpm_roi          : PGpmRoi;cvar;external;  
gpm_current_roi  : PGpmRoi;cvar;external;  
gpm_consolefd    : longint;cvar;external;  
Gpm_HandleRoi    : TGpmHandler;cvar;external;
```

## 6.3 Functions and procedures

### Gpm\_AnyDouble

Declaration: `function Gpm_AnyDouble(EventType : longint) : boolean;`

Description: `Gpm_AnyDouble` returns True if `EventType` contains the `GPM_DOUBLE` flag, False otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_StrictSingle` (70), `Gpm_AnySingle` (66), `Gpm_StrictDouble` (70), `Gpm_StrictTriple` (71), `Gpm_AnyTriple` (66)

### **Gpm\_AnySingle**

Declaration: `function Gpm_AnySingle(EventType : longint) : boolean;`

Description: `Gpm_AnySingle` returns True if `EventType` contains the `GPM_SINGLE` flag, False otherwise.

Errors:

See also: `Gpm_StrictSingle` (70), `Gpm_AnyDouble` (65), `Gpm_StrictDouble` (70), `Gpm_StrictTriple` (71), `Gpm_AnyTriple` (66)

### **Gpm\_AnyTriple**

Declaration: `function Gpm_AnyTriple(EventType : longint) : boolean;`

Description:

Errors:

See also: `Gpm_StrictSingle` (70), `Gpm_AnyDouble` (65), `Gpm_StrictDouble` (70), `Gpm_StrictTriple` (71), `Gpm_AnySingle` (66)

### **Gpm\_Close**

Declaration: `function Gpm_Close:longint;cdecl;external;`

Description: `Gpm_Close` closes the current connection, and pops the connection stack; this means that the previous connection becomes active again.

The function returns -1 if the current connection is not the last one, and it returns 0 if the current connection is the last one.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_Open` (69)

for an example, see `Gpm_GetEvent` (67).

### **Gpm\_FitValues**

Declaration: `function Gpm_FitValues(var x,y:longint):longint;cdecl;external;`

Description: `Gpm_fitValues` changes `x` and `y` so they fit in the visible screen. The actual mouse pointer is not affected by this function.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_FitValuesM` (66),

### **Gpm\_FitValuesM**

Declaration: `function Gpm_FitValuesM(var x,y:longint; margin:longint):longint;cdecl;external;`

Description: `Gpm_FitValuesM` changes `x` and `y` so they fit in the margin indicated by `margin`. If `margin` is -1, then the values are fitted to the screen. The actual mouse pointer is not affected by this function.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_FitValues` (66),

## Gpm\_GetEvent

**Declaration:** `function Gpm_GetEvent (var Event : TGpmEvent) : longint; cdecl; external;`

**Description:** `Gpm_GetEvent` Reads an event from the file descriptor `gpm_fd`. This file is only for internal use and should never be called by a client application.

It returns 1 on succes, and -1 on failue.

**Errors:** On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `seeflGpm_GetSnapshotGpmGetSnapshot`

### **Listing:** `gpmex/gpmex.pp`

---

```
program gpmex;

{
  Example program to demonstrate the use of the gpm unit.
}

uses gpm;

var
  connect : TGPMConnect;
  event : tgpmevent;

begin
  connect.EventMask:=GPM_MOVE or GPM_DRAG or GPM_DOWN or GPM_UP;
  connect.DefaultMask:=0;
  connect.MinMod:=0;
  connect.MaxMod:=0;
  if Gpm_Open(connect,0)=-1 then
    begin
      WriteLn('No mouse handler present. ');
      Halt(1);
    end;
  WriteLn('Click right button to end. ');
  Repeat
    gpm_getevent(Event);
    With Event do
      begin
        Write('Pos = (',X,',',Y,',') Buttons : ( ');
        if ( buttons and Gpm_b_left)<>0 then
          write(' left ');
        if ( buttons and Gpm_b_right)<>0 then
          write(' right ');
        if ( buttons and Gpm_b_middle)<>0 then
          Write(' middle ');
        Write(') Event : ');
        Case EventType and $F of
          GPM_MOVE: write(' Move ');
          GPM_DRAG: write(' Drag ');
          GPM_DOWN: write(' Down ');
          GPM_UP: write(' Up ');
        end;
        WriteLn;
      end;
    Until ( Event.Buttons and gpm_b_right)<>0;
  gpm_close;
```

**end.**

---

### **Gpm\_GetLibVersion**

Declaration: `function Gpm_GetLibVersion(var where:longint):pchar;cdecl;external;`

Description: `Gpm_GetLibVersion` returns a pointer to a version string, and returns in `where` an integer representing the version. The version string represents the version of the gpm library.

The return value is a `pchar`, which should not be deallocated, i.e. it is not on the heap.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_GetServerVersion` (68)

### **Gpm\_GetServerVersion**

Declaration: `function Gpm_GetServerVersion(var where:longint):pchar;cdecl;external;`

Description: `Gpm_GetServerVersion` returns a pointer to a version string, and returns in `where` an integer representing the version. The version string represents the version of the gpm server program.

The return value is a `pchar`, which should not be deallocated, i.e. it is not on the heap.

Errors: If the gpm program is not present, then the function returns `Nil`

See also: `Gpm_GetLibVersion` (68)

### **Gpm\_GetSnapshot**

Declaration: `function Gpm_GetSnapshot(var Event:TGpmEvent):longint;cdecl;external;`

Description: `Gpm_GetSnapshot` returns the picture that the server has of the current situation in `Event`. This call will not read the current situation from the mouse file descriptor, but returns a buffered version. The meaning of the fields is as follows:

**x,y**current position of the cursor.

**dx,dy**size of the window.

**vc**number of the virtual console.

**modifiers**keyboard shift state.

**buttons**buttons which are currently pressed.

**clicks**number of clicks (0,1 or 2).

The function returns the number of mouse buttons, or -1 if this information is not available.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_GetEvent` (67)

### Gpm\_LowerRoi

**Declaration:** `function Gpm_LowerRoi(which:PGpmRoi; after:PGpmRoi):PGpmRoi;cdecl;external;`

**Description:** `Gpm_LowerRoi` lowers the region of interest which after `after`. If `after` is `Nil`, the region of interest is moved to the bottom of the stack.

The return value is the new top of the region-of-interest stack.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `Gpm_RaiseRoi` (70), `Gpm_PopRoi` (69), `Gpm_PushRoi` (69)

### Gpm\_Open

**Declaration:** `function Gpm_Open(var Conn:TGpmConnect; Flag:longint):longint;cdecl;external;`

**Description:** `Gpm_Open` opens a new connection to the mouse server. The connection is described by the fields of the `conn` record:

**EventMask**A bitmask of the events the program wants to receive.

**DefaultMask**A bitmask to tell the library which events get their default treatment (text selection).

**minMod**the minimum amount of modifiers needed by the program.

**maxMod**the maximum amount of modifiers needed by the program.

if `Flag` is 0, then the application only receives events that come from its own terminal device. If it is negative it will receive all events. If the value is positive then it is considered a console number to which to connect.

The return value is -1 on error, or the file descriptor used to communicate with the client. Under an X-Term the return value is -2.

**Errors:** On Error, the return value is -1.

See also: `Gpm_Open` (69)

for an example, see `Gpm_GetEvent` (67).

### Gpm\_PopRoi

**Declaration:** `function Gpm_PopRoi(which:PGpmRoi):PGpmRoi;cdecl;external;`

**Description:** `Gpm_PopRoi` pops the topmost region of interest from the stack. It returns the next element on the stack, or `Nil` if the current element was the last one.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `Gpm_RaiseRoi` (70), `Gpm_LowerRoi` (69), `Gpm_PushRoi` (69)

### Gpm\_PushRoi

**Declaration:** `function Gpm_PushRoi(x1:longint; y1:longint; X2:longint; Y2:longint; mask:longint; fun:TGpmHandler; xtradata:pointer):PGpmRoi;cdecl;external;`

**Description:** `Gpm_PushRoi` puts a new *region of interest* on the stack. The region of interest is defined by a rectangle described by the corners (X1, Y1) and (X2, Y2).

The mask describes which events the handler `fun` will handle; `ExtraData` will be put in the `xtradata` field of the `TGPM_Roi` record passed to the fun handler.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_RaiseRoi` (70), `Gpm_PopRoi` (69), `Gpm_LowerRoi` (69)

### **Gpm\_RaiseRoi**

Declaration: `function Gpm_RaiseRoi(which:PGpmRoi; before:PGpmRoi):PGpmRoi;cdecl;external;`

Description: `Gpm_RaiseRoi` raises the *region of interest* which till it is on top of region before. If before is nil then the region is put on top of the stack. The returned value is the top of the stack.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_PushRoi` (69), `Gpm_PopRoi` (69), `Gpm_LowerRoi` (69)

### **Gpm\_Repeat**

Declaration: `function Gpm_Repeat(millisec:longint):longint;cdecl;external;`

Description: `Gpm_Repeat` returns 1 if no mouse event arrives in the next `millisec` milliseconds, it returns 0 otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_GetEvent` (67)

### **Gpm\_StrictDouble**

Declaration: `function Gpm_StrictDouble(EventType : longint) : boolean;`

Description: `Gpm_StrictDouble` returns true if `EventType` contains only a doubleclick event, False otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_StrictSingle` (70), `Gpm_AnyTriple` (66), `Gpm_AnyDouble` (65), `Gpm_StrictTriple` (71), `Gpm_AnySingle` (66)

### **Gpm\_StrictSingle**

Declaration: `function Gpm_StrictSingle(EventType : longint) : boolean;`

Description: `Gpm_StrictSingle` returns True if `EventType` contains only a singleclick event, False otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_AnyTriple` (66), `Gpm_StrictDouble` (70), `Gpm_AnyDouble` (65), `Gpm_StrictTriple` (71), `Gpm_AnySingle` (66)

### **Gpm\_StrictTriple**

Declaration: `function Gpm_StrictTriple(EventType : longint) : boolean;`

Description: `Gpm_StrictTriple` returns true if `EventType` contains only a triple click event, False otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_AnyTriple` (66), `Gpm_StrictDouble` (70), `Gpm_AnyDouble` (65), `Gpm_StrictSingle` (70), `Gpm_AnySingle` (66)



## Chapter 7

# The GO32 unit

This chapter of the documentation describe the GO32 unit for the Free Pascal compiler under DOS. It was donated by Thomas Schatzl (tom\_at\_work@geocities.com), for which my thanks. This unit was first written for DOS by Florian Klaempfl. This chapter is divided in four sections. The first two sections are an introduction to the GO32 unit. The third section lists the pre-defined constants, types and variables. The last section describes the functions which appear in the interface part of the GO32 unit.

### 7.1 Introduction

These docs contain information about the GO32 unit. Only the GO32V2 DPMI mode is discussed by me here due to the fact that new applications shouldn't be created with the older GO32V1 model. The go32v2 version is much more advanced and better. Additionally a lot of functions only work in DPMI mode anyway. I hope the following explanations and introductions aren't too confusing at all. If you notice an error or bug send it to the FPC mailing list or directly to me. So let's get started and happy and error free coding I wish you....

Thomas Schatzl, 25. August 1998

### 7.2 Protected mode memory organization

#### What is DPMI

The DOS Protected Mode Interface helps you with various aspects of protected mode programming. These are roughly divided into descriptor handling, access to DOS memory, management of interrupts and exceptions, calls to real mode functions and other stuff. Additionally it automatically provides swapping to disk for memory intensive applications. A DPMI host (either a Windows DOS box or CWSDPMI.EXE) provides these functions for your programs.

#### Selectors and descriptors

Descriptors are a bit like real mode segments; they describe (as the name implies) a memory area in protected mode. A descriptor contains information about segment length, its base address and the attributes of it (i.e. type, access rights, ...). These descriptors are stored internally in a so-called descriptor table, which is basically an array of such descriptors. Selectors are roughly an index into this table. Because these 'segments' can be up to 4 GB in size, 32 bits aren't sufficient anymore to describe a single memory location like in real mode. 48 bits are now needed to do this, a 32 bit address and a 16 bit sized selector. The GO32 unit provides the tseginfo record to store such a

pointer. But due to the fact that most of the time data is stored and accessed in the %ds selector, FPC assumes that all pointers point to a memory location of this selector. So a single pointer is still only 32 bits in size. This value represents the offset from the data segment base address to this memory location.

## FPC specialities

The %ds and %es selector **MUST** always contain the same value or some system routines may crash when called. The %fs selector is preloaded with the DOSMEMSELECTOR variable at startup, and it **MUST** be restored after use, because again FPC relies on this for some functions. Luckily we asm programmers can still use the %gs selector for our own purposes, but for how long ? See also: `get_cs` (88), `get_ds` (88), `gett_ss` (95), `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (81), `free_ldt_descriptor` (87), `segment_to_descriptor` (102), `get_next_selector_increment_value` (90), `get_segment_base_address` (95), `set_segment_base_address` (104), `set_segment_limit` (104), `create_code_segment_alias_descriptor` (84)

## DOS memory access

DOS memory is accessed by the predefined `dosmemselector` selector; the GO32 unit additionally provides some functions to help you with standard tasks, like copying memory from heap to DOS memory and the likes. Because of this it is strongly recommended to use them, but you are still free to use the provided standard memory accessing functions which use 48 bit pointers. The third, but only thought for compatibility purposes, is using the `mem[ ]`-arrays. These arrays map the whole 1 Mb DOS space. They shouldn't be used within new programs. To convert a segment:offset real mode address to a protected mode linear address you have to multiply the segment by 16 and add its offset. This linear address can be used in combination with the DOSMEMSELECTOR variable. See also: `dosmemget` (86), `dosmemput` (87), `dosmemmove` (86), `dosmemfillchar` (85), `dosmemfillword` (86), `mem[ ]`-arrays, `seg_move` (102), `seg_fillchar` (101), `seg_fillword` (101).

## I/O port access

The I/O port access is done via the various `inportb` (97), `outportb` (99) functions which are available. Additionally Free Pascal supports the Turbo Pascal `PORT[ ]`-arrays but it is by no means recommended to use them, because they're only for compatibility purposes. See also: `outportb` (99), `inportb` (97), `PORT[ ]`-arrays

## Processor access

These are some functions to access various segment registers (%cs, %ds, %ss) which makes your work a bit easier. See also: `get_cs` (88), `get_ds` (88), `get_ss` (95)

## Interrupt redirection

Interrupts are program interruption requests, which in one or another way get to the processor; there's a distinction between software and hardware interrupts. The former are explicitly called by an 'int' instruction and are a bit comparable to normal functions. Hardware interrupts come from external devices like the keyboard or mouse. Functions that handle hardware interrupts are called handlers.

## Handling interrupts with DPMI

The interrupt functions are real-mode procedures; they normally can't be called in protected mode without the risk of a protection fault. So the DPMI host creates an interrupt descriptor table for the application. Initially all software interrupts (except for int 31h, 2Fh and 21h function 4Ch) or external hardware interrupts are simply directed to a handler that reflects the interrupt in real-mode, i.e. the DPMI host's default handlers switch the CPU to real-mode, issue the interrupt and switch back to protected mode. The contents of general registers and flags are passed to the real mode handler and the modified registers and flags are returned to the protected mode handler. Segment registers and stack pointer are not passed between modes.

## Protected mode interrupts vs. Real mode interrupts

As mentioned before, there's a distinction between real mode interrupts and protected mode interrupts; the latter are protected mode programs, while the former must be real mode programs. To call a protected mode interrupt handler, an assembly 'int' call must be issued, while the other is called via the realintr() or intr() function. Consequently, a real mode interrupt then must either reside in DOS memory (<1MB) or the application must allocate a real mode callback address via the get\_rm\_callback() function.

## Creating own interrupt handlers

Interrupt redirection with FPC pascal is done via the set\_pm\_interrupt() for protected mode interrupts or via the set\_rm\_interrupt() for real mode interrupts.

## Disabling interrupts

The GO32 unit provides the two procedures disable() and enable() to disable and enable all interrupts.

## Hardware interrupts

Hardware interrupts are generated by hardware devices when something unusual happens; this could be a keypress or a mouse move or any other action. This is done to minimize CPU time, else the CPU would have to check all installed hardware for data in a big loop (this method is called 'polling') and this would take much time. A standard IBM-PC has two interrupt controllers, that are responsible for these hardware interrupts: both allow up to 8 different interrupt sources (IRQs, interrupt requests). The second controller is connected to the first through IRQ 2 for compatibility reasons, e.g. if controller 1 gets an IRQ 2, he hands the IRQ over to controller 2. Because of this up to 15 different hardware interrupt sources can be handled. IRQ 0 through IRQ 7 are mapped to interrupts 8h to Fh and the second controller (IRQ 8 to 15) is mapped to interrupt 70h to 77h. All of the code and data touched by these handlers MUST be locked (via the various locking functions) to avoid page faults at interrupt time. Because hardware interrupts are called (as in real mode) with interrupts disabled, the handler has to enable them before it returns to normal program execution. Additionally a hardware interrupt must send an EOI (end of interrupt) command to the responsible controller; this is accomplished by sending the value 20h to port 20h (for the first controller) or A0h (for the second controller). The following example shows how to redirect the keyboard interrupt.

---

**Program** Keyclick ;

```
uses crt ,
    go32;
```

```
const kbdint = $9;

var oldint9_handler : tseinfo;
    newint9_handler : tseinfo;

    clickproc : pointer;

{$ASMMODE DIRECT}
procedure int9_handler; assembler;
asm
    cli
    pushal
    movw %cs:INT9_DS, %ax
    movw %ax, %ds
    movw %ax, %es
    movw U_GO32_DOSMEMSELECTOR, %ax
    movw %ax, %fs
    call *_CLICKPROC
    popal

    ljmp %cs:OLDHANDLER

INT9_DS: . word 0
OLDHANDLER:
    . long 0
    . word 0
end;

procedure int9_dummy; begin end;

procedure clicker;
begin
    sound(500); delay(10); nosound;
end;

procedure clicker_dummy; begin end;

procedure install_click;
begin
    clickproc := @clicker;
    lock_data(clickproc, sizeof(clickproc));
    lock_data(dosmemselector, sizeof(dosmemselector));

    lock_code(@clicker,
        longint(@clicker_dummy) - longint(@clicker));
    lock_code(@int9_handler,
        longint(@int9_dummy)
        - longint(@int9_handler));
    newint9_handler.offset := @int9_handler;
    newint9_handler.segment := get_cs;
    get_pm_interrupt(kbdint, oldint9_handler);
asm
    movw %ds, %ax
    movw %ax, INT9_DS
    movl _OLDINT9_HANDLER, %eax
    movl %eax, OLDHANDLER
    movw 4+_OLDINT9_HANDLER, %ax
    movw %ax, 4+OLDHANDLER
```

```

    end;
    set_pm_interrupt ( kbdint , newint9_handler );
end;

procedure remove_click ;
begin
    set_pm_interrupt ( kbdint , oldint9_handler );
    unlock_data ( dosmemselector , sizeof ( dosmemselector ) );
    unlock_data ( clickproc , sizeof ( clickproc ) );
    unlock_code ( @clicker ,
        longint ( @clicker_dummy )
        - longint ( @clicker ) );
    unlock_code ( @int9_handler ,
        longint ( @int9_dummy )
        - longint ( @int9_handler ) );
end;

var ch : char;

begin
    install_click ;
    WriteIn ( ' Enter any message.' ,
        ' Press return when finished ' );
    while ( ch <> #13 ) do begin
        ch := readkey ; write ( ch );
    end;
    remove_click ;
end.
```

---

## Software interrupts

Ordinarily, a handler installed with `set_pm_interrupt` (103) only services software interrupts that are executed in protected mode; real mode software interrupts can be redirected by `set_rm_interrupt` (104). See also `set_rm_interrupt` (104), `get_rm_interrupt` (94), `set_pm_interrupt` (103), `get_pm_interrupt` (90), `lock_data` (98), `lock_code` (98), `enable` (87), `disable` (84), `outportb` (99) Executing software interrupts Simply execute a `realintr`() call with the desired interrupt number and the supplied register data structure. But some of these interrupts require you to supply them a pointer to a buffer where they can store data to or obtain data from in memory. These interrupts are real mode functions and so they only can access the first Mb of linear address space, not FPC's data segment. For this reason FPC supplies a pre-initialized DOS memory location within the GO32 unit. This buffer is internally used for DOS functions too and so it's contents may change when calling other procedures. It's size can be obtained with `tb_size` (105) and it's linear address via `transfer_buffer` (105). Another way is to allocate a completely new DOS memory area via the `global_dos_alloc` (96) function for your use and supply its real mode address. See also: `tb_size` (105), `transfer_buffer` (105), `global_dos_alloc` (96), `global_dos_free` (97), `realintr` (100) The following examples illustrate the use of software interrupts.

---

```

Program softint ;

uses go32;

var r : trealregs;

begin
    r.al := $01;
    realintr ($21, r);
```

```
    WriteIn('DOS v', r.al, '.', r.ah, ' detected');
end;

```

---

```
Program rmpm_int;

uses crt, go32;

{$ASMMODE DIRECT}

var r : trealregs;
    axreg : Word;

    oldint21h : tseginfo;
    newint21h : tseginfo;

procedure int21h_handler; assembler;
asm
    cmpw $0x3001, %ax
    jne CallOld
    movw $0x3112, %ax
    iret

CallOld:
    ljmp %cs:OLDHANDLER

OLDHANDLER: . long 0
             . word 0
end;

procedure resume;
begin
    WriteIn;
    Write('-- press any key to resume --'); readkey;
    gotoxy(1, wherey); clreol;
end;

begin
    clrscr;
    WriteIn('Executing real mode interrupt');
    resume;
    r.ah := $30; r.al := $01; realintr($21, r);
    WriteIn('DOS v', r.al, '.', r.ah, ' detected');
    resume;
    WriteIn('Executing protected mode interrupt',
            ' without our own handler');
    WriteIn;
    asm
        movb $0x30, %ah
        movb $0x01, %al
        int $0x21
        movw %ax, _AXREG
    end;
    WriteIn('DOS v', r.al, '.', r.ah, ' detected');
    resume;
    WriteIn('As you can see the DPML hosts',
            ' default protected mode handler');
    WriteIn('simply redirects it to the real mode handler');
    resume;
end;
```

```
WriteIn('Now exchanging the protected mode',
        'interrupt with our own handler');
resume;

newint21h.offset := @int21h_handler;
newint21h.segment := get_cs;
get_pm_interrupt($21, oldint21h);
asm
    movl _OLDINT21H, %eax
    movl %eax, OLDHANDLER
    movw 4+_OLDINT21H, %ax
    movw %ax, 4+OLDHANDLER
end;
set_pm_interrupt($21, newint21h);

WriteIn('Executing real mode interrupt again');
resume;
r.ah := $30; r.al := $01; realintr($21, r);
WriteIn('DOS v', r.al, '.', r.ah, ' detected');
WriteIn;
WriteIn('See, it didn''t change in any way. ');
resume;
WriteIn('Now calling protected mode interrupt');
resume;
asm
    movb $0x30, %ah
    movb $0x01, %al
    int $0x21
    movw %ax, _AXREG
end;
WriteIn('DOS v', lo(axreg), '.', hi(axreg), ' detected');
WriteIn;
WriteIn('Now you can see that there''s',
        ' a distinction between the two ways of ');
WriteIn('calling interrupts ...');
set_pm_interrupt($21, oldint21h);
end.
```

---

## Real mode callbacks

The callback mechanism can be thought of as the converse of calling a real mode procedure (i.e. interrupt), which allows your program to pass information to a real mode program, or obtain services from it in a manner that's transparent to the real mode program. In order to make a real mode callback available, you must first get the real mode callback address of your procedure and the selector and offset of a register data structure. This real mode callback address (this is a segment:offset address) can be passed to a real mode program via a software interrupt, a DOS memory block or any other convenient mechanism. When the real mode program calls the callback (via a far call), the DPMI host saves the registers contents in the supplied register data structure, switches into protected mode, and enters the callback routine with the following settings:

- interrupts disabled
- %CS:%EIP = 48 bit pointer specified in the original call to `get_rm_callback` (91)
- %DS:%ESI = 48 bit pointer to real mode SS:SP
- %ES:%EDI = 48 bit pointer of real mode register data structure.

- `%SS:%ESP` = locked protected mode stack
- All other registers undefined

The callback procedure can then extract its parameters from the real mode register data structure and/or copy parameters from the real mode stack to the protected mode stack. Recall that the segment register fields of the real mode register data structure contain segment or paragraph addresses that are not valid in protected mode. Far pointers passed in the real mode register data structure must be translated to virtual addresses before they can be used with a protected mode program. The callback procedure exits by executing an IRET with the address of the real mode register data structure in `%ES:%EDI`, passing information back to the real mode caller by modifying the contents of the real mode register data structure and/or manipulating the contents of the real mode stack. The callback procedure is responsible for setting the proper address for resumption of real mode execution into the real mode register data structure; typically, this is accomplished by extracting the return address from the real mode stack and placing it into the `%CS:%EIP` fields of the real mode register data structure. After the IRET, the DPMI host switches the CPU back into real mode, loads ALL registers with the contents of the real mode register data structure, and finally returns control to the real mode program. All variables and code touched by the callback procedure **MUST** be locked to prevent page faults. See also: `get_rm_callback` (91), `free_rm_callback` (88), `lock_code` (98), `lock_data` (98)

## 7.3 Types, Variables and Constants

### Constants

#### Constants returned by `get_run_mode`

Tells you under what memory environment (e.g. memory manager) the program currently runs.

```
rm_unknown = 0; { unknown }
rm_raw     = 1; { raw (without HIMEM) }
rm_xms     = 2; { XMS (for example with HIMEM, without EMM386) }
rm_vcpi    = 3; { VCPI (for example HIMEM and EMM386) }
rm_dpml    = 4; { DPMI (for example \dos box or 386Max) }
```

Note: GO32V2 *always* creates DPMI programs, so you need a suitable DPMI host like CWS-DPMI.EXE or a Windows DOS box. So you don't need to check it, these constants are only useful in GO32V1 mode.

#### Processor flags constants

They are provided for a simple check with the flags identifier in the `trealregs` type. To check a single flag, simply do an AND operation with the flag you want to check. It's set if the result is the same as the flag value.

```
const carryflag = $001;
parityflag      = $004;
auxcarryflag    = $010;
zeroflag        = $040;
signflag        = $080;
trapflag        = $100;
interruptflag    = $200;
directionflag    = $400;
overflowflag     = $800;
```



Table 7.1: Record description

Record entry	Description
available_memory	Largest available free block in bytes.
available_pages	Maximum unlocked page allocation in pages
available_lockable_pages	Maximum locked page allocation in pages.
linear_space	Linear address space size in pages.
unlocked_pages	Total number of unlocked pages.
available_physical_pages	Total number of free pages.
total_physical_pages	Total number of physical pages.
free_linear_space	Free linear address space in pages.
max_pages_in_paging_file	Size of paging file/partition in pages.

## Predefined types

```
type tmeminfo = record
    available_memory : Longint;
    available_pages : Longint;
    available_lockable_pages : Longint;
    linear_space : Longint;
    unlocked_pages : Longint;
    available_physical_pages : Longint;
    total_physical_pages : Longint;
    free_linear_space : Longint;
    max_pages_in_paging_file : Longint;
    reserved : array[0..2] of Longint;
end;
```

Holds information about the memory allocation, etc. NOTE: The value of a field is -1 (0fffffffh) if the value is unknown, it's only guaranteed, that available\_memory contains a valid value. The size of the pages can be determined by the get\_page\_size() function.

```
type
trealregs = record
    case Integer of
        1: { 32-bit }
            (EDI, ESI, EBP, Res, EBX, EDX, ECX, EAX: Longint;
             Flags, ES, DS, FS, GS, IP, CS, SP, SS: Word);
        2: { 16-bit }
            (DI, DI2, SI, SI2, BP, BP2, R1, R2: Word;
             BX, BX2, DX, DX2, CX, CX2, AX, AX2: Word);
        3: { 8-bit }
            (stuff: array[1..4] of Longint;
             BL, BH, BL2, BH2, DL, DH, DL2, DH2, CL,
             CH, CL2, CH2, AL, AH, AL2, AH2: Byte);
        4: { Compat }
            (RealEDI, RealESI, RealEBP, RealRES, RealEBX,
             RealEDX, RealECX, RealEAX: Longint;
             RealFlags, RealES, RealDS, RealFS, RealGS,
             RealIP, RealCS, RealSP, RealSS: Word);
    end;
registers = trealregs;
```

These two types contain the data structure to pass register values to a interrupt handler or real mode callback.

```
type tseginfo = record
    offset : Pointer; segment : Word; end;
```

This record is used to store a full 48-bit pointer. This may be either a protected mode selector:offset address or in real mode a segment:offset address, depending on application. See also: Selectors and descriptors, DOS memory access, Interrupt redirection

### Variables.

```
var dosmemselector : Word;
```

Selector to the DOS memory. The whole DOS memory is automatically mapped to this single descriptor at startup. This selector is the recommended way to access DOS memory.

```
var int31error : Word;
```

This variable holds the result of a DPMI interrupt call. Any nonzero value must be treated as a critical failure.

## 7.4 Functions and Procedures

### allocate\_ldt\_descriptors

Declaration: `Function allocate_ldt_descriptors (count : Word) : Word;`

Description: Allocates a number of new descriptors. Parameters:

**count:** specifies the number of requested unique descriptors.

Return value: The base selector. Notes: The descriptors allocated must be initialized by the application with other function calls. This function returns descriptors with a limit and size value set to zero. If more than one descriptor was requested, the function returns a base selector referencing the first of a contiguous array of descriptors. The selector values for subsequent descriptors in the array can be calculated by adding the value returned by the `get_next_selector_increment_value` (90) function.

Errors: Check the `int31error` variable.

See also: `free_ldt_descriptor` (87), `get_next_selector_increment_value` (90), `segment_to_descriptor` (102), `create_code_segment_alias_descriptor` (84), `set_segment_limit` (104), `set_segment_base_address` (104)

---

```
Program sel_des ;
```

```
uses crt ,
      go32;
```

```
const maxx = 80;
      maxy = 25;
      bytespercell = 2;
      screensize = maxx * maxy * bytespercell;
```

```
linB8000 = $B800 * 16;

type string80 = string [80];

var
  text_save : array [0.. screensize-1] of byte;
  text_oldx, text_oldy : Word;

  text_sel : Word;

procedure status(s : string80);
begin
  gotoxy(1, 1);
  clreol;
  write(s);
  readkey;
end;

procedure selinfo(sel : Word);
begin
  gotoxy(1, 24);
  clreol;
  writeln('Descriptor base address : $',
    hexstr(get_segment_base_address(sel), 8));
  clreol;
  write('Descriptor limit : ',
    get_segment_limit(sel));
end;

function makechar(ch : char; color : byte) : Word;
begin
  result := byte(ch) or (color shl 8);
end;

begin
  seg_move(dosmemselector, linB8000,
    get_ds, longint(@text_save), screensize);
  text_oldx := wherex; text_oldy := wherey;
  seg_fillword(dosmemselector, linB8000,
    screensize div 2,
    makechar(' ', Black or (Black shl 4)));
  status('Creating selector ' +
    '''text_sel''' to a part of text screen memory');
  text_sel := allocate_ldt_descriptors(1);
  set_segment_base_address(text_sel, linB8000
    + bytespercell * maxx * 1);
  set_segment_limit(text_sel,
    screensize-1-bytespercell*maxx*3);
  selinfo(text_sel);

  status('and clearing entire memory ' +
    'selected by '''text_sel''' descriptor');
  seg_fillword(text_sel, 0,
    (get_segment_limit(text_sel)+1) div 2,
    makechar(' ', LightBlue shl 4));

  status('Notice that only the memory described'+
    ' by the descriptor changed, nothing else');
```

```
status('Now reducing it''s limit and base and '+
      'setting it''s described memory');
set_segment_base_address(text_sel,
    get_segment_base_address(text_sel)
    + bytespercell * maxx);
set_segment_limit(text_sel,
    get_segment_limit(text_sel)
    - bytespercell * maxx * 2);
selinfo(text_sel);
status('Notice that the base addr increased by '+
      'one line but the limit decreased by 2 lines');
status('This should give you the hint that the '+
      'limit is relative to the base');
seg_fillword(text_sel, 0,
    (get_segment_limit(text_sel)+1) div 2,
    makechar(#176, LightMagenta or Brown shl 4));

status('Now let''s get crazy and copy 10 lines'+
      ' of data from the previously saved screen');
seg_move(get_ds, longint(@text_save),
    text_sel, maxx * bytespercell * 2,
    maxx * bytespercell * 10);

status('At last freeing the descriptor and '+
      'restoring the old screen contents..');
status('I hope this little program may give '+
      'you some hints on working with descriptors');
free_ldt_descriptor(text_sel);
seg_move(get_ds, longint(@text_save),
    dosmemselector, linB8000, screensize);
gotoxy(text_oldx, text_oldy);
end.
```

---

### allocate\_memory\_block

Declaration: Function allocate\_memory\_block (size:Longint) : Longint;

Description: Allocates a block of linear memory. Parameters:

**size:** Size of requested linear memory block in bytes.

Returned values: blockhandle - the memory handle to this memory block. Linear address of the requested memory. Notes: WARNING: According to my DPMI docs this function is not implemented correctly. Normally you should also get a blockhandle to this block after successful operation. This handle can then be used to free the memory block afterwards or use this handle for other purposes. Since the function isn't implemented correctly, and doesn't return a blockhandle, the block can't be deallocated and is hence unusable ! This function doesn't allocate any descriptors for this block, it's the applications responsibility to allocate and initialize for accessing this memory.

Errors: Check the int31error variable.

See also: free\_memory\_block (87)

### copyfromdos

Declaration: Procedure copyfromdos (var addr; len : Longint);

Description: Copies data from the pre-allocated DOS memory transfer buffer to the heap. Parameters:

**addr:** data to copy to.

**len:** number of bytes to copy to heap.

Notes: Can only be used in conjunction with the DOS memory transfer buffer.

Errors: Check the `int31error` variable.

See also: `tb_size` (105), `transfer_buffer` (105), `copytodos` (84)

### **copytodos**

Declaration: `Procedure copytodos (var addr; len : Longint);`

Description: Copies data from heap to the pre-allocated DOS memory buffer. Parameters:

**addr:** data to copy from.

**len:** number of bytes to copy to DOS memory buffer.

Notes: This function fails if you try to copy more bytes than the transfer buffer is in size. It can only be used in conjunction with the transfer buffer.

Errors: Check the `int31error` variable.

See also: `tb_size` (105), `transfer_buffer` (105), `copyfromdos` (83)

### **create\_code\_segment\_alias\_descriptor**

Declaration: `Function create_code_segment_alias_descriptor (seg : Word) : Word;`

Description: Creates a new descriptor that has the same base and limit as the specified descriptor. Parameters:

**seg:** Descriptor.

Return values: The data selector (alias). Notes: In effect, the function returns a copy of the descriptor. The descriptor alias returned by this function will not track changes to the original descriptor. In other words, if an alias is created with this function, and the base or limit of the original segment is then changed, the two descriptors will no longer map the same memory.

Errors: Check the `int31error` variable.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (81), `set_segment_limit` (104), `set_segment_base_address` (104)

### **disable**

Declaration: `Procedure disable ;`

Description: Disables all hardware interrupts by execution a CLI instruction. Parameters: None.

Errors: None.

See also: `enable` (87)

**dosmemfillchar**

Declaration: Procedure dosmemfillchar (seg, ofs : Word; count : Longint; c : char);

Description: Sets a region of DOS memory to a specific byte value. Parameters:

**seg:** real mode segment.

**ofs:** real mode offset.

**count:** number of bytes to set.

**c:** value to set memory to.

Notes: No range check is performed.

Errors: None.

See also: dosmemput (87), dosmemget (86), dosmemmove (86), dosmemmove, dosmemfillword (86), seg\_move (102), seg\_fillchar (101), seg\_fillword (101)

---

```
Program textmess;

uses crt , go32;

const columns = 80;
      rows = 25;
      screensize = rows*columns*2;

      text = '! Hello world !' ;

var textofs : Longint;
    save_screen : array [0.. screensize -1] of byte;
    curx , cury : Integer;

begin
  randomize;
  dosmemget($B800, 0, save_screen , screensize);
  curx := wherex; cury := wherey;
  gotoxy(1, 1); Write(text);
  textofs := screensize + length(text)*2;
  dosmemmove($B800, 0, $B800, textofs , length(text)*2);
  dosmemfillchar($B800, 0, screensize , #0);
  while ( not keypressed ) do
    begin
      dosmemfillchar ($B800,
        textofs + random(length(text))*2 + 1,
        1, char(random(255)));
      dosmemmove($B800, textofs , $B800,
        random(columns)*2+random(rows)*columns*2,
        length(text)*2);
      delay(1);
    end;
  readkey;
  readkey;
  dosmemput($B800, 0, save_screen , screensize);
  gotoxy(curx , cury);
end.
```

---

### **dosmemfillword**

**Declaration:** `Procedure dosmemfillword (seg, ofs : Word; count : Longint; w : Word);`

**Description:** Sets a region of DOS memory to a specific word value. Parameters:

**seg:** real mode segment.

**ofs:** real mode offset.

**count:** number of words to set.

**w:** value to set memory to.

**Notes:** No range check is performed.

**Errors:** None.

See also: dosmempur (87), dosmemget (86), dosmemmove (86), dosmemfillchar (85), seg\_move (102), seg\_fillchar (101), seg\_fillword (101)

### **dosmemget**

**Declaration:** `Procedure dosmemget (seg : Word; ofs : Word; var data; count : Longint);`

**Description:** Copies data from the DOS memory onto the heap. Parameters:

**seg:** source real mode segment.

**ofs:** source real mode offset.

**data:** destination.

**count:** number of bytes to copy.

**Notes:** No range checking is performed.

**Errors:** None.

See also: dosmempur (87), dosmemmove (86), dosmemfillchar (85), dosmemfillword (86), seg\_move (102), seg\_fillchar (101), seg\_fillword (101)

For an example, see global\_dos\_alloc (96).

### **dosmemmove**

**Declaration:** `Procedure dosmemmove (sseg, sofs, dseg, dofs : Word; count : Longint);`

**Description:** Copies count bytes of data between two DOS real mode memory locations. Parameters:

**sseg:** source real mode segment.

**sofs:** source real mode offset.

**dseg:** destination real mode segment.

**dofs:** destination real mode offset.

**count:** number of bytes to copy.

**Notes:** No range check is performed in any way.

**Errors:** None.

See also: dosmempur (87), dosmemget (86), dosmemfillchar (85), dosmemfillword (86) seg\_move (102), seg\_fillchar (101), seg\_fillword (101)

For an example, see seg\_fillchar (101).

**dosmemput**

Declaration: `Procedure dosmemput (seg : Word; ofs : Word; var data; count : Longint);`

Description: Copies heap data to DOS real mode memory. Parameters:

**seg:** destination real mode segment.

**ofs:** destination real mode offset.

**data:** source.

**count:** number of bytes to copy.

Notes: No range checking is performed.

Errors: None.

See also: `dosmemget` (86), `dosmemmove` (86), `dosmemfillchar` (85), `dosmemfillword` (86), `seg_move` (102), `seg_fillchar` (101), `seg_fillword` (101)

For an example, see `global_dos_alloc` (96).

**enable**

Declaration: `Procedure enable ;`

Description: Enables all hardware interrupts by executing a STI instruction. Parameters: None.

Errors: None.

See also: `disable` (84)

**free\_ldt\_descriptor**

Declaration: `Function free_ldt_descriptor (des : Word) : boolean;`

Description: Frees a previously allocated descriptor. Parameters:

**des:** The descriptor to be freed.

Return value: `True` if successful, `False` otherwise. Notes: After this call this selector is invalid and must not be used for any memory operations anymore. Each descriptor allocated with `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (81) must be freed individually with this function, even if it was previously allocated as a part of a contiguous array of descriptors.

Errors: Check the `int31error` variable.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (81), `get_next_selector_increment_value` (90)

For an example, see `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (81).

**free\_memory\_block**

Declaration: `Function free_memory_block (blockhandle : Longint) : boolean;`

Description: Frees a previously allocated memory block. Parameters:

**blockhandle:** the handle to the memory area to free.



Return value: `True` if successful, `false` otherwise. Notes: Frees memory that was previously allocated with `allocate_memory_block` (83) . This function doesn't free any descriptors mapped to this block, it's the application's responsibility.

Errors: Check `int31error` variable.

See also: `allocate_memory_block` (83)

### **free\_rm\_callback**

Declaration: `Function free_rm_callback (var intaddr : tseginfo) : boolean;`

Description: Releases a real mode callback address that was previously allocated with the `get_rm_callback` (91) function. Parameters:

**intaddr:** real mode address buffer returned by `get_rm_callback` (91) .

Return values: `True` if successful, `False` if not

Errors: Check the `int31error` variable.

See also: `set_rm_interrupt` (104), `get_rm_callback` (91)

For an example, see `get_rm_callback` (91).

### **get\_cs**

Declaration: `Function get_cs : Word;`

Description: Returns the `cs` selector. Parameters: None. Return values: The content of the `cs` segment register.

Errors: None.

See also: `get_ds` (88), `get_ss` (95)

For an example, see `set_pm_interrupt` (103).

### **get\_descriptor\_access\_rights**

Declaration: `Function get_descriptor_access_rights (d : Word) : Longint;`

Description: Gets the access rights of a descriptor. Parameters:

`d` selector to descriptor.

Return value: Access rights bit field.

Errors: Check the `int31error` variable.

See also: `set_descriptor_access_rights` (102)

### **get\_ds**

Declaration: `Function get_ds : Word;`

Description: Returns the `ds` selector. Parameters: None. Return values: The content of the `ds` segment register.

Errors: None.

See also: `get_cs` (88), `get_ss` (95)

**get\_linear\_addr**

Declaration: Function `get_linear_addr (phys_addr : Longint; size : Longint) : Longint;`

Description: Converts a physical address into a linear address. Parameters:

**phys\_addr:** physical address of device.

**size:** Size of region to map in bytes.

Return value: Linear address that can be used to access the physical memory. Notes: It's the applications responsibility to allocate and set up a descriptor for access to the memory. This function shouldn't be used to map real mode addresses.

Errors: Check the `int31error` variable.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (81), `set_segment_limit` (104), `set_segment_base_address` (104)

**get\_meminfo**

Declaration: Function `get_meminfo (var meminfo : tmeminfo) : boolean;`

Description: Returns information about the amount of available physical memory, linear address space, and disk space for page swapping. Parameters:

**meminfo:** buffer to fill memory information into.

Return values: Due to an implementation bug this function always returns `False`, but it always succeeds. Notes: Only the first field of the returned structure is guaranteed to contain a valid value. Any fields that are not supported by the DPMI host will be set by the host to `-1` (`0FFFFFFFFH`) to indicate that the information is not available. The size of the pages used by the DPMI host can be obtained with the `get_page_size` (90) function.

Errors: Check the `int31error` variable.

See also: `get_page_size` (90)

---

```
Program meminf;

uses go32;

var meminfo : tmeminfo;

begin
  get_meminfo(meminfo);
  if (int31error <> 0) then
    begin
      Writeln('Error getting DPMI memory information ... Halting');
      Writeln('DPMI error number : ', int31error);
    end
  else
    with meminfo do
      begin
        Writeln('Largest available free block : ',
          available_memory div 1024, ' kbytes');
        if (available_pages <> -1) then
          Writeln('Maximum available unlocked pages : ',
            available_pages);
        if (available_lockable_pages <> -1) then
```

```
    Writeln('Maximum lockable available pages : ',
            available_lockable_pages);
if (linear_space <> -1) then
    Writeln('Linear address space size : ',
            linear_space*get_page_size div 1024,
            ' kbytes');
if (unlocked_pages <> -1) then
    Writeln('Total number of unlocked pages : ',
            unlocked_pages);
if (available_physical_pages <> -1) then
    Writeln('Total number of free pages : ',
            available_physical_pages);
if (total_physical_pages <> -1) then
    Writeln('Total number of physical pages : ',
            total_physical_pages);
if (free_linear_space <> -1) then
    Writeln('Free linear address space : ',
            free_linear_space*get_page_size div 1024,
            ' kbytes');
if (max_pages_in_paging_file <> -1) then
    Writeln('Maximum size of paging file : ',
            max_pages_in_paging_file*get_page_size div 1024,
            ' kbytes');
end;
end.
```

---

### **get\_next\_selector\_increment\_value**

Declaration: Function `get_next_selector_increment_value` : `Word`;

Description: Returns the selector increment value when allocating multiple subsequent descriptors via `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (81). Parameters: None. Return value: Selector increment value. Notes: Because `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (81) only returns the selector for the first descriptor and so the value returned by this function can be used to calculate the selectors for subsequent descriptors in the array.

Errors: Check the `int31error` variable.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (81), `free_ldt_descriptor` (87)

### **get\_page\_size**

Declaration: Function `get_page_size` : `Longint`;

Description: Returns the size of a single memory page. Return value: Size of a single page in bytes. Notes: The returned size is typically 4096 bytes.

Errors: Check the `int31error` variable.

See also: `get_meminfo` (89)

For an example, see `get_meminfo` (89).

### **get\_pm\_interrupt**

Declaration: Function `get_pm_interrupt` (`vector` : `byte`; `var intaddr` : `tseginfo`)  
: `boolean`;

Description: Returns the address of a current protected mode interrupt handler. Parameters:

**vector:** interrupt handler number you want the address to.

**intaddr:** buffer to store address.

Return values: True if successful, False if not. Notes: The returned address is a protected mode selector:offset address.

Errors: Check the `int31error` variable.

See also: `set_pm_interrupt` (103), `set_rm_interrupt` (104), `get_rm_interrupt` (94)

For an example, see `set_pm_interrupt` (103).

### **get\_rm\_callback**

Declaration: `Function get_rm_callback (pm_func : pointer; const reg : trealregs;  
var rmcb: tseginfo) : boolean;`

Description: Returns a unique real mode `segment:offset` address, known as a "real mode callback," that will transfer control from real mode to a protected mode procedure. Parameters:

**pm\_func:** pointer to the protected mode callback function.

**reg:** supplied registers structure.

**rmcb:** buffer to real mode address of callback function.

Return values: True if successful, otherwise False. Notes: Callback addresses obtained with this function can be passed by a protected mode program for example to an interrupt handler, device driver, or TSR, so that the real mode program can call procedures within the protected mode program or notify the protected mode program of an event. The contents of the supplied `regs` structure is not valid after function call, but only at the time of the actual callback.

Errors: Check the `int31error` variable.

See also: `free_rm_callback` (88)

---

```
Program callback ;  
  
uses crt ,  
      go32;  
  
const mouseint = $33;  
  
var mouse_regs    : trealregs;  
    mouse_seginfo : tseginfo;  
  
var mouse_numbuttons : longint;  
  
    mouse_action : word;  
    mouse_x, mouse_y : Word;  
    mouse_b : Word;  
  
    userproc_installed : Longbool;  
    userproc_length : Longint;  
    userproc_proc : pointer;
```

```
{$ASMMODE DIRECT}
procedure callback_handler ; assembler;
asm
    pushw %es
    pushw %ds
    pushl %edi
    pushl %esi
    cmpl $1, _USERPROC_INSTALLED
    je . LNoCallback
    pushal
    movw %es, %ax
    movw %ax, %ds
    movw U_GO32_DOSMEMSELECTOR, %ax
    movw %ax, %fs
    call *_USERPROC_PROC
    popal
.LNoCallback:

    popl %esi
    popl %edi
    popw %ds
    popw %es

    movl (%esi), %eax
    movl %eax, %es: 42(%edi)
    addw $4, %es: 46(%edi)
    iret
end;

procedure mouse_dummy; begin end;

procedure textuserproc;
begin
    mouse_b := mouse_regs.bx;
    mouse_x := ( mouse_regs.cx shr 3) + 1;
    mouse_y := ( mouse_regs.dx shr 3) + 1;
end;

procedure install_mouse (userproc : pointer;
                        userprocLen : longint);
var r : trealregs;
begin
    r.eax := $0; realintr(mouseint, r);
    if (r.eax <> $FFFF) then begin
        Writeln('No Mircosoft compatible mouse found');
        Write('A Mircosoft compatible mouse driver is');
        writeln(' necessary to run this example');
        halt;
    end;
    if (r.bx = $ffff) then mouse_numbuttons := 2
    else mouse_numbuttons := r.bx;
    Writeln(mouse_numbuttons,
        ' button Mircosoft compatible mouse found. ');
    if (userproc <> nil) then begin
        userproc_proc := userproc;
        userproc_installed := true;
        userproc_length := userprocLen;
        lock_code(userproc_proc, userproc_length);
    end;
```

```
end else begin
    userproc_proc := nil;
    userproc_length := 0;
    userproc_installed := false;
end;
lock_data(mouse_x, sizeof(mouse_x));
lock_data(mouse_y, sizeof(mouse_y));
lock_data(mouse_b, sizeof(mouse_b));
lock_data(mouse_action, sizeof(mouse_action));

lock_data(userproc_installed, sizeof(userproc_installed));
lock_data(@userproc_proc, sizeof(userproc_proc));

lock_data(mouse_regs, sizeof(mouse_regs));
lock_data(mouse_seginfo, sizeof(mouse_seginfo));
lock_code(@callback_handler,
    longint(@mouse_dummy)
    - longint(@callback_handler));
get_rm_callback(@callback_handler, mouse_regs, mouse_seginfo);
r.eax := $0c; r.ecx := $7f; r.edx := longint(mouse_seginfo.offset);
r.es := mouse_seginfo.segment;
realintr(mouseint, r);
r.eax := $01;
realintr(mouseint, r);
end;

procedure remove_mouse;
var r : trealregs;
begin
    r.eax := $02; realintr(mouseint, r);
    r.eax := $0c; r.ecx := 0; r.edx := 0; r.es := 0;
    realintr(mouseint, r);
    free_rm_callback(mouse_seginfo);
    if (userproc_installed) then begin
        unlock_code(userproc_proc, userproc_length);
        userproc_proc := nil;
        userproc_length := 0;
        userproc_installed := false;
    end;
    unlock_data(mouse_x, sizeof(mouse_x));
    unlock_data(mouse_y, sizeof(mouse_y));
    unlock_data(mouse_b, sizeof(mouse_b));
    unlock_data(mouse_action, sizeof(mouse_action));

    unlock_data(@userproc_proc, sizeof(userproc_proc));
    unlock_data(userproc_installed,
        sizeof(userproc_installed));

    unlock_data(mouse_regs, sizeof(mouse_regs));
    unlock_data(mouse_seginfo, sizeof(mouse_seginfo));
    unlock_code(@callback_handler,
        longint(@mouse_dummy)
        - longint(@callback_handler));
    fillchar(mouse_seginfo, sizeof(mouse_seginfo), 0);
end;

begin
```

```
install_mouse ( @textuserproc , 400);
WriteLn ( 'Press any key to exit ...' );
while ( not keypressed ) do begin
    { write mouse state info }
    gotoxy (1, wherey);
    write ( 'MouseX : ' , mouse_x:2,
           ' MouseY : ' , mouse_y:2,
           ' Buttons : ' , mouse_b:2);
end;
remove_mouse;
end.
```

---

### **get\_rm\_interrupt**

Declaration: `Function get_rm_interrupt (vector : byte; var intaddr : tseginfo)  
: boolean;`

Description: Returns the contents of the current machine's real mode interrupt vector for the specified interrupt.

Parameters:

**vector:** interrupt vector number.

**intaddr:** buffer to store real mode segment:offset address.

Return values: True if successful, False otherwise. Notes: The returned address is a real mode segment address, which isn't valid in protected mode.

Errors: Check the `int31error` variable.

See also: `set_rm_interrupt` (104), `set_pm_interrupt` (103), `get_pm_interrupt` (90)

### **get\_run\_mode**

Declaration: `Function get_run_mode : Word;`

Description: Returns the current mode your application runs with. Return values: One of the constants used by this function.

Errors: None.

See also: constants returned by `get_run_mode` (94)

---

```
Program getrunmd;

uses go32;

begin
{
    depending on the detected environment,
    we simply write another message
}
case ( get_run_mode ) of
    rm_unknown :
        WriteLn ( 'Unknown environment found' );
    rm_raw :
        WriteLn ( 'You are currently running in raw mode',
                  ' ( without HIMEM )' );
```

```
rm_xms      :  
    WriteLn('You are currently using HIMEM.SYS only');  
rm_vcpi     :  
    WriteLn('VCPI server detected.',  
            ' You''re using HIMEM and EMM386');  
rm_dpml     :  
    WriteLn('DPML detected.',  
            ' You''re using a DPML host like ',  
            'a windows DOS box or CWSDPML');  
end;  
end.
```

---

### **get\_segment\_base\_address**

Declaration: `Function get_segment_base_address (d : Word) : Longint;`

Description: Returns the 32-bit linear base address from the descriptor table for the specified segment. Parameters:

**d:** selector of the descriptor you want the base address of.

Return values: Linear base address of specified descriptor.

Errors: Check the `int31error` variable.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (81), `set_segment_base_address` (104), `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (81), `set_segment_limit` (104), `get_segment_limit` (95)

For an example, see `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (81).

### **get\_segment\_limit**

Declaration: `Function get_segment_limit (d : Word) : Longint;`

Description: Returns a descriptors segment limit. Parameters:

**d:** selector.

Return value: Limit of the descriptor in bytes.

Errors: Returns zero if descriptor is invalid.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (81), `set_segment_limit` (104), `set_segment_base_address` (104), `get_segment_base_address` (95),

### **get\_ss**

Declaration: `Function get_ss : Word;`

Description: Returns the ss selector. Parameters: None. Return values: The content of the ss segment register.

Errors: None.

See also: `get_ds` (88), `get_cs` (88)



**global\_dos\_alloc**

Declaration: `Function global_dos_alloc (bytes : Longint) : Longint;`

Description: Allocates a block of DOS real mode memory. Parameters:

**bytes:** size of requested real mode memory.

Return values: The low word of the returned value contains the selector to the allocated DOS memory block, the high word the corresponding real mode segment value. The offset value is always zero. This function allocates memory from DOS memory pool, i.e. memory below the 1 MB boundary that is controlled by DOS. Such memory blocks are typically used to exchange data with real mode programs, TSRs, or device drivers. The function returns both the real mode segment base address of the block and one descriptor that can be used by protected mode applications to access the block. This function should only be used for temporary buffers to get real mode information (e.g. interrupts that need a data structure in ES:(E)DI), because every single block needs a unique selector. The returned selector should only be freed by a `global_dos_free (97)` call.

Errors: Check the `int31error` variable.

See also: `global_dos_free (97)`

---

```
Program buffer ;

uses go32;

procedure dosalloc(var selector : word; var segment : word; size : longint);
var res : longint;
begin
    res := global_dos_alloc (size);
    selector := word(res);
    segment := word(res shr 16);
end;

procedure dosfree(selector : word);
begin
    global_dos_free (selector);
end;

type VBEInfoBuf = record
    Signature : array [0..3] of char;
    Version : Word;
    reserved : array [0..505] of byte;
end;

var selector ,
    segment : Word;

    r : trealregs;
    infobuf : VBEInfoBuf;

begin
    fillchar (r, sizeof (r), 0);
    fillchar (infobuf, sizeof (VBEInfoBuf), 0);
    dosalloc (selector, segment, sizeof (VBEInfoBuf));
    if (int31error <> 0) then begin
        Writeln ('Error while allocating real mode memory, halting');
        halt;
```

```
end;  
infobuf.Signature := 'VBE2';  
dosmemput(segment, 0, infobuf, sizeof(infobuf));  
r.ax := $4f00; r.es := segment;  
realintr($10, r);  
dosmemget(segment, 0, infobuf, sizeof(infobuf));  
dosfree(selector);  
if (r.ax <> $4f) then begin  
  WriteLn('VBE BIOS extension not available, function call failed');  
  halt;  
end;  
if (infobuf.signature[0] = 'V') and (infobuf.signature[1] = 'E') and  
  (infobuf.signature[2] = 'S') and (infobuf.signature[3] = 'A') then begin  
  WriteLn('VBE version ', hi(infobuf.version), '.', lo(infobuf.version), ' detected');  
end;  
end.
```

---

### global\_dos\_free

Declaration: Function global\_dos\_free (selector :Word) : boolean;

Description: Frees a previously allocated DOS memory block. Parameters:

**selector:** selector to the DOS memory block.

Return value: True if successful, False otherwise. Notes: The descriptor allocated for the memory block is automatically freed and hence invalid for further use. This function should only be used for memory allocated by global\_dos\_alloc (96).

Errors: Check the int31error variable.

See also: global\_dos\_alloc (96)

For an example, see global\_dos\_alloc (96).

### inportb

Declaration: Function inportb (port : Word) : byte;

Description: Reads 1 byte from the selected I/O port. Parameters:

**port:** the I/O port number which is read.

Return values: Current I/O port value.

Errors: None.

See also: outportb (99), inportw (98), inportl (97)

### inportl

Declaration: Function inportl (port : Word) : Longint;

Description: Reads 1 longint from the selected I/O port. Parameters:

**port:** the I/O port number which is read.

Return values: Current I/O port value.

Errors: None.

See also: `outportb` (99), `inportb` (97), `inportw` (98)

### **inportw**

Declaration: `Function inportw (port : Word) : Word;`

Description: Reads 1 word from the selected I/O port. Parameters:

**port:** the I/O port number which is read.

Return values: Current I/O port value.

Errors: None.

See also: `outportw` (100) `inportb` (97), `inportl` (97)

### **lock\_code**

Declaration: `Function lock_code (functionaddr : pointer; size : Longint) : boolean;`

Description: Locks a memory range which is in the code segment selector. Parameters:

**functionaddr:** address of the function to be locked.

**size:** size in bytes to be locked.

Return values: True if successful, False otherwise.

Errors: Check the `int31error` variable.

See also: `lock_linear_region` (99), `lock_data` (98), `unlock_linear_region` (106), `unlock_data` (105), `unlock_code` (105)

For an example, see `get_rm_callback` (91).

### **lock\_data**

Declaration: `Function lock_data (var data; size : Longint) : boolean;`

Description: Locks a memory range which resides in the data segment selector. Parameters:

**data:** address of data to be locked.

**size:** length of data to be locked.

Return values: True if successful, False otherwise.

Errors: Check the `int31error` variable.

See also: `lock_linear_region` (99), `lock_code` (98), `unlock_linear_region` (106), `unlock_data` (105), `unlock_code` (105)

For an example, see `get_rm_callback` (91).

### lock\_linear\_region

Declaration: `Function lock_linear_region (linearaddr, size : Longint) : boolean;`

Description: Locks a memory region to prevent swapping of it. Parameters:

**linearaddr:** the linear address of the memory are to be locked.

**size:** size in bytes to be locked.

Return value: True if successful, False otherwise.

Errors: Check the `int31error` variable.

See also: `lock_data` (98), `lock_code` (98), `unlock_linear_region` (106), `unlock_data` (105), `unlock_code` (105)

### outportb

Declaration: `Procedure outportb (port : Word; data : byte);`

Description: Sends 1 byte of data to the specified I/O port. Parameters:

**port:** the I/O port number to send data to.

**data:** value sent to I/O port.

Return values: None.

Errors: None.

See also: `inportb` (97), `outportl` (99), `outportw` (100)

---

```
program outport;  
  
uses crt , go32;  
  
begin  
  { turn on speaker }  
  outportb($61, $ff);  
  { wait a little bit }  
  delay(50);  
  { turn it off again }  
  outportb($61, $0);  
end.
```

---

### outportl

Declaration: `Procedure outportl (port : Word; data : Longint);`

Description: Sends 1 longint of data to the specified I/O port. Parameters:

**port:** the I/O port number to send data to.

**data:** value sent to I/O port.

Return values: None.

Errors: None.

See also: `inportl` (97), `outportw` (100), `outportb` (99)

For an example, see `outportb` (99).

**outportw**

Declaration: Procedure outportw (port : Word; data : Word);

Description: Sends 1 word of data to the specified I/O port. Parameters:

**port:** the I/O port number to send data to.

**data:** value sent to I/O port.

Return values: None.

Errors: None.

See also: inportw (98), outportl (99), outportb (99)

For an example, see outportb (99).

**realintr**

Declaration: Function realintr (intrnr: Word; var regs : trealregs) : boolean;

Description: Simulates an interrupt in real mode. Parameters:

**intrnr:** interrupt number to issue in real mode.

**regs:** registers data structure.

Return values: The supplied registers data structure contains the values that were returned by the real mode interrupt. **True** if successful, **False** if not. Notes: The function transfers control to the address specified by the real mode interrupt vector of intrnr. The real mode handler must return by executing an IRET.

Errors: Check the int31error variable.

See also:

---

```
Program flags ;

uses go32;

var r : trealregs ;

begin
  r.ax := $5300;
  r.bx := 0;
  realintr ($15, r);
  { check if carry clear and write a suited message }
  if (( r.flags and carryflag)=0) then begin
    Writeln ('APM v', (r.ah and $f),
            ' ', (r.al shr 4), (r.al and $f),
            ' detected');
  end else
    Writeln ('APM not present');
end.
```

---

**seg\_fillchar**

**Declaration:** Procedure seg\_fillchar (seg : Word; ofs : Longint; count : Longint;  
c : char);

**Description:** Sets a memory area to a specific value. Parameters:

**seg:** selector to memory area.

**ofs:** offset to memory.

**count:** number of bytes to set.

**c:** byte data which is set.

Return values: None. Notes: No range check is done in any way.

Errors: None.

See also: seg\_move (102), seg\_fillword (101), dosmemfillchar (85), dosmemfillword (86), dosmemget (86), dosmemput (87), dosmemmove (86)

---

```
Program svgasel;  
  
uses go32;  
  
var vgasel : Word;  
    r : trealregs;  
  
begin  
    r.eax := $13; realintr($10, r);  
    vgasel := segment_to_descriptor($A000);  
    { simply fill the screen memory with color 15 }  
    seg_fillchar(vgasel, 0, 64000, #15);  
    readln;  
    { back to text mode }  
    r.eax := $3;  
    realintr($10, r);  
end.
```

---

**seg\_fillword**

**Declaration:** Procedure seg\_fillword (seg : Word; ofs : Longint; count : Longint;  
w : Word);

**Description:** Sets a memory area to a specific value. Parameters:

**seg:** selector to memory area.

**ofs:** offset to memory.

**count:** number of words to set.

**w:** word data which is set.

Return values: None. Notes: No range check is done in any way.

Errors: None.

See also: seg\_move (102), seg\_fillchar (101), dosmemfillchar (85), dosmemfillword (86), dosmemget (86), dosmemput (87), dosmemmove (86)

For an example, see allocate\_ldt\_descriptors (81).

### **segment\_to\_descriptor**

**Declaration:** Function `segment_to_descriptor (seg : Word) : Word;`

**Description:** Maps a real mode segment (paragraph) address onto an descriptor that can be used by a protected mode program to access the same memory. Parameters:

**seg:** the real mode segment you want the descriptor to.

**Return values:** Descriptor to real mode segment address. **Notes:** The returned descriptors limit will be set to 64 kB. Multiple calls to this function with the same segment address will return the same selector. Descriptors created by this function can never be modified or freed. Programs which need to examine various real mode addresses using the same selector should use the function `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (81) and change the base address as necessary.

**Errors:** Check the `int31error` variable.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (81), `free_ldt_descriptor` (87), `set_segment_base_address` (104)

For an example, see `seg_fillchar` (101).

### **seg\_move**

**Declaration:** Procedure `seg_move (sseg : Word; source : Longint; dseg : Word; dest : Longint; count : Longint);`

**Description:** Copies data between two memory locations. Parameters:

**sseg:** source selector.

**source:** source offset.

**dseg:** destination selector.

**dest:** destination offset.

**count:** size in bytes to copy.

**Return values:** None. **Notes:** Overlapping is only checked if the source selector is equal to the destination selector. No range check is done.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `seg_fillchar` (101), `seg_fillword` (101), `dosmemfillchar` (85), `dosmemfillword` (86), `dosmemget` (86), `dosmempu` (87), `dosmemmove` (86)

For an example, see `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (81).

### **set\_descriptor\_access\_rights**

**Declaration:** Function `set_descriptor_access_rights (d : Word; w : Word) : Longint;`

**Description:** Sets the access rights of a descriptor. Parameters:

**d:** selector.

**w:** new descriptor access rights.

**Return values:** This function doesn't return anything useful.

**Errors:** Check the `int31error` variable.

See also: `get_descriptor_access_rights` (88)

**set\_pm\_interrupt**

Declaration: Function set\_pm\_interrupt (vector : byte; const intaddr : tseginfo)  
: boolean;

Description: Sets the address of the protected mode handler for an interrupt. Parameters:

**vector:** number of protected mode interrupt to set.

**intaddr:** selector:offset address to the interrupt vector.

Return values: True if successful, False otherwise. Notes: The address supplied must be a valid selector:offset protected mode address.

Errors: Check the int31error variable.

See also: get\_pm\_interrupt (90), set\_rm\_interrupt (104), get\_rm\_interrupt (94)

---

```
Program int_pm;

uses crt, go32;

const int1c = $1c;

var oldint1c : tseginfo;
    newint1c : tseginfo;
    int1c_counter : Longint;

{$ASMMODE DIRECT}
procedure int1c_handler; assembler;
asm
    cli
    pushw %ds
    pushw %ax
    movw %cs:INT1C_DS, %ax
    movw %ax, %ds
    incl _INT1C_COUNTER
    popw %ax
    popw %ds
    sti
    iret
INT1C_DS: . word 0
end;

var i : Longint;

begin
    newint1c.offset := @int1c_handler;
    newint1c.segment := get_cs;
    get_pm_interrupt(int1c, oldint1c);
    asm
        movw %ds, %ax
        movw %ax, INT1C_DS
    end;
    WriteLn('-- Press any key to exit --');
    set_pm_interrupt(int1c, newint1c);
    while (not keypressed) do begin
        gotoxy(1, wherey);
        write('Number of interrupts occurred : ',
```



```
        int1c_counter );  
    end;  
    set_pm_interrupt (int1c , oldint1c );  
end.
```

---

### set\_rm\_interrupt

Declaration: Function set\_rm\_interrupt (vector : byte; const intaddr : tseginfo)  
: boolean;

Description: Sets a real mode interrupt handler. Parameters:

**vector:** the interrupt vector number to set.

**intaddr:** address of new interrupt vector.

Return values: True if successful, otherwise False. Notes: The address supplied MUST be a real mode segment address, not a selector:offset address. So the interrupt handler must either reside in DOS memory (below 1 Mb boundary) or the application must allocate a real mode callback address with get\_rm\_callback (91).

Errors: Check the int31error variable.

See also: get\_rm\_interrupt (94), set\_pm\_interrupt (103), get\_pm\_interrupt (90), get\_rm\_callback (91)

### set\_segment\_base\_address

Declaration: Function set\_segment\_base\_address (d : Word; s : Longint) : boolean;

Description: Sets the 32-bit linear base address of a descriptor. Parameters:

**d:** selector.

**s:** new base address of the descriptor.

Errors: Check the int31error variable.

See also: allocate\_ldt\_descriptors (81), get\_segment\_base\_address (95), allocate\_ldt\_descriptors (81), set\_segment\_limit (104), get\_segment\_base\_address (95), get\_segment\_limit (95)

### set\_segment\_limit

Declaration: Function set\_segment\_limit (d : Word; s : Longint) : boolean;

Description: Sets the limit of a descriptor. Parameters:

**d:** selector.

**s:** new limit of the descriptor.

Return values: Returns True if successful, else False. Notes: The new limit specified must be the byte length of the segment - 1. Segment limits bigger than or equal to 1MB must be page aligned, they must have the lower 12 bits set.

Errors: Check the int31error variable.

See also: allocate\_ldt\_descriptors (81), set\_segment\_base\_address (104), get\_segment\_limit (95), set\_segment\_limit (104)

For an example, see allocate\_ldt\_descriptors (81).

**tb\_size**

Declaration: `Function tb_size : Longint;`

Description: Returns the size of the pre-allocated DOS memory buffer. Parameters: None. Return values: The size of the pre-allocated DOS memory buffer. Notes: This block always seems to be 16k in size, but don't rely on this.

Errors: None.

See also: `transfer_buffer` (105), `copyfromdos` (83) `copytodos` (84)

**transfer\_buffer**

Declaration: `Function transfer_buffer : Longint;`

Description: `transfer_buffer` returns the offset of the transfer buffer.

Errors: None.

See also: `tb_size` (105)

**unlock\_code**

Declaration: `Function unlock_code (functionaddr : pointer; size : Longint) : boolean;`

Description: Unlocks a memory range which resides in the code segment selector. Parameters:

**functionaddr:** address of function to be unlocked.

**size:** size bytes to be unlocked.

Return value: True if successful, False otherwise.

Errors: Check the `int31error` variable.

See also: `unlock_linear_region` (106), `unlock_data` (105), `lock_linear_region` (99), `lock_data` (98), `lock_code` (98)

For an example, see `get_rm_callback` (91).

**unlock\_data**

Declaration: `Function unlock_data (var data; size : Longint) : boolean;`

Description: Unlocks a memory range which resides in the data segment selector. Parameters:

**data:** address of memory to be unlocked.

**size:** size bytes to be unlocked.

Return values: True if successful, False otherwise.

Errors: Check the `int31error` variable.

See also: `unlock_linear_region` (106), `unlock_code` (105), `lock_linear_region` (99), `lock_data` (98), `lock_code` (98)

For an example, see `get_rm_callback` (91).

### **unlock\_linear\_region**

**Declaration:** `Function unlock_linear_region (linearaddr, size : Longint) : boolean;`

**Description:** Unlocks a previously locked linear region range to allow it to be swapped out again if needed.

**Parameters:**

**linearaddr:** linear address of the memory to be unlocked.

**size:** size bytes to be unlocked.

**Return values:** True if successful, False otherwise.

**Errors:** Check the `int31error` variable.

**See also:** `unlock_data` (105), `unlock_code` (105), `lock_linear_region` (99), `lock_data` (98), `lock_code` (98)

## Chapter 8

# The GRAPH unit.

This document describes the GRAPH unit for Free Pascal, for all platforms. The unit was first written for DOS by Florian klämpfl, but was later completely rewritten by Carl-Eric Codere to be completely portable.

This chapter is divided in 4 sections.

- The first section gives an introduction to the graph unit.
- The second section lists the pre-defined constants, types and variables.
- The second section describes the functions which appear in the interface part of the GRAPH unit.
- The last part describes some system-specific issues.

### 8.1 Introduction

#### Requirements

The unit Graph exports functions and procedures for graphical output. It requires at least a VGA-compatible Card or a VGA-Card with software-driver (min. **512Kb** video memory).

#### A word about mode selection

The graph unit was implemented for compatibility with the old Turbo Pascal graph unit. For this reason, the mode constants as they were defined in the Turbo Pascal graph unit are retained.

However, since

1. Video cards have evolved very much
2. Free Pascal runs on multiple platforms

it was decided to implement new mode and graphic driver constants, which are more independent of the specific platform the program runs on.

In this section we give a short explanation of the new mode system. the following drivers were defined:

```
D1bit = 11;
D2bit = 12;
D4bit = 13;
D6bit = 14; { 64 colors Half-brite mode - Amiga }
D8bit = 15;
D12bit = 16; { 4096 color modes HAM mode - Amiga }
D15bit = 17;
D16bit = 18;
D24bit = 19; { not yet supported }
D32bit = 20; { not yet supported }
D64bit = 21; { not yet supported }

lowNewDriver = 11;
highNewDriver = 21;
```

Each of these drivers specifies a desired color-depth.

The following modes have been defined:

```
detectMode = 30000;
m320x200 = 30001;
m320x256 = 30002; { amiga resolution (PAL) }
m320x400 = 30003; { amiga/atari resolution }
m512x384 = 30004; { mac resolution }
m640x200 = 30005; { vga resolution }
m640x256 = 30006; { amiga resolution (PAL) }
m640x350 = 30007; { vga resolution }
m640x400 = 30008;
m640x480 = 30009;
m800x600 = 30010;
m832x624 = 30011; { mac resolution }
m1024x768 = 30012;
m1280x1024 = 30013;
m1600x1200 = 30014;
m2048x1536 = 30015;

lowNewMode = 30001;
highNewMode = 30015;
```

These modes start at 30000 because Borland specified that the mode number should be ascending with increasing X resolution, and the new constants shouldn't interfere with the old ones.

The above constants can be used to set a certain color depth and resolution, as demonstrated in the following example:

**Listing:** graphex/inigraph1.pp

---

```
Program inigraph1;

{ Program to demonstrate static graphics mode selection }

uses graph;

const
    TheLine = 'We are now in 640 x 480 x 256 colors !' +
              ' ( press <Return> to continue )';
```

```
var
  gd, gm, lo, hi, error, tw, th: integer;
  found: boolean;

begin
  { We want an 8 bit mode }
  gd := D8bit;
  gm := m640x480;
  initgraph(gd, gm, '');
  { Make sure you always check graphresult! }
  error := graphResult;
  if (error <> grOk) Then
    begin
      writeln('640x480x256 is not supported!');
      halt(1);
    end;
  { We are now in 640x480x256 }
  setColor(cyan);
  rectangle(0,0,getmaxx,getmaxy);
  { Write a nice message in the center of the screen }
  setTextStyle(defaultFont, horizDir, 1);
  tw := TextWidth(TheLine);
  th := TextHeight(TheLine);
  outTextXY((getMaxX - TW) div 2,
            (getMaxY - TH) div 2, TheLine);
  { Wait for return }
  readln;
  { Back to text mode }
  closegraph;
end.
```

---

If other modes than the ones above are supported by the graphics card, you will not be able to select them with this mechanism.

For this reason, there is also a 'dynamic' mode number, which is assigned at run-time. This number increases with increasing X resolution. It can be queried with the `getmoderange` call. This call will return the range of modes which are valid for a certain graphics driver. The numbers are guaranteed to be consecutive, and can be used to search for a certain resolution, as in the following example:

**Listing:** graphex/inigraph2.pp

---

```
Program inigraph2;

{ Program to demonstrate dynamic graphics mode selection }

uses graph;

const
  TheLine = 'We are now in 640 x 480 x 256 colors!' +
            ' (press <Return> to continue)';

var
  th, tw, gd, gm, lo, hi, error: integer;
  found: boolean;

begin
  { We want an 8 bit mode }
```

```
gd := D8bit;
{ Get all available resolutions for this bitdepth }
getmoderange(gd, lo, hi);
{ If the highest available mode number is -1,
  no resolutions are supported for this bitdepth }
if hi = -1 then
  begin
    writeln('no 8 bit modes supported!');
    halt
  end;
found := false;
{ Search all resolutions for 640x480 }
for gm := lo to hi do
  begin
    initgraph(gd, gm, '');
    { Make sure you always check graphresult! }
    error := graphResult;
    if (error = grOk) and
      (getmaxx = 639) and (getmaxy = 479) then
      begin
        found := true;
        break;
      end;
  end;
if not found then
  begin
    writeln('640x480x256 is not supported!');
    halt(1)
  end;
{ We are now in 640x480x256 }
setColor(cyan);
rectangle(0,0,getmaxx,getmaxy);
{ Write a nice message in the center of the screen }
setTextStyle(defaultFont, horizDir, 1);
TW:=TextWidth(TheLine);
TH:=TextHeight(TheLine);
outTextXY((getMaxX - TW) div 2,
          (getMaxY - TH) div 2, TheLine);
{ Wait for return }
readln;
{ Back to text mode }
closegraph;
end.
```

---

Thus, the `getmoderange` function can be used to detect all available modes and drivers, as in the following example:

**Listing:** graphex/modrange.pp

---

**Program** GetModeRange\_Example;

```
{ This program demonstrates how to find all available graph modes }

uses graph;

const
  { Currently, only 4, 8, 15 and 16 bit modes are supported
    but this may change in the future }
  gdnames: array[D4bit..D16bit] of string[6] =
```

```
( '4 bit ', '6 bit ', '8 bit ', '12 bit ', '15 bit ', '16 bit ' );

var
  t: text;
  gd, c, low, high, res: integer;
begin
  assign( t, 'modes.txt' );
  rewrite( t );
  close( t );
  for gd := D4bit to D16bit do
    begin
      { Get the available mode numbers for this driver }
      getModeRange( gd, low, high );
      append( t );
      write( t, gdnames[gd] );
      Writeln( t, ': low modenr = ', low, ', high modenr = ', high );
      close( t );
      { If high is -1,
        no resolutions are supported for this bitdepth }
      if high = -1 then
        begin
          append( t );
          writeln( t, ' No modes supported!' );
          writeln( t );
          close( t );
        end
      else
        { Enter all supported resolutions for this bitdepth
          and write their characteristics to the file }
        for c := low to high do
          begin
            append( t );
            writeln( t, ' testing mode nr ', c );
            close( t );
            initgraph( gd, c, '' );
            res := graphresult;
            append( t );
            { An error occurred when entering the mode? }
            if res <> grok then
              writeln( t, grapherrormsg( res ) )
            else
              begin
                write( t, ' maxx: ', getmaxx, ', maxy: ', getmaxy );
                Writeln( t, ' maxcolor: ', getmaxcolor );
                closegraph;
              end;
            writeln( t );
            close( t );
          end;
        append( t );
        writeln( t );
        close( t );
      end;
    end;
  end.
```

---



## 8.2 Constants, Types and Variables

### Types

```
ArcCoordsType = record
  X,Y,Xstart,Ystart,Xend,Yend : Integer;
end;
FillPatternType = Array [1..8] of Byte;
FillSettingsType = Record
  Pattern,Color : Word
end;
LineSettingsType = Record
  LineStyle,Pattern, Width : Word;
end;
PaletteType = Record
  Size : Byte;
  Colors : array[0..MAXcolor] of shortint;
end;
PointType = Record
  X,Y : Integer;
end;
TextSettingsType = Record
  Font,Direction, CharSize, Horiz, Vert : Word
end;
ViewportType = Record
  X1,Y1,X2,Y2 : Integer;
  Clip : Boolean
end;
```

## 8.3 Function list by category

What follows is a listing of the available functions, grouped by category. For each function there is a reference to the page where you can find the function.

### Initialization

Initialization of the graphics screen.

Name	Description	Page
ClearDevice	Empty the graphics screen	116
CloseGraph	Finish drawing session, return to text mode	116
DetectGraph	Detect graphical modes	116
GetAspectRatio	Get aspect ratio of screen	118
GetModeRange	Get range of valid modes for current driver	120
GraphDefaults	Set defaults	122
GetDriverName	Return name of graphical driver	118
GetGraphMode	Return current or last used graphics mode	119
GetMaxMode	Get maximum mode for current driver	120

GetModeName	Get name of current mode	120
GraphErrorMsg	String representation of graphical error	122
GraphResult	Result of last drawing operation	122
InitGraph	Initialize graphics drivers	123
InstallUserDriver	Install a new driver	123
RegisterBGIDriver	Register a new driver	126
RestoreCRTMode	Go back to text mode	126
SetGraphBufSize	Set buffer size for graphical operations	128
SetGraphMode	Set graphical mode	129

### screen management

General drawing screen management functions.

Name	Description	Page
ClearViewPort	Clear the current viewport	116
GetImage	Copy image from screen to memory	119
GetMaxX	Get maximum X coordinate	120
GetMaxY	Get maximum Y coordinate	120
GetX	Get current X position	121
GetY	Get current Y position	122
ImageSize	Get size of selected image	123
GetViewSettings	Get current viewport settings	121
PutImage	Copy image from memory to screen	125
SetActivePage	Set active video page	127
SetAspectRatio	Set aspect ratio for drawing routines	127
SetViewPort	Set current viewport	131
SetVisualPage	Set visual page	131
SetWriteMode	Set write mode for screen operations	131

### Color management

All functions related to color management.

Name	Description	Page
GetBkColor	Get current background color	118
GetColor	Get current foreground color	118
GetDefaultPalette	Get default palette entries	118
GetMaxColor	Get maximum valid color	119
GetPaletteSize	Get size of palette for current mode	121
GetPixel	Get color of selected pixel	121
GetPalette	Get palette entry	121

SetAllPalette	Set all colors in palette	127
SetBkColor	Set background color	127
SetColor	Set foreground color	128
SetPalette	Set palette entry	129
SetRGBPalette	Set palette entry with RGB values	129

## Drawing primitives

Functions for simple drawing.

Name	Description	Page
Arc	Draw an arc	115
Circle	Draw a complete circle	116
DrawPoly	Draw a polygon with N points	117
Ellipse	Draw an ellipse	117
GetArcCoords	Get arc coordinates	118
GetLineSettings	Get current line drawing settings	119
Line	Draw line between 2 points	124
LineRel	Draw line relative to current position	124
LineTo	Draw line from current position to absolute position	124
MoveRel	Move cursor relative to current position	124
MoveTo	Move cursor to absolute position	125
PieSlice	Draw a pie slice	125
PutPixel	Draw 1 pixel	126
Rectangle	Draw a non-filled rectangle	126
Sector	Draw a sector	127
SetLineStyle	Set current line drawing style	129

## Filled drawings

Functions for drawing filled regions.

Name	Description	Page
Bar3D	Draw a filled 3D-style bar	115
Bar	Draw a filled rectangle	115
FloodFill	Fill starting from coordinate	117
FillEllipse	Draw a filled ellipse	117
FillPoly	Draw a filled polygon	117
GetFillPattern	Get current fill pattern	119
GetFillSettings	Get current fill settings	119
SetFillPattern	Set current fill pattern	128
SetFillStyle	Set current fill settings	128

## Text and font handling

Functions to set texts on the screen.

Name	Description	Page
GetTextSettings	Get current text settings	121
InstallUserFont	Install a new font	124
OutText	Write text at current cursor position	125
OutTextXY	Write text at coordinates X,Y	125
RegisterBGIFont	Register a new font	126
SetTextJustify	Set text justification	130
SetTextStyle	Set text style	130
SetUserCharSize	Set text size	130
TextHeight	Calculate height of text	131
TextWidth	Calculate width of text	131

## 8.4 Functions and procedures

### Arc

Declaration: `Procedure Arc (X,Y : Integer; start,stop, radius : Word);`

Description: Arc draws part of a circle with center at (X,Y), radius radius, starting from angle start, stopping at angle stop. These angles are measured counterclockwise.

Errors: None.

See also: Circle (116),Ellipse (117) GetArcCoords (118),PieSlice (125), Sector (127)

### Bar

Declaration: `Procedure Bar (X1,Y1,X2,Y2 : Integer);`

Description: Draws a rectangle with corners at (X1,Y1) and (X2,Y2) and fills it with the current color and fill-style.

Errors: None.

See also: Bar3D (115), Rectangle (126)

### Bar3D

Declaration: `Procedure Bar3D (X1,Y1,X2,Y2 : Integer; depth : Word; Top : Boolean);`

Description: Draws a 3-dimensional Bar with corners at (X1,Y1) and (X2,Y2) and fills it with the current color and fill-style. Depth specifies the number of pixels used to show the depth of the bar. If Top is true; then a 3-dimensional top is drawn.

Errors: None.

See also: Bar (115), Rectangle (126)

### **Circle**

Declaration: `Procedure Circle (X,Y : Integer; Radius : Word);`

Description: `Circle` draws part of a circle with center at `(X,Y)`, radius `radius`.

Errors: None.

See also: `Ellipse` (117), `Arc` (115) `GetArcCoords` (118), `PieSlice` (125), `Sector` (127)

### **ClearDevice**

Declaration: `Procedure ClearDevice ;`

Description: Clears the graphical screen (with the current background color), and sets the pointer at `( 0 , 0 )`

Errors: None.

See also: `ClearViewPort` (116), `SetBkColor` (127)

### **ClearViewPort**

Declaration: `Procedure ClearViewPort ;`

Description: Clears the current viewport. The current background color is used as filling color. The pointer is set at `( 0 , 0 )`

Errors: None.

See also: `ClearDevice` (116), `SetViewPort` (131), `SetBkColor` (127)

### **CloseGraph**

Declaration: `Procedure CloseGraph ;`

Description: Closes the graphical system, and restores the screen modus which was active before the graphical modus was activated.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` (123)

### **DetectGraph**

Declaration: `Procedure DetectGraph (Var Driver, Modus : Integer);`

Description: Checks the hardware in the PC and determines the driver and screen-modus to be used. These are returned in `Driver` and `Modus`, and can be fed to `InitGraph`. See the `InitGraph` for a list of drivers and modi.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` (123)

### **DrawPoly**

Declaration: `Procedure DrawPoly (NumberOfPoints : Word; Var PolyPoints;`

Description: Draws a polygone with `NumberOfPoints` corner points, using the current color and line-style. `PolyPoints` is an array of type `PointType`.

Errors: None.

See also: `Bar` (115), `seepBar3D`, `Rectangle` (126)

### **Ellipse**

Declaration: `Procedure Ellipse (X,Y : Integer; Start,Stop,XRadius,YRadius : Word);`

Description: `Ellipse` draws part of an ellipse with center at `(X,Y)`. `XRadius` and `Yradius` are the horizontal and vertical radii of the ellipse. `Start` and `Stop` are the starting and stopping angles of the part of the ellipse. They are measured counterclockwise from the X-axis.

Errors: None.

See also: `Arc` (115) `Circle` (116), `FillEllipse` (117)

### **FillEllipse**

Declaration: `Procedure FillEllipse (X,Y : Integer; Xradius,YRadius: Word);`

Description: `Ellipse` draws an ellipse with center at `(X,Y)`. `XRadius` and `Yradius` are the horizontal and vertical radii of the ellipse. The ellipse is filled with the current color and fill-style.

Errors: None.

See also: `Arc` (115) `Circle` (116), `GetArcCoords` (118), `PieSlice` (125), `Sector` (127)

### **FillPoly**

Declaration: `Procedure FillPoly (NumberOfPoints : Word; Var PolyPoints);`

Description: Draws a polygone with `NumberOfPoints` corner points and fills it using the current color and line-style. `PolyPoints` is an array of type `PointType`.

Errors: None.

See also: `Bar` (115), `seepBar3D`, `Rectangle` (126)

### **FloodFill**

Declaration: `Procedure FloodFill (X,Y : Integer; BorderColor : Word);`

Description: Fills the area containing the point `(X,Y)`, bounded by the color `BorderColor`.

Errors: None

See also: `SetColor` (128), `SetBkColor` (127)

### **GetArcCoords**

Declaration: `Procedure GetArcCoords (Var ArcCoords : ArcCoordsType);`

Description: `GetArcCoords` returns the coordinates of the latest `Arc` or `Ellipse` call.

Errors: None.

See also: `Arc` (115), `Ellipse` (117)

### **GetAspectRatio**

Declaration: `Procedure GetAspectRatio (Var Xasp, Yasp : Word);`

Description: `GetAspectRatio` determines the effective resolution of the screen. The aspect ration can the be calculated as `Xasp/Yasp`.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` (123), `SetAspectRatio` (127)

### **GetBkColor**

Declaration: `Function GetBkColor : Word;`

Description: `GetBkColor` returns the current background color (the palette entry).

Errors: None.

See also: `GetColor` (118), `SetBkColor` (127)

### **GetColor**

Declaration: `Function GetColor : Word;`

Description: `GetColor` returns the current drawing color (the palette entry).

Errors: None.

See also: `GetColor` (118), `SetBkColor` (127)

### **GetDefaultPalette**

Declaration: `Procedure GetDefaultPalette (Var Palette : PaletteType);`

Description: Returns the current palette in `Palette`.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetColor` (118), `GetBkColor` (118)

### **GetDriverName**

Declaration: `Function GetDriverName : String;`

Description: `GetDriverName` returns a string containing the name of the current driver.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetModeName` (120), `InitGraph` (123)

### **GetFillPattern**

Declaration: `Procedure GetFillPattern (Var FillPattern : FillPatternType);`

Description: `GetFillPattern` returns an array with the current fill-pattern in `FillPattern`

Errors: None

See also: `SetFillPattern` (128)

### **GetFillSettings**

Declaration: `Procedure GetFillSettings (Var FillInfo : FillSettingsType);`

Description: `GetFillSettings` returns the current fill-settings in `FillInfo`

Errors: None.

See also: `SetFillPattern` (128)

### **GetGraphMode**

Declaration: `Function GetGraphMode : Integer;`

Description: `GetGraphMode` returns the current graphical modulus

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` (123)

### **GetImage**

Declaration: `Procedure GetImage (X1,Y1,X2,Y2 : Integer, Var Bitmap;`

Description: `GetImage` Places a copy of the screen area (X1,Y1) to X2,Y2 in `BitMap`

Errors: `Bitmap` must have enough room to contain the image.

See also: `ImageSize` (123), `PutImage` (125)

### **GetLineSettings**

Declaration: `Procedure GetLineSettings (Var LineInfo : LineSettingsType);`

Description: `GetLineSettings` returns the current Line settings in `LineInfo`

Errors: None.

See also: `SetLineStyle` (129)

### **GetMaxColor**

Declaration: `Function GetMaxColor : Word;`

Description: `GetMaxColor` returns the maximum color-number which can be set with `SetColor`. Contrary to Turbo Pascal, this color isn't always guaranteed to be white (for instance in 256+ color modes).

Errors: None.

See also: `SetColor` (128), `GetPaletteSize` (121)



### **GetMaxMode**

Declaration: `Function GetMaxMode : Word;`

Description: `GetMaxMode` returns the highest modus for the current driver.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` (123)

### **GetMaxX**

Declaration: `Function GetMaxX : Word;`

Description: `GetMaxX` returns the maximum horizontal screen length

Errors: None.

See also: `GetMaxY` (120)

### **GetMaxY**

Declaration: `Function GetMaxY : Word;`

Description: `GetMaxY` returns the maximum number of screen lines

Errors: None.

See also: `GetMaxX` (120)

### **GetModeName**

Declaration: `Function GetModeName (Var modus : Integer) : String;`

Description: Returns a string with the name of modus `Modus`

Errors: None.

See also: `GetDriverName` (118), `InitGraph` (123)

### **GetModeRange**

Declaration: `Procedure GetModeRange (Driver : Integer;  
LoModus, HiModus: Integer);`

Description: `GetModeRange` returns the Lowest and Highest modus of the currently installed driver. If no modes are supported for this driver, `HiModus` will be -1.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` (123)

### **GetPalette**

Declaration: `Procedure GetPalette (Var Palette : PaletteType);`

Description: `GetPalette` returns in `Palette` the current palette.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetPaletteSize` (121), `SetPalette` (129)

### **GetPaletteSize**

Declaration: `Function GetPaletteSize : Word;`

Description: `GetPaletteSize` returns the maximum number of entries in the current palette.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetPalette` (121), `SetPalette` (129)

### **GetPixel**

Declaration: `Function GetPixel (X,Y : Integer) : Word;`

Description: `GetPixel` returns the color of the point at `(X,Y)`

Errors: None.

See also:

### **GetTextSettings**

Declaration: `Procedure GetTextSettings (Var TextInfo : TextSettingsType);`

Description: `GetTextSettings` returns the current text style settings : The font, direction, size and placement as set with `SetTextStyle` and `SetTextJustify`

Errors: None.

See also: `SetTextStyle` (130), `SetTextJustify` (130)

### **GetViewSettings**

Declaration: `Procedure GetViewSettings (Var ViewPort : ViewPortType);`

Description: `GetViewSettings` returns the current viewport and clipping settings in `ViewPort`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetViewPort` (131)

### **GetX**

Declaration: `Function GetX : Integer;`

Description: `GetX` returns the X-coordinate of the current position of the graphical pointer

Errors: None.

See also: `GetY` (122)

### **GetY**

Declaration: `Function GetY : Integer;`

Description: `GetY` returns the Y-coordinate of the current position of the graphical pointer

Errors: None.

See also: `GetX` (121)

### **GraphDefaults**

Declaration: `Procedure GraphDefaults ;`

Description: `GraphDefaults` resets all settings for viewport, palette, foreground and background pattern, line-style and pattern, filling style, filling color and pattern, font, text-placement and text size.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetViewPort` (131), `SetFillStyle` (128), `SetColor` (128), `SetBkColor` (127), `SetLineStyle` (129)

### **GraphErrorMsg**

Declaration: `Function GraphErrorMsg (ErrorCode : Integer) : String;`

Description: `GraphErrorMsg` returns a string describing the error `Errorcode`. This string can be used to let the user know what went wrong.

Errors: None.

See also: `GraphResult` (122)

### **GraphResult**

Declaration: `Function GraphResult : Integer;`

Description: `GraphResult` returns an error-code for the last graphical operation. If the returned value is zero, all went well. A value different from zero means an error has occurred. besides all operations which draw something on the screen, the following procedures also can produce a `GraphResult` different from zero:

- `InstallUserFont` (124)
- `SetLineStyle` (129)
- `SetWriteMode` (131)
- `SetFillStyle` (128)
- `SetTextJustify` (130)
- `SetGraphMode` (129)
- `SetTextStyle` (130)

Errors: None.

See also: `GraphErrorMsg` (122)

### ImageSize

Declaration: `Function ImageSize (X1,Y1,X2,Y2 : Integer) : Word;`

Description: `ImageSize` returns the number of bytes needed to store the image in the rectangle defined by (X1,Y1) and (X2,Y2).

Errors: None.

See also: `GetImage` (119)

### InitGraph

Declaration: `Procedure InitGraph (var GraphDriver,GraphModus : integer;  
const PathToDriver : string);`

Description: `InitGraph` initializes the graph package. `GraphDriver` has two valid values: `GraphDriver=0` which performs an auto detect and initializes the highest possible mode with the most colors. 1024x768x64K is the highest possible resolution supported by the driver, if you need a higher resolution, you must edit `MODES.PPI`. If you need another mode, then set `GraphDriver` to a value different from zero and `graphmode` to the mode you wish (VESA modes where 640x480x256 is 101h etc.). `PathToDriver` is only needed, if you use the BGI fonts from Borland.

Errors: None.

See also: Introduction, (page 107), `DetectGraph` (116), `CloseGraph` (116), `GraphResult` (122)

Example:

```
var
    gd,gm : integer;
    PathToDriver : string;
begin
    gd:=detect; { highest possible resolution }
    gm:=0; { not needed, auto detection }
    PathToDriver:='C:\PP\BGI'; { path to BGI fonts,
                                drivers aren't needed }

    InitGraph(gd,gm,PathToDriver);
    if GraphResult<>grok then
        halt; ..... { whatever you need }
    CloseGraph; { restores the old graphics mode }
end.
```

### InstallUserDriver

Declaration: `Function InstallUserDriver (DriverPath : String;  
AutoDetectPtr: Pointer) : Integer;`

Description: `InstallUserDriver` adds the device-driver `DriverPath` to the list of .BGI drivers. `AutoDetectPtr` is a pointer to a possible auto-detect function.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` (123), `InstallUserFont` (124)

### **InstallUserFont**

Declaration: `Function InstallUserFont (FontPath : String) : Integer;`

Description: `InstallUserFont` adds the font in `FontPath` to the list of fonts of the .BGI system.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` (123), `InstallUserDriver` (123)

### **Line**

Declaration: `Procedure Line (X1,Y1,X2,Y2 : Integer);`

Description: `Line` draws a line starting from `(X1,Y1)` to `(X2,Y2)`, in the current line style and color. The current position is put to `(X2,Y2)`

Errors: None.

See also: `LineRel` (124), `LineTo` (124)

### **LineRel**

Declaration: `Procedure LineRel (DX,DY : Integer);`

Description: `LineRel` draws a line starting from the current pointer position to the point `(DX,DY, relative` to the current position, in the current line style and color. The Current Position is set to the endpoint of the line.

Errors: None.

See also: `Line` (124), `LineTo` (124)

### **LineTo**

Declaration: `Procedure LineTo (DX,DY : Integer);`

Description: `LineTo` draws a line starting from the current pointer position to the point `(DX,DY, relative` to the current position, in the current line style and color. The Current position is set to the end of the line.

Errors: None.

See also: `LineRel` (124), `Line` (124)

### **MoveRel**

Declaration: `Procedure MoveRel (DX,DY : Integer);`

Description: `MoveRel` moves the pointer to the point `(DX,DY)`, relative to the current pointer position

Errors: None.

See also: `MoveTo` (125)

### MoveTo

Declaration: `Procedure MoveTo (X,Y : Integer;`

Description: `MoveTo` moves the pointer to the point (X,Y).

Errors: None.

See also: `MoveRel` (124)

### OutText

Declaration: `Procedure OutText (Const TextString : String);`

Description: `OutText` puts `TextString` on the screen, at the current pointer position, using the current font and text settings. The current position is moved to the end of the text.

Errors: None.

See also: `OutTextXY` (125)

### OutTextXY

Declaration: `Procedure OutTextXY (X,Y : Integer; Const TextString : String);`

Description: `OutText` puts `TextString` on the screen, at position (X,Y), using the current font and text settings. The current position is moved to the end of the text.

Errors: None.

See also: `OutText` (125)

### PieSlice

Declaration: `Procedure PieSlice (X,Y : Integer;  
Start,Stop,Radius : Word);`

Description: `PieSlice` draws and fills a sector of a circle with center (X,Y) and radius `Radius`, starting at angle `Start` and ending at angle `Stop`.

Errors: None.

See also: `Arc` (115), `Circle` (116), `Sector` (127)

### PutImage

Declaration: `Procedure PutImage (X1,Y1 : Integer; Var Bitmap; How : word) ;`

Description: `PutImage` Places the bitmap in `Bitmap` on the screen at (X1,Y1). `How` determines how the bitmap will be placed on the screen. Possible values are :

- `CopyPut`
- `XORPut`
- `ORPut`
- `AndPut`
- `NotPut`

Errors: None

See also: `ImageSize` (123), `GetImage` (119)

### **PutPixel**

Declaration: `Procedure PutPixel (X,Y : Integer; Color : Word);`

Description: Puts a point at (X,Y) using color Color

Errors: None.

See also: `GetPixel` (121)

### **Rectangle**

Declaration: `Procedure Rectangle (X1,Y1,X2,Y2 : Integer);`

Description: Draws a rectangle with corners at (X1,Y1) and (X2,Y2), using the current color and style.

Errors: None.

See also: `Bar` (115), `Bar3D` (115)

### **RegisterBGIDriver**

Declaration: `Function RegisterBGIDriver (Driver : Pointer) : Integer;`

Description: Registers a user-defined BGI driver

Errors: None.

See also: `InstallUserDriver` (123), `RegisterBGIFont` (126)

### **RegisterBGIFont**

Declaration: `Function RegisterBGIFont (Font : Pointer) : Integer;`

Description: Registers a user-defined BGI driver

Errors: None.

See also: `InstallUserFont` (124), `RegisterBGIDriver` (126)

### **RestoreCRTMode**

Declaration: `Procedure RestoreCRTMode ;`

Description: Restores the screen modus which was active before the graphical modus was started.

To get back to the graph mode you were last in, you can use `SetGraphMode(GetGraphMode)`

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` (123)

### **Sector**

Declaration: `Procedure Sector (X,Y : Integer;  
Start,Stop,XRadius,YRadius : Word);`

Description: `Sector` draws and fills a sector of an ellipse with center  $(X,Y)$  and radii `XRadius` and `YRadius`, starting at angle `Start` and ending at angle `Stop`.

Errors: None.

See also: `Arc` (115), `Circle` (116), `PieSlice` (125)

### **SetActivePage**

Declaration: `Procedure SetActivePage (Page : Word);`

Description: Sets `Page` as the active page for all graphical output.

Errors: None.

See also:

### **SetAllPalette**

Declaration: `Procedure SetAllPalette (Var Palette);`

Description: Sets the current palette to `Palette`. `Palette` is an untyped variable, usually pointing to a record of type `PaletteType`

Errors: None.

See also: `GetPalette` (121)

### **SetAspectRatio**

Declaration: `Procedure SetAspectRatio (Xasp,Yasp : Word);`

Description: Sets the aspect ratio of the current screen to `Xasp/Yasp`.

Errors: None

See also: `InitGraph` (123), `GetAspectRatio` (118)

### **SetBkColor**

Declaration: `Procedure SetBkColor (Color : Word);`

Description: Sets the background color to `Color`.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetBkColor` (118), `SetColor` (128)



### SetColor

Declaration: `Procedure SetColor (Color : Word);`

Description: Sets the foreground color to Color.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetColor` (118), `SetBkColor` (127)

### SetFillPattern

Declaration: `Procedure SetFillPattern (FillPattern : FillPatternType,  
Color : Word);`

Description: `SetFillPattern` sets the current fill-pattern to `FillPattern`, and the filling color to `Color`.  
The pattern is an 8x8 raster, corresponding to the 64 bits in `FillPattern`.

Errors: None

See also: `GetFillPattern` (119), `SetFillStyle` (128)

### SetFillStyle

Declaration: `Procedure SetFillStyle (Pattern,Color : word);`

Description: `SetFillStyle` sets the filling pattern and color to one of the predefined filling patterns. `Pattern` can be one of the following predefined constants :

- `EmptyFill` Uses backgroundcolor.
- `SolidFill` Uses filling color
- `LineFill` Fills with horizontal lines.
- `ltSlashFill` Fills with lines from left-under to top-right.
- `SlashFill` Idem as previous, thick lines.
- `BkSlashFill` Fills with thick lines from left-Top to bottom-right.
- `LtBkSlashFill` Idem as previous, normal lines.
- `HatchFill` Fills with a hatch-like pattern.
- `XHatchFill` Fills with a hatch pattern, rotated 45 degrees.
- `InterLeaveFill`
- `WideDotFill` Fills with dots, wide spacing.
- `CloseDotFill` Fills with dots, narrow spacing.
- `UserFill` Fills with a user-defined pattern.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetFillPattern` (128)

### SetGraphBufSize

Declaration: `Procedure SetGraphBufSize (BufSize : Word);`

Description: `SetGraphBufSize` is a dummy function which does not do anything; it is no longer needed.

Errors: None.

See also:

### **SetGraphMode**

Declaration: `Procedure SetGraphMode (Mode : Integer);`

Description: `SetGraphMode` sets the graphical mode and clears the screen.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` (123)

### **SetLineStyle**

Declaration: `Procedure SetLineStyle (LineStyle, Pattern, Width : Word);`

Description: `SetLineStyle` sets the drawing style for lines. You can specify a `LineStyle` which is one of the following pre-defined constants:

- `SolidLn=0`; draws a solid line.
- `DottedLn=1`; Draws a dotted line.
- `CenterLn=2`; draws a non-broken centered line.
- `DashedLn=3`; draws a dashed line.
- `UserBitLn=4`; Draws a User-defined bit pattern.

If `UserBitLn` is specified then `Pattern` contains the bit pattern. In all another cases, `Pattern` is ignored. The parameter `Width` indicates how thick the line should be. You can specify one of the following pre-defined constants:

- `NormWidth=1`
- `ThickWidth=3`

Errors: None.

See also: `GetLineSettings` (119)

### **SetPalette**

Declaration: `Procedure SetPalette (ColorNr : Word; NewColor : ShortInt);`

Description: `SetPalette` changes the `ColorNr`-th entry in the palette to `NewColor`

Errors: None.

See also: `SetAllPalette` (127), `SetRGBPalette` (129)

### **SetRGBPalette**

Declaration: `Procedure SetRGBPalette (ColorNr, Red, Green, Blue : Integer);`

Description: `SetRGBPalette` sets the `ColorNr`-th entry in the palette to the color with RGB-values `Red`, `Green` `Blue`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetAllPalette` (127), `SetPalette` (129)

### SetTextJustify

Declaration: Procedure SetTextJustify (Horizontal,Vertical : Word);

Description: SetTextJustify controls the placement of new text, relative to the (graphical) cursor position. Horizontal controls horizontal placement, and can be one of the following pre-defined constants:

- LeftText=0; Text is set left of the pointer.
- CenterText=1; Text is set centered horizontally on the pointer.
- RightText=2; Text is set to the right of the pointer.

Vertical controls the vertical placement of the text, relative to the (graphical) cursor position. Its value can be one of the following pre-defined constants :

- BottomText=0; Text is placed under the pointer.
- CenterText=1; Text is placed centered vertically on the pointer.
- TopText=2; Text is placed above the pointer.

Errors: None.

See also: OutText (125), OutTextXY (125)

### SetTextStyle

Declaration: Procedure SetTextStyle (Font,Direction,Magnitude : Word);

Description: SetTextStyle controls the style of text to be put on the screen. pre-defined constants for Font are:

- DefaultFont=0;
- TriplexFont=2;
- SmallFont=2;
- SansSerifFont=3;
- GothicFont=4;

Pre-defined constants for Direction are :

- HorizDir=0;
- VertDir=1;

Errors: None.

See also: GetTextSettings (121)

### SetUserCharSize

Declaration: Procedure SetUserCharSize (Xasp1,Xasp2,Yasp1,Yasp2 : Word);

Description: Sets the width and height of vector-fonts. The horizontal size is given by Xasp1/Xasp2, and the vertical size by Yasp1/Yasp2.

Errors: None.

See also: SetTextStyle (130)

### SetViewPort

Declaration: `Procedure SetViewPort (X1,Y1,X2,Y2 : Integer; Clip : Boolean);`

Description: Sets the current graphical viewport (window) to the rectangle defined by the top-left corner (X1,Y1) and the bottom-right corner (X2,Y2). If Clip is true, anything drawn outside the viewport (window) will be clipped (i.e. not drawn). Coordinates specified after this call are relative to the top-left corner of the viewport.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetViewSettings` (121)

### SetVisualPage

Declaration: `Procedure SetVisualPage (Page : Word);`

Description: `SetVisualPage` sets the video page to page number Page.

Errors: None

See also: `SetActivePage` (127)

### SetWriteMode

Declaration: `Procedure SetWriteMode (Mode : Integer);`

Description: `SetWriteMode` controls the drawing of lines on the screen. It controls the binary operation used when drawing lines on the screen. Mode can be one of the following pre-defined constants:

- CopyPut=0;
- XORPut=1;

Errors: None.

See also:

### TextHeight

Declaration: `Function TextHeight (S : String) : Word;`

Description: `TextHeight` returns the height (in pixels) of the string S in the current font and text-size.

Errors: None.

See also: `TextWidth` (131)

### TextWidth

Declaration: `Function TextWidth (S : String) : Word;`

Description: `TextWidth` returns the width (in pixels) of the string S in the current font and text-size.

Errors: None.

See also: `TextHeight` (131)

## **8.5 Target specific issues**

In what follows we describe some things that are different on the various platforms:

**DOS**

**WINDOWS 32-BIT**

**LINUX**

## Chapter 9

# The HEAPTRC unit.

This chapter describes the HEAPTRC unit for Free Pascal. It was written by Pierre Muller. It is system independent, and works on all supported systems.

### 9.1 Purpose

The HEAPTRC unit can be used to debug your memory allocation/deallocation. It keeps track of the calls to `getmem/freemem`, and, implicitly, of `New/Dispose` statements.

When the program exits, or when you request it explicitly. It displays the total memory used, and then dumps a list of blocks that were allocated but not freed. It also displays where the memory was allocated.

If there are any inconsistencies, such as memory blocks being allocated or freed twice, or a memory block that is released but with wrong size, this will be displayed also.

The information that is stored/displayed can be customized using some constants.

### 9.2 Usage

All that you need to do is to include `heaptrc` in the `uses` clause of your program. Make sure that it is the first unit in the clause, otherwise memory allocated in initialization code of units that precede the `heaptrc` unit will not be accounted for, causing an incorrect memory usage report.

If you use the `-gh` switch, the compiler will insert the unit by itself, so you don't have to include it in your `uses` clause.

The following example shows how to use the `heaptrc` unit.

---

```
Program heapex;  
  
{ Program used to demonstrate the usage of heaptrc unit }  
  
Uses heaptrc;  
  
Var P1 : ^ Longint;  
      P2 : Pointer;  
      I : longint;  
  
begin
```

```
New(P1);
// causes previous allocation not to be de-allocated
New(P1);
Dispose(P1);
For I:=1 to 10 do
  begin
    GetMem ( P2,128);
    // When I is even, deallocate block. We loose 5 times 128
    // bytes this way.
    If (I mod 2) = 0 Then FreeMem(P2,128);
  end;
  GetMem(P2,128);
  // This will provoke an error and a memory dump
  Freemem ( P2,64);
end.
```

---

This is the memory dump shown when running this program:

```
Marked memory at 0040FA50 invalid
Wrong size : 128 allocated 64 freed
0x00408708
0x0040CB49
0x0040C481
Call trace for block 0x0040FA50 size 128
0x0040CB3D
0x0040C481
```

If you use the `lineinfo` unit (or use the `-gl` switch) as well, then `heaptrc` will also give you the filenames and line-numbers of the procedures in the backtrace:

```
Marked memory at 00410DA0 invalid
Wrong size : 128 allocated 64 freed
0x004094B8
0x0040D8F9  main,  line 25 of heapex.pp
0x0040D231
Call trace for block 0x00410DA0 size 128
0x0040D8ED  main,  line 23 of heapex.pp
0x0040D231
```

If lines without filename/line-number occur, this means there is a unit which has no debug info included.

## 9.3 Constants, Types and variables

The `FillExtraInfoType` is a procedural type used in the `SetExtraInfo` (136) call.

```
type
  FillExtraInfoType = procedure(p : pointer);
```

The following typed constants allow to fine-tune the standard dump of the memory usage by `DumpHeap` (135):

```
const
  tracesize = 8;
```

```
quicktrace : boolean = true;  
HaltOnError : boolean = true;  
keepreleased : boolean = false;  
add_tail : boolean = true;  
usecrc : boolean = true
```

TraceSize specifies how many levels of calls are displayed of the call stack during the memory dump. If you specify keepreleased:=True then half the TraceSize is reserved for the GetMem call stack, and the other half is reserved for the FreeMem call stack. For example, the default value of 8 will cause eight levels of call frames to be dumped for the getmem call if keepreleased is False. If KeepReleased is true, then 4 levels of call frames will be dumped for the GetMem call and 4 frames will be dumped for the FreeMem call. If you want to change this value, you must recode the heaptrc unit.

Quicktrace determines whether the memory manager checks whether a block that is about to be released is allocated correctly. This is a rather time consuming search, and slows program execution significantly, so by default it is set to False.

If HaltOnError is set to True then an illegal call to FreeMem will cause the memory manager to execute a halt(1) instruction, causing a memory dump. By Default it is set to True.

If keepreleased is set to true, then a list of freed memory blocks is kept. This is useful if you suspect that the same memory block is released twice. However, this option is very memory intensive, so use it sparingly, and only when it's really necessary.

If add\_tail is True (the default) then a check is also performed on the memory location just behind the allocated memory.

If usecrc is True (the default) then a crc check is performed on locations before and after the allocated memory. This is useful to detect memory overwrites.

## 9.4 Functions and procedures

### DumpHeap

Declaration: `procedure DumpHeap;`

Description: DumpHeap dumps to standard output a summary of memory usage. It is called automatically by the heaptrc unit when your program exits (by instaling an exit procedure), but it can be called at any time

Errors: None.

See also: MarkHeap (135)

### MarkHeap

Declaration: `procedure MarkHeap;`

Description: MarkHeap marks all memory blocks with a special signature. You can use this if you think that you corrupted the memory.

Errors: None.

See also: DumpHeap (135)



## SetExtraInfo

**Declaration:** `procedure SetExtraInfo( size : longint; func : FillExtraInfoType );`

**Description:** You can use `SetExtraInfo` to store extra info in the blocks that the `heaptrc` unit reserves when tracing `getmem` calls. `Size` indicates the size (in bytes) that the trace mechanism should reserve for your extra information. For each call to `getmem`, `func` will be called, and passed a pointer to the memory reserved.

When dumping the memory summary, the extra info is shown as `Longint` values.

**Errors:** You can only call `SetExtraInfo` if no memory has been allocated yet. If memory was already allocated prior to the call to `SetExtraInfo`, then an error will be displayed on standard error output, and a `DumpHeap` (135) is executed.

See also: `DumpHeap` (135), `SetHeapTraceOutput` (137)

---

**Program** `heapex;`

*{ Program used to demonstrate the usage of heaptrc unit }*

**Uses** `heaptrc;`

**Var** `P1 : ^ Longint;`  
    `P2 : Pointer;`  
    `I : longint;`  
    `Marker : Longint;`

**Procedure** `SetMarker ( P : pointer );`

**Type** `PLongint = ^ Longint;`

**begin**  
    `PLongint (P)^ := Marker;`  
**end;**

**Procedure** `Part1;`

**begin**  
    *// Blocks allocated here are marked with \$FFAAFFAA = -5570646*  
    `Marker := $FFAAFFAA;`  
    `New(P1);`  
    `New(P1);`  
    `Dispose(P1);`  
    **For** `I:=1 to 10 do`  
        **begin**  
            `GetMem ( P2,128);`  
            **If** `( I mod 2 ) = 0` **Then** `FreeMem(P2,128);`  
        **end;**  
    `GetMem(P2,128);`  
**end;**

**Procedure** `Part2;`

**begin**  
    *// Blocks allocated here are marked with \$FAFAFAFA = -84215046*  
    `Marker := $FAFAFAFA;`  
    `New(P1);`  
    `New(P1);`

```
    Dispose(P1);
    For I:=1 to 10 do
        begin
            GetMem ( P2,128);
            If ( I mod 2) = 0 Then FreeMem(P2,128);
            end;
            GetMem(P2,128);
        end;

    begin
        SetExtraInfo ( SizeOf ( Marker ), @SetMarker);
        Writeln ( ' Part 1' );
        part1 ;
        Writeln ( ' Part 2' );
        part2 ;
    end.
```

---

### **SetHeapTraceOutput**

Declaration: `Procedure SetHeapTraceOutput(const name : string);`

Description: `SetHeapTraceOutput` sets the filename into which heap trace info will be written. By default information is written to standard output, this function allows you to redirect the information to a file with full filename name.

Errors: If the file cannot be written to, errors will occur when writing the trace.

See also: `SetExtraInfo` (136)

## Chapter 10

# The IPC unit.

This chapter describes the IPC unit for Free Pascal. It was written for LINUX by Michaël Van Canneyt. It gives all the functionality of system V Inter-Process Communication: shared memory, semaphores and messages. It works only on the LINUX operating system.

The chapter is divided in 2 sections:

- The first section lists types, constants and variables from the interface part of the unit.
- The second section describes the functions defined in the unit.

### 10.1 Types, Constants and variables :

#### Variables

```
Var
    IPCError : longint;
```

The `IPCError` variable is used to report errors, by all calls.

#### Constants

Many constants here are provided for completeness only, and should under normal circumstances not be used by the programmer.

```
Const
    IPC_CREAT  = 1 shl 9; { create if key is nonexistent }
    IPC_EXCL   = 2 shl 9; { fail if key exists }
    IPC_NOWAIT = 4 shl 9; { return error on wait }
```

These constants are used in the various `xxxget` calls.

```
IPC_RMID = 0;      { remove resource }
IPC_SET  = 1;      { set ipc_perm options }
IPC_STAT = 2;      { get ipc_perm options }
IPC_INFO = 3;      { see ipcs }
```

These constants can be passed to the various `xxxctl` calls.

```
const
MSG_NOERROR = 1 shl 12;
MSG_EXCEPT = 2 shl 12;
MSGMNI = 128;
MSGMAX = 4056;
MSGMNB = 16384;
```

These constants are used in the messaging system, they are not for use by the programmer.

```
const
SEM_UNDO = $1000;
GETPID = 11;
GETVAL = 12;
GETALL = 13;
GETNCNT = 14;
GETZCNT = 15;
SETVAL = 16;
SETALL = 17;
```

These constants call be specified in the **semop** (147) call.

```
SEMMNI = 128;
SEMMSL = 32;
SEMMNS = (SEMMNI * SEMMSL);
SEMOPM = 32;
SEMVMX = 32767;
```

These constanst are used internally by the semaphore system, they should not be used by the programmer.

```
const
SHM_R      = 4 shl 6;
SHM_W      = 2 shl 6;
SHM_RDONLY = 1 shl 12;
SHM_RND    = 2 shl 12;
SHM_REMAP  = 4 shl 12;
SHM_LOCK   = 11;
SHM_UNLOCK = 12;
```

These constants are used in the **shmctl** (153) call.

## Types

The following two types are provided because they are needed. One they they should be defined in the system unit, however.

```
Type
PULong = ^Cardinal;
PWord  = ^Word;
```

```
Type
TKey    = Longint;
```

TKey is the type returned by the **ftok** (143) key generating function.

```
type
  PIPC_Perm = ^TIPC_Perm;
  TIPC_Perm = record
    key : TKey;
    uid,
    gid,
    cuid,
    cgid,
    mode,
    seq : Word;
  end;
```

The TIPC\_Perm structure is used in all IPC systems to specify the permissions.

```
Type
  PSHMid_DS = ^TSHMid_ds;
  TSHMid_ds = record
    shm_perm : TIPC_Perm;
    shm_segsz : longint;
    shm_atime : longint;
    shm_dtime : longint;
    shm_ctime : longint;
    shm_cpid : word;
    shm_lpid : word;
    shm_nattch : integer;
    shm_npages : word;
    shm_pages : Pointer;
    attaches : pointer;
  end;
```

The TSHMid\_ds structure is used in the shmctl (153) call to set or retrieve settings concerning shared memory.

```
type
  PSHMinfo = ^TSHMinfo;
  TSHMinfo = record
    shmmax : longint;
    shmmmin : longint;
    shmmni : longint;
    shmseg : longint;
    shmall : longint;
  end;
```

The TSHMinfo record is used by the shared memory system, and should not be accessed by the programmer directly.

```
type
  PMSG = ^TMSG;
  TMSG = record
    msg_next : PMSG;
    msg_type : Longint;
    msg_spot : PChar;
    msg_stime : Longint;
    msg_ts : Integer;
  end;
```

The TMSG record is used in the handling of message queues. There should be few cases where the programmer needs to access this data.

```
type
  PMSQid_ds = ^TMSQid_ds;
  TMSQid_ds = record
    msg_perm    : TIPC_perm;
    msg_first   : PMsg;
    msg_last    : PMsg;
    msg_stime   : Longint;
    msg_rtime   : Longint;
    msg_ctime   : Longint;
    wwait       : Pointer;
    rwait       : pointer;
    msg_cbytes  : word;
    msg_qnum    : word;
    msg_qbytes  : word;
    msg_lspid   : word;
    msg_lrpid   : word;
  end;
```

The TMSQid\_ds record is returned by the `msgctl` (144) call, and contains all data about a message queue.

```
PMSGbuf = ^TMSGbuf;
TMSGbuf = record
  mtype : longint;
  mtext : array[0..0] of char;
end;
```

The TMSGbuf record is a record containing the data of a record. you should never use this record directly, instead you should make your own record that follows the structure of the TMSGbuf record, but that has a size that is big enough to accomodate your messages. The `mtype` field should always be present, and should always be filled.

```
Type
  PMSGinfo = ^TMSGinfo;
  TMSGinfo = record
    msgpool : Longint;
    msgmap  : Longint;
    msgmax  : Longint;
    msgmnb  : Longint;
    msgmni  : Longint;
    msgssz  : Longint;
    msgtql  : Longint;
    msgseg  : Word;
  end;
```

The TMSGinfo record is used internally by the message queue system, and should not be used by the programmer directly.

```
Type
  PSEMid_ds = ^PSEMid_ds;
  TSEMid_ds = record
```

```
sem_perm : tipc_perm;
sem_otime : longint;
sem_ctime : longint;
sem_base      : pointer;
sem_pending   : pointer;
sem_pending_last : pointer;
undo          : pointer;
sem_nsems : word;
end;
```

The TSEMid\_ds structure is returned by the `semctl` (148) call, and contains all data concerning a semaphore.

Type

```
PSEMbuf = ^TSEMbuf;
TSEMbuf = record
    sem_num : word;
    sem_op  : integer;
    sem_flg : integer;
end;
```

The TSEMbuf record is used in the `semop` (147) call, and is used to specify which operations you want to do.

Type

```
PSEMinfo = ^TSEMinfo;
TSEMinfo = record
    semmap : longint;
    semmni : longint;
    semmns : longint;
    semmnu : longint;
    semmsl : longint;
    semopm : longint;
    semume : longint;
    semusz : longint;
    semvmx : longint;
    semaem : longint;
end;
```

The TSEMinfo record is used internally by the semaphore system, and should not be used directly.

Type

```
PSEMun = ^TSEMun;
TSEMun = record
    case longint of
        0 : ( val : longint );
        1 : ( buf : PSEMid_ds );
        2 : ( arr : PWord );
        3 : ( padbuf : PSEminfo );
        4 : ( padpad : pointer );
    end;
```

The TSEMun variant record (actually a C union) is used in the `semctl` (148) call.

## 10.2 Functions and procedures

### **ftok**

**Declaration:** `Function ftok (Path : String; ID : char) : TKey;`

**Description:** `ftok` returns a key that can be used in a `semget` (147), `shmget` (152) or `msgget` (143) call to access a new or existing IPC resource.

`Path` is the name of a file in the file system, `ID` is a character of your choice. The `ftok` call does the same as it's C counterpart, so a pascal program and a C program will access the same resource if they use the same `Path` and `ID`

**Errors:** `ftok` returns -1 if the file in `Path` doesn't exist.

**See also:** `semget` (147), `shmget` (152), `msgget` (143)

For an example, see `msgctl` (144), `semctl` (148), `shmctl` (153).

### **msgget**

**Declaration:** `Function msgget(key: TKey; msgflg:longint):longint;`

**Description:** `msgget` returns the ID of the message queue described by `key`. Depending on the flags in `msgflg`, a new queue is created.

`msgflg` can have one or more of the following values (combined by ORs):

**IPC\_CREAT** The queue is created if it doesn't already exist.

**IPC\_EXCL** If used in combination with `IPC_CREAT`, causes the call to fail if the queue already exists. It cannot be used by itself.

Optionally, the flags can be ORed with a permission mode, which is the same mode that can be used in the file system.

**Errors:** On error, -1 is returned, and `IPCError` is set.

**See also:** `ftok` (143), `msgsnd` (143), `msgrcv` (144), `msgctl` (144), `semget` (2)

For an example, see `msgctl` (144).

### **msgsnd**

**Declaration:** `Function msgsnd(msqid:longint; msgp: PMSGBuf; msgsz: longint; msgflg:longint): Boolean;`

**Description:** `msgsnd` sends a message to a message queue with ID `msqid`. `msgp` is a pointer to a message buffer, that should be based on the `TMSGBuf` type. `msgsz` is the size of the message (NOT of the message buffer record !)

The `msgflg` can have a combination of the following values (ORed together):

**0** No special meaning. The message will be written to the queue. If the queue is full, then the process is blocked.

**IPC\_NOWAIT** If the queue is full, then no message is written, and the call returns immediatly.

The function returns `True` if the message was sent successfully, `False` otherwise.



Errors: In case of error, the call returns `False`, and `IPCError` is set.

See also: `msgget` (143), `msgrcv` (144), `seefmsgctl`

For an example, see `msgctl` (144).

### **msgrcv**

**Declaration:** `Function msgrcv(msqid:longint; msgp: PMSGBuf; msgsz: longint; msgtyp:longint; msgflg:longint): Boolean;`

**Description:** `msgrcv` retrieves a message of type `msgtyp` from the message queue with ID `msqid`. `msgtyp` corresponds to the `mtype` field of the `TMSGbuf` record. The message is stored in the `MSGbuf` structure pointed to by `msgp`.

The `msgflg` parameter can be used to control the behaviour of the `msgrcv` call. It consists of an ORed combination of the following flags:

**0**No special meaning.

**IPC\_NOWAIT**If no messages are available, then the call returns immediatly, with the `ENOMSG` error.

**MSG\_NOERROR**If the message size is wrong (too large), no error is generated, instead the message is truncated. Normally, in such cases, the call returns an error (`E2BIG`)

The function returns `True` if the message was received correctly, `False` otherwise.

Errors: In case of error, `False` is returned, and `IPCError` is set.

See also: `msgget` (143), `msgsnd` (143), `msgctl` (144)

For an example, see `msgctl` (144).

### **msgctl**

**Declaration:** `Function msgctl(msqid:longint; cmd: longint; buf: PMSQid_ds): Boolean;`

**Description:** `msgctl` performs various operations on the message queue with id `ID`. Which operation is performed, depends on the `cmd` parameter, which can have one of the following values:

**IPC\_STAT**In this case, the `msgctl` call fills the `TMSQid_ds` structure with information about the message queue.

**IPC\_SET**In this case, the `msgctl` call sets the permissions of the queue as specified in the `ipc_perm` record inside `buf`.

**IPC\_RMID**If this is specified, the message queue will be removed from the system.

`buf` contains the data that are needed by the call. It can be `Nil` in case the message queue should be removed.

The function returns `True` if successfull, `False` otherwise.

Errors: On error, `False` is returned, and `IPCError` is set accordingly.

See also: `msgget` (143), `msgsnd` (143), `msgrcv` (144)

```
program msgtool;

Uses ipc;

Type
  PMyMsgBuf = ^ TMyMsgBuf;
  TMyMsgBuf = record
    mtype : Longint;
    mtext : string [255];
  end;

Procedure DoError ( Const Msg : string );

begin
  Writeln (msg, 'returned an error : ', ipcerror);
  halt (1);
end;

Procedure SendMessage ( Id : Longint;
                        Var Buf : TMyMsgBuf;
                        MType : Longint;
                        Const MText : String );

begin
  Writeln ( ' Sending message.' );
  Buf.mtype:=mtype;
  Buf.Mtext:=mtext;
  If not msgsnd( Id , PMsgBuf( @Buf), 256, 0) then
    DoError( ' msgsnd' );
end;

Procedure ReadMessage ( ID : Longint;
                        Var Buf : TMyMsgBuf;
                        MType : longint );

begin
  Writeln ( ' Reading message.' );
  Buf.MType:=MType;
  If msgrcv( ID , PMSGBuf( @Buf), 256, mtype, 0) then
    Writeln ( ' Type : ', buf.mtype, ' Text : ', buf.mtext)
  else
    DoError ( ' msgrcv' );
end;

Procedure RemoveQueue ( ID : Longint);

begin
  If msgctl ( id, IPC_RMID, Nil ) then
    Writeln ( ' Removed Queue with id ', Id );
end;

Procedure ChangeQueueMode ( ID, mode : longint );

Var QueueDS : TMSQid_ds;

begin
  If Not msgctl ( Id , IPC_STAT, @QueueDS) then
```

```
    DoError ( 'msgctl : stat' );
    Writeln ( 'Old permissions : ' , QueueDS.msg_perm.mode);
    QueueDS.msg_perm.mode:=Mode;
    if msgctl ( ID,IPC_SET,@QueueDS) then
        Writeln ( 'New permissions : ' , QueueDS.msg_perm.mode)
    else
        DoError ( 'msgctl : IPC_SET' );
end;

procedure usage;

begin
    Writeln ( 'Usage : msgtool s(end) < type> <text> (max 255 characters)' );
    Writeln ( '                                r(eceive) < type>' );
    Writeln ( '                                d(elete)' );
    Writeln ( '                                m(ode) < decimal mode>' );
    halt (1);
end;

Function StrToInt ( S : String ): longint;

Var M : longint;
    C : Integer;

begin
    val ( S,M,C);
    If C<>0 Then DoError ( ' StrToInt : ' +S);
    StrToInt:=M;
end;

Var
    Key : TKey;
    ID : longint;
    Buf : TMyMsgBuf;

begin
    If Paramcount<1 then Usage;
    key := Ftok ( ' . ' , 'M' );
    ID:=msgget(key,IPC_CREAT or 438);
    If ID<0 then DoError ( 'MsgGet' );
    Case upCase(Paramstr(1)[1]) of
        'S' : If ParamCount<>3 then
            Usage
        else
            SendMessage ( id , Buf , StrToInt ( Paramstr (2)), paramstr (3));
        'R' : If ParamCount<>2 then
            Usage
        else
            ReadMessage ( id , buf , strtoint ( Paramstr (2)));
        'D' : If ParamCount<>1 then
            Usage
        else
            RemoveQueue ( ID);
        'M' : If ParamCount<>2 then
            Usage
        else
            ChangeQueueMode ( id , strtoint ( paramstr (2)));
    else
```

```

        Usage
    end;
end.

```

---

**semget**

**Declaration:** Function `semget(key:Tkey; nsems:longint; semflg:longint): longint;`

**Description:** `msgget` returns the ID of the semaphore set described by `key`. Depending on the flags in `semflg`, a new queue is created.

`semflg` can have one or more of the following values (combined by ORs):

**IPC\_CREAT**The queue is created if it doesn't already exist.

**IPC\_EXCL**If used in combination with `IPC_CREAT`, causes the call to fail if the set already exists. It cannot be used by itself.

Optionally, the flags can be ORed with a permission mode, which is the same mode that can be used in the file system.

if a new set of semaphores is created, then there will be `nsems` semaphores in it.

**Errors:** On error, -1 is returned, and `IPCError` is set.

See also: `ftok` (143), `semop` (147), `semctl` (148)

**semop**

**Declaration:** Function `semop(semid:longint; sops: pointer; nsops: cardinal): Boolean;`

**Description:** `semop` performs a set of operations on a message queue. `sops` points to an array of type `TSEMbuf`. The array should contain `nsops` elements.

The fields of the `TSEMbuf` structure

```

TSEMbuf = record
    sem_num : word;
    sem_op  : integer;
    sem_flg : integer;

```

should be filled as follows:

**sem\_num**The number of the semaphore in the set on which the operation must be performed.

**sem\_op**The operation to be performed. The operation depends on the sign of `sem_op`

1. A positive number is simply added to the current value of the semaphore.
2. If 0 (zero) is specified, then the process is suspended until the specified semaphore reaches zero.
3. If a negative number is specified, it is subtracted from the current value of the semaphore. If the value would become negative then the process is suspended until the value becomes big enough, unless `IPC_NOWAIT` is specified in the `sem_flg`.

**sem\_flg**Optional flags: if `IPC_NOWAIT` is specified, then the calling process will never be suspended.

The function returns `True` if the operations were successful, `False` otherwise.

**Errors:** In case of error, `False` is returned, and `IPCError` is set.

See also: `semget` (147), `semctl` (148)

**semctl**

**Declaration:** `Function semctl(semid:longint; semnum:longint; cmd:longint; var arg:tsemun): longint;`

**Description:** `semctl` performs various operations on the semaphore `semnum` with semaphore set id `ID`.

The `arg` parameter supplies the data needed for each call. This is a variant record that should be filled differently, according to the command:

```
Type
  TSEMun = record
    case longint of
      0 : ( val : longint );
      1 : ( buf : PSEMid_ds );
      2 : ( arr : PWord );
      3 : ( padbuf : PSeminfo );
      4 : ( padpad : pointer );
    end;
```

Which operation is performed, depends on the `cmd` parameter, which can have one of the following values:

**IPC\_STAT**In this case, the `arg` record should have its `buf` field set to the address of a `TSEMid_ds` record. The `semctl` call fills this `TSEMid_ds` structure with information about the semaphore set.

**IPC\_SET**In this case, the `arg` record should have its `buf` field set to the address of a `TSEMid_ds` record. The `semctl` call sets the permissions of the queue as specified in the `ipc_perm` record.

**IPC\_RMID**If this is specified, the semaphore set is removed from the system.

**GETALL**In this case, the `arr` field of `arg` should point to a memory area where the values of the semaphores will be stored. The size of this memory area is `SizeOf(Word) * Number of semaphores in the set`. This call will then fill the memory array with all the values of the semaphores.

**GETNCNT**This will fill the `val` field of the `arg` union with the number of processes waiting for resources.

**GETPID**`semctl` returns the process ID of the process that performed the last `semop` (147) call.

**GETVAL**`semctl` returns the value of the semaphore with number `semnum`.

**GETZCNT**`semctl` returns the number of processes waiting for semaphores that reach value zero.

**SETALL**In this case, the `arr` field of `arg` should point to a memory area where the values of the semaphores will be retrieved from. The size of this memory area is `SizeOf(Word) * Number of semaphores in the set`. This call will then set the values of the semaphores from the memory array.

**SETVAL**This will set the value of semaphore `semnum` to the value in the `val` field of the `arg` parameter.

The function returns -1 on error.

**Errors:** The function returns -1 on error, and `IPCError` is set accordingly.

See also: `semget` (147), `semop` (147)

---

```
Program semtool;  
  
{ Program to demonstrat the use of semaphores }  
  
Uses ipc;  
  
Const MaxSemValue = 5;  
  
Procedure DoError ( Const Msg : String );  
  
begin  
    WriteLn ( ' Error : ' ,msg, ' Code : ' ,IPCError);  
    Halt (1);  
end;  
  
Function getsemval ( ID,Member : longint ) : longint;  
  
Var S : TSEMun;  
  
begin  
    GetSemVal:= SemCtl( id , member, GETVAL, S);  
end;  
  
Procedure DispVal ( ID,member : longint );  
  
begin  
    writeln ( ' Value for member ' ,member, ' is ' ,GetSemVal(ID,Member));  
end;  
  
Function GetMemberCount ( ID : Longint ) : longint;  
  
Var opts : TSEMun;  
    semds : TSEMid_ds;  
  
begin  
    opts.buf:=@semds;  
    If semctl( Id,0,IPC_STAT,opts)<>-1 then  
        GetMemberCount:=semds.sem_nsems  
    else  
        GetMemberCount:=-1;  
end;  
  
Function OpenSem ( Key : TKey ) : Longint;  
  
begin  
    OpenSem:=semget( Key,0,438);  
    If OpenSem=-1 then  
        DoError ( ' OpenSem' );  
end;  
  
Function CreateSem ( Key : TKey; Members : Longint ) : Longint;  
  
Var Count : Longint;  
    Semopts : TSemun;  
  
begin  
    If members>semmsl then
```

```
    DoError ( ' Sorry , maximum number of semaphores in set exceeded' );
WriteIn ( ' Trying to create a new semaphore set with ', members, ' members.' );
CreateSem:=semget(key,members,IPC_CREAT or IPC_Excl or 438);
If CreateSem=-1 then
    DoError ( ' Semaphore set already exists.' );
Semopts.val:=MaxSemValue; { Initial value of semaphores }
For Count:=0 to Members-1 do
    semctl ( CreateSem, count, setval , semopts );
end;

Procedure lockSem ( ID,Member: Longint);

Var lock : TSEMbuf;

begin
    With lock do
        begin
            sem_num:=0;
            sem_op:=-1;
            sem_flg:=IPC_NOWAIT;
        end;
        if ( member<0) or ( member>GetMemberCount(ID)-1) then
            DoError ( ' semaphore member out of range' );
        if getsemval(ID,member)=0 then
            DoError ( ' Semaphore resources exhausted ( no lock )' );
        lock.sem_num:=member;
        WriteIn ( ' Attempting to lock member ',member, ' of semaphore ',ID);
        if not semop( Id, @lock,1) then
            DoError ( ' Lock failed' )
        else
            WriteIn ( ' Semaphore resources decremented by one' );
            dispval ( ID, Member );
        end;
    end;

Procedure UnlockSem ( ID,Member: Longint);

Var Unlock : TSEMbuf;

begin
    With Unlock do
        begin
            sem_num:=0;
            sem_op:=1;
            sem_flg:=IPC_NOWAIT;
        end;
        if ( member<0) or ( member>GetMemberCount(ID)-1) then
            DoError ( ' semaphore member out of range' );
        if getsemval(ID,member)=MaxSemValue then
            DoError ( ' Semaphore not locked' );
        Unlock.sem_num:=member;
        WriteIn ( ' Attempting to unlock member ',member, ' of semaphore ',ID);
        if not semop( Id, @unlock,1) then
            DoError ( ' Unlock failed' )
        else
            WriteIn ( ' Semaphore resources incremented by one' );
            dispval ( ID, Member );
        end;
    end;
```

```
Procedure RemoveSem ( ID : longint );

var S : TSemun;

begin
  If semctl ( Id , 0 , IPC_RMID , s ) <> -1 then
    Writeln ( ' Semaphore removed ' )
  else
    DoError ( ' Couldn ' ' t remove semaphore ' );
end;

Procedure ChangeMode ( ID , Mode : longint );

Var rc : longint;
    opts : TSEMun;
    semds : TSEMid_ds;

begin
  opts . buf := @semds;
  If not semctl ( Id , 0 , IPC_STAT , opts ) <> -1 then
    DoError ( ' Couldn ' ' t stat semaphore ' );
  Writeln ( ' Old permissions were : ' , semds . sem_perm . mode );
  semds . sem_perm . mode := mode;
  If semctl ( id , 0 , IPC_SET , opts ) <> -1 then
    Writeln ( ' Set permissions to ' , mode )
  else
    DoError ( ' Couldn ' ' t set permissions ' );
end;

Procedure PrintSem ( ID : longint );

Var l , cnt : longint;

begin
  cnt := getmembercount ( ID );
  Writeln ( ' Semaphore ' , ID , ' has ' , cnt , ' Members ' );
  For l := 0 to cnt - 1 Do
    DispVal ( id , l );
end;

Procedure USage;

begin
  Writeln ( ' Usage : semtool c ( reate ) < count > ' );
  Writeln ( '                               l ( ock ) < member > ' );
  Writeln ( '                               u ( nlock ) < member > ' );
  Writeln ( '                               d ( elete ) ' );
  Writeln ( '                               m ( ode ) < mode > ' );
  halt ( 1 );
end;

Function StrToInt ( S : String ) : longint ;

Var M : longint ;
    C : Integer ;

begin
```



```
    val (S,M,C);
    If C<>0 Then DoError ( ' StrToInt : ' +S);
    StrToInt:=M;
end;

Var Key : Tkey;
    ID : Longint;

begin
    If ParamCount<1 then Usage;
    key:=ftok ( '.' , 's' );
    Case UpCase(Paramstr (1)[1]) of
        'C' : begin
            if paramcount<>2 then usage;
            CreateSem ( key, strtoint (paramstr (2)));
            end;
        'L' : begin
            if paramcount<>2 then usage;
            ID:=OpenSem ( key);
            LockSem ( ID, strtoint (paramstr (2)));
            end;
        'U' : begin
            if paramcount<>2 then usage;
            ID:=OpenSem ( key);
            UnLockSem ( ID, strtoint (paramstr (2)));
            end;
        'M' : begin
            if paramcount<>2 then usage;
            ID:=OpenSem ( key);
            ChangeMode ( ID, strtoint (paramstr (2)));
            end;
        'D' : Begin
            ID:=OpenSem( Key);
            RemoveSem( Id );
            end;
        'P' : begin
            ID:=OpenSem( Key);
            PrintSem( Id );
            end;
    else
        Usage
    end;
end.
```

---

## shmget

Declaration: Function shmget(key: Tkey; Size:longint; flag:longint):longint;

Description: shmget returns the ID of a shared memory block, described by key. Depending on the flags in flag, a new memory block is created.

flag can have one or more of the following values (combined by ORs):

**IPC\_CREAT**The queue is created if it doesn't already exist.

**IPC\_EXCL**If used in combination with IPC\_CREAT, causes the call to fail if the queue already exists. It cannot be used by itself.

Optionally, the flags can be ORed with a permission mode, which is the same mode that can be used in the file system.

if a new memory block is created, then it will have size `Size` semaphores in it.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned, and `IPCError` is set.

See also:

## **shmat**

Declaration: `Function shmat (shmid:longint; shmaddr:pchar; shmflg:longint):pchar;`

Description: `shmat` attaches a shared memory block with identified `shmid` to the current process. The function returns a pointer to the shared memory block.

If `shmaddr` is `Nil`, then the system chooses a free unmapped memory region, as high up in memory space as possible.

If `shmaddr` is non-nil, and `SHM_RND` is in `shmflg`, then the returned address is `shmaddr`, rounded down to `SHMLBA`. If `SHM_RND` is not specified, then `shmaddr` must be a page-aligned address.

The parameter `shmflg` can be used to control the behaviour of the `shmat` call. It consists of a ORed combination of the following constants:

**SHM\_RND**The suggested address in `shmaddr` is rounded down to `SHMLBA`.

**SHM\_RDONLY**the shared memory is attached for read access only. Otherwise the memory is attached for read-write. The process then needs read-write permissions to access the shared memory.

Errors: If an error occurs, -1 is returned, and `IPCError` is set.

See also: `shmget` (152), `shmdt` (153), `shmctl` (153)

For an example, see `shmctl` (153).

## **shmdt**

Declaration: `Function shmdt (shmaddr:pchar):boolean;`

Description: `shmdt` detaches the shared memory at address `shmaddr`. This shared memory block is unavailable to the current process, until it is attached again by a call to `shmat` (153).

The function returns `True` if the memory block was detached successfully, `False` otherwise.

Errors: On error, `False` is returned, and `IPCError` is set.

See also: `shmget` (152), `shmat` (153), `shmctl` (153)

## **shmctl**

Declaration: `Function shmctl(shmid:longint; cmd:longint; buf: pshmid_ds): Boolean;`

Description: `shmctl` performs various operations on the shared memory block identified by identifier `shmid`.

The `buf` parameter points to a `TSHMid_ds` record. The `cmd` parameter is used to pass which operation is to be performed. It can have one of the following values :

**IPC\_STAT**shmctl fills the TSHMid\_ds record that buf points to with the available information about the shared memory block.

**IPC\_SET**applies the values in the ipc\_perm record that buf points to, to the shared memory block.

**IPC\_RMID**the shared memory block is destroyed (after all processes to which the block is attached, have detached from it).

If successful, the function returns True, False otherwise.

Errors: If an error occurs, the function returns False, and IPCError is set.

See also: shmget (152), shmat (153), shmdt (153)

---

```
Program shmtool;

uses ipc, strings;

Const SegSize = 100;

var key : Tkey;
    shmid, cntr : longint;
    segptr : pchar;

Procedure USage;

begin
  Writeln ( 'Usage : shmtool w(rite) text' );
  writeln ( '          r(ead)' );
  writeln ( '          d(elete)' );
  writeln ( '          m(ode change) mode' );
  halt (1);
end;

Procedure Writeshm ( ID : Longint; ptr : pchar; S : string );

begin
  strcpy ( ptr, S );
end;

Procedure Readshm ( ID : longint; ptr : pchar );

begin
  Writeln ( 'Read : ', ptr );
end;

Procedure removeshm ( ID : Longint );

begin
  shmctl ( ID, IPC_RMID, Nil );
  writeln ( 'Shared memory marked for deletion' );
end;

Procedure CHangeMode ( ID : longint; mode : String );

Var m : word;
    code : integer;
    data : TSHMid_ds;
```

```
begin
  val (mode,m,code);
  if code<>0 then
    usage;
  If Not shmctl (shmctl,IPC_STAT,@data) then
    begin
      writeln ('Error : shmctl :',ipcerror);
      halt(1);
    end;
  writeln ('Old permissions : ',data.shm_perm.mode);
  data.shm_perm.mode:=m;
  If Not shmctl (shmctl,IPC_SET,@data) then
    begin
      writeln ('Error : shmctl :',ipcerror);
      halt(1);
    end;
  writeln ('New permissions : ',data.shm_perm.mode);
end;

begin
  if paramcount<1 then usage;
  key := ftok ('.', 'S');
  shmctl := shmget(key, segsize, IPC_CREAT or IPC_EXCL or 438);
  If shmctl=-1 then
    begin
      writeln ('Shared memory exists. Opening as client');
      shmctl := shmget(key, segsize, 0);
      If shmctl = -1 then
        begin
          writeln ('shmget : Error !', ipcerror);
          halt(1);
        end
      end
    else
      writeln ('Creating new shared memory segment. ');
      segptr:=shmat(shmctl, nil, 0);
      if longint(segptr)=-1 then
        begin
          writeln ('Shmat : error !', ipcerror);
          halt(1);
        end;
      case upcase(paramstr(1)[1]) of
        'W' : writeshm (shmctl, segptr, paramstr(2));
        'R' : readshm (shmctl, segptr);
        'D' : removeshm(shmctl);
        'M' : changemode (shmctl, paramstr(2));
      else
        begin
          writeln (paramstr(1));
          usage;
        end;
      end;
end;
end.
```

---

# Chapter 11

## The LINUX unit.

This chapter describes the LINUX unit for Free Pascal. The unit was written by Michaël van Canneyt. It works only on the Linux operating system. This chapter is divided in 3 sections:

- The first section lists all constants, types and variables, as listed in the interface section of the LINUX unit.
- The second section gives an overview of all available functions, grouped by category.
- The third section describes all procedures and functions in the LINUX unit.

### 11.1 Type, Variable and Constant declarations

#### Types

PGlob and TGlob are 2 types used in the Glob (203) function:

```
PGlob = ^TGlob;  
TGlob = record  
    Name : PChar;  
    Next : PGlob;  
end;
```

The following types are used in the signal-processing procedures.

```
tfpreg = record  
    significand: array[0..3] of word;  
    exponent: word;  
end;  
  
pfpstate = ^tfpstate;  
tfpstate = record  
    cw, sw, tag, ipoff, cssel, dataoff, datasel: cardinal;  
    st: array[0..7] of tfpreg;  
    status: cardinal;  
end;  
  
PSigContextRec = ^SigContextRec;  
SigContextRec = record
```

```
gs, __gsh: word;
fs, __fsh: word;
es, __esh: word;
ds, __dsh: word;
edi: cardinal;
esi: cardinal;
ebp: cardinal;
esp: cardinal;
ebx: cardinal;
edx: cardinal;
ecx: cardinal;
eax: cardinal;
trapno: cardinal;
err: cardinal;
eip: cardinal;
cs, __csh: word;
eflags: cardinal;
esp_at_signal: cardinal;
ss, __ssh: word;
fpstate: pfpstate;
oldmask: cardinal;
cr2: cardinal;
end;
```

The above records contain information about the processor state and process state at the moment a signal is sent to your program.

The records below are used in catching signals.

```
TSigAction = procedure(Sig: Longint; SigContext: SigContextRec);cdecl;
SignalHandler = Procedure ( Sig : Integer);cdecl;

PSignalHandler = SignalHandler;
SignalRestorer = Procedure;cdecl;
PSignalrestorer = SignalRestorer;
SigActionRec = packed record
  Handler : record
    case byte of
      0: (Sh: SignalHandler);
      1: (Sa: TSigAction);
    end;
  Sa_Mask : SigSet;
  Sa_Flags : Longint;
  Sa_restorer : SignalRestorer; { Obsolete - Don't use }
end;
PSigActionRec = ^SigActionRec;
```

Stat is used to store information about a file. It is defined in the syscalls unit.

```
stat = record
  dev : word;
  pad1 : word;
  ino : longint;
  mode : word;
  nlink : word;
```

```
uid      : word;
gid      : word;
rdev     : word;
pad2     : word;
size     : longint;
blksize  : Longint;
blocks   : Longint;
atime    : Longint;
unused1  : longint;
mtime    : Longint;
unused2  : longint;
ctime    : Longint;
unused3  : longint;
unused4  : longint;
unused5  : longint;
end;
```

Statfs is used to store information about a filesystem. It is defined in the syscalls unit.

```
statfs = record
  fstype   : longint;
  bsize    : longint;
  blocks   : longint;
  bfree    : longint;
  bavail   : longint;
  files    : longint;
  ffree    : longint;
  fsid     : longint;
  namelen  : longint;
  spare    : array [0..6] of longint;
end
```

Dir and PDir are used in the `OpenDir` (213) and `ReadDir` (216) functions.

```
TDir = record
  fd      : integer;
  loc     : longint;
  size    : integer;
  buf     : pdirent;
  nextoff : longint;
  dd_max  : integer;
  lock    : pointer;
end;
PDir = ^TDir;
```

Dirent, PDirent are used in the `ReadDir` (216) function to return files in a directory.

```
PDirent = ^Dirent;
Dirent = Record
  ino,
  off   : longint;
  reclen : word;
  name   : string[255]
end;
```

Termio and Termios are used with `ioctl()` calls for terminal handling.

```
Const  NCCS = 19;
       NCC = 8;
```

```
Type termio = record
  c_iflag,{ input mode flags }
  c_oflag,{ output mode flags }
  c_cflag,{ control mode flags }
  c_lflag : Word; { local mode flags }
  c_line : Word; { line discipline - careful, only High byte in use}
  c_cc : array [0..NCC-1] of char; { control characters }
end;
termios = record
  c_iflag,           { input mode flags }
  c_oflag,           { output mode flags }
  c_cflag,           { control mode flags }
  c_lflag : Cardinal; { local mode flags }
  c_line : char;      { line discipline }
  c_cc : array [0..NCCS-1] of char; { control characters }
end;
```

Utimbuf is used in the **Utime** (231) call to set access and modification time of a file.

```
utimbuf = record
  actime,modtime : Longint;
end;
```

For the **Select** (219) call, the following 4 types are needed:

```
FDSets = Array [0..31] of longint;
PFDSets = ^FDSets;
TimeVal = Record
  sec,usec : Longint;
end;
PTimeVal = ^TimeVal;
```

The **Uname** (231) function uses the `utsname` to return information about the current kernel :

```
utsname =record
  sysname,nodename,release,
  version,machine,domainname : Array[0..64] of char;
end;
```

Its elements are null-terminated C style strings, you cannot access them directly !

## Variables

`Linuxerror` is the variable in which the procedures in the linux unit report errors.

```
LinuxError : Longint;
```

`StdErr` Is a Text variable, corresponding to Standard Error or diagnostic output. It is connected to file descriptor 2. It can be freely used, and will be closed on exit.

```
StdErr : Text;
```



## **Constants**

Constants for setting/getting process priorities :

```
Prio_Process = 0;
Prio_PGrp    = 1;
Prio_User    = 2;
```

For testing access rights:

```
R_OK = 4;
W_OK = 2;
X_OK = 1;
F_OK = 0;
```

For signal handling functions :

```
SA_NOCLDSTOP = 1;
SA_SHIRQ     = $04000000;
SA_STACK     = $08000000;
SA_RESTART   = $10000000;
SA_INTERRUPT = $20000000;
SA_NOMASK    = $40000000;
SA_ONESHOT   = $80000000;
```

```
SIG_BLOCK = 0;
SIG_UNBLOCK = 1;
SIG_SETMASK = 2;
SIG_DFL = 0 ;
SIG_IGN = 1 ;
SIG_ERR = -1;
```

```
SIGHUP = 1;
SIGINT = 2;
SIGQUIT = 3;
SIGILL = 4;
SIGTRAP = 5;
SIGABRT = 6;
SIGIOT = 6;
SIGBUS = 7;
SIGFPE = 8;
SIGKILL = 9;
SIGUSR1 = 10;
SIGSEGV = 11;
SIGUSR2 = 12;
SIGPIPE = 13;
SIGALRM = 14;
SIGTERM = 15;
SIGSTKFLT = 16;
SIGCHLD = 17;
SIGCONT = 18;
SIGSTOP = 19;
SIGTSTP = 20;
SIGTTIN = 21;
SIGTTOU = 22;
```

```
SIGURG = 23;
SIGXCPU = 24;
SIGXFSZ = 25;
SIGVTALRM = 26;
SIGPROF = 27;
SIGWINCH = 28;
SIGIO = 29;
SIGPOLL = SIGIO;
SIGPWR = 30;
SIGUNUSED = 31;
```

For file control mechanism :

```
F_GetFd   = 1;
F_SetFd   = 2;
F_GetFl   = 3;
F_SetFl   = 4;
F_GetLk   = 5;
F_SetLk   = 6;
F_SetLkW  = 7;
F_GetOwn  = 8;
F_SetOwn  = 9;
```

For Terminal handling :

```
TCGETS = $5401 ;
TCSETS = $5402 ;
TCSETSW = $5403 ;
TCSETSF = $5404 ;
TCGETA = $5405 ;
TCSETA = $5406 ;
TCSETAW = $5407 ;
TCSETAF = $5408 ;
TCSBRK = $5409 ;
TCXONC = $540A ;
TCFLSH = $540B ;
TIOCEXCL = $540C ;
TIOCNXCL = $540D ;
TIOCSCTTY = $540E ;
TIOCGPGRP = $540F ;
TIOCSPGRP = $5410 ;
TIOCOUTQ = $5411 ;
TIOCSTI = $5412 ;
TIOCGWINSZ = $5413 ;
TIOCSWINSZ = $5414 ;
TIOCMGET = $5415 ;
TIOCMBIS = $5416 ;
TIOCMBIC = $5417 ;
TIOCMSET = $5418 ;
TIOCGSOFTCAR = $5419 ;
TIOCSSOFTCAR = $541A ;
FIONREAD = $541B ;
TIOCINQ = FIONREAD;
TIOCLINUX = $541C ;
```

```
TIOCCONS = $541D ;
TIOCGSERIAL = $541E ;
TIOCSSERIAL = $541F ;
TIOCPKT = $5420 ;
FIONBIO = $5421 ;
TIOCNOTTY = $5422 ;
TIOCSETD = $5423 ;
TIOCGETD = $5424 ;
TCSBRKP = $5425 ;
TIOCTTYGSTRUCT = $5426 ;
FIONCLEX = $5450 ;
FIOCLEX = $5451 ;
FIOASYNC = $5452 ;
TIOCSERCONFIG = $5453 ;
TIOCSERGWILD = $5454 ;
TIOCSERSWILD = $5455 ;
TIOCGLOCKTMIOS = $5456 ;
TIOCSLOCKTMIOS = $5457 ;
TIOCSERGSTRUCT = $5458 ;
TIOCSERGETLSR = $5459 ;
TIOCSERGETMULTI = $545A ;
TIOCSERSETMULTI = $545B ;
TIOCMWAIT = $545C ;
TIOCGICOUNT = $545D ;
TIOCPKT_DATA = 0;
TIOCPKT_FLUSHREAD = 1;
TIOCPKT_FLUSHWRITE = 2;
TIOCPKT_STOP = 4;
TIOCPKT_START = 8;
TIOCPKT_NOSTOP = 16;
TIOCPKT_DOSTOP = 32;
```

Other than that, all constants for setting the speed and control flags of a terminal line, as described in the `termios (2)` man page, are defined in the `linux` unit. It would take too much place to list them here. To check the mode field of a `stat` record, you can use the following constants :

```
{ Constants to check stat.mode }
STAT_IFMT = $f000; {00170000}
STAT_IFSOCK = $c000; {0140000}
STAT_IFLNK = $a000; {0120000}
STAT_IFREG = $8000; {0100000}
STAT_IFBLK = $6000; {0060000}
STAT_IFDIR = $4000; {0040000}
STAT_IFCHR = $2000; {0020000}
STAT_IFIFO = $1000; {0010000}
STAT_ISUID = $0800; {0004000}
STAT_ISGID = $0400; {0002000}
STAT_ISVTX = $0200; {0001000}
{ Constants to check permissions }
STAT_IRWXO = $7;
STAT_IROTH = $4;
STAT_IWOTH = $2;
STAT_IXOTH = $1;
STAT_IRWXG = STAT_IRWXO shl 3;
```

```
STAT_IRGRP = STAT_IROTH shl 3;
STAT_IWGRP = STAT_IWOTH shl 3;
STAT_IXGRP = STAT_IXOTH shl 3;
STAT_IRWXU = STAT_IRWXO shl 6;
STAT_IRUSR = STAT_IROTH shl 6;
STAT_IWUSR = STAT_IWOTH shl 6;
STAT_IXUSR = STAT_IXOTH shl 6;
```

You can test the type of a filesystem returned by a **FStat** (191) call with the following constants:

```
fs_old_ext2 = $ef51;
fs_ext2     = $ef53;
fs_ext      = $137d;
fs_iso      = $9660;
fs_minix    = $137f;
fs_minix_30 = $138f;
fs_minix_V2 = $2468;
fs_msdos    = $4d44;
fs_nfs      = $6969;
fs_proc     = $9fa0;
fs_xia      = $012FD16D;
```

the **FLock** (189) call uses the following mode constants :

```
LOCK_SH = 1;
LOCK_EX = 2;
LOCK_UN = 8;
LOCK_NB = 4;
```

The **MMap** (210) function uses the following constants to specify access to mapped memory:

```
PROT_READ  = $1; { page can be read }
PROT_WRITE  = $2; { page can be written }
PROT_EXEC   = $4; { page can be executed }
PROT_NONE   = $0; { page can not be accessed }
```

and the following constants to specify the type of mapping.

```
MAP_SHARED    = $1; { Share changes }
MAP_PRIVATE   = $2; { Changes are private }
MAP_TYPE      = $f; { Mask for type of mapping }
MAP_FIXED     = $10; { Interpret addr exactly }
MAP_ANONYMOUS = $20; { don't use a file }
```

## 11.2 Function list by category

What follows is a listing of the available functions, grouped by category. For each function there is a reference to the page where you can find the function.

### File Input/Output routines

Functions for handling file input/output.

Name	Description	Page
Dup	Duplicate a file handle	178
Dup2	Copy one file handle to another	178
Fcntl	General file control	194
fdClose	Close file descriptor	185
fdFlush	Flush file descriptor	186
fdOpen	Open new file descriptor	186
fdRead	Read from file descriptor	187
fdSeek	Position in file	188
fdTruncate	Truncate file	188
fdWrite	Write to file descriptor	189
GetFS	Get file descriptor of pascal file	198
Select	Wait for input from file descriptor	219
SelectText	Wait for input from pascal file	220

## General File handling routines

Functions for handling files on disk.

Name	Description	Page
Access	Check access rights on file	168
BaseName	Return name part of file	172
Chown	Change owner of file	173
Chmod	Change access rights on file	174
DirName	Return directory part of file	177
FSplit	Split filename in parts	191
FExpand	Return full-grown filename	189
FLock	Set lock on a file	189
FNMatch	Match filename to searchpattern	190
FSearch	Search for a file in a path	190
FSStat	Return filesystem information	191
FStat	Return file information	192
FRename	Rename file	194
LStat	Return information on a link	207
Link	Create a link	208
ReadLink	Read contents of a symbolic link	216
SymLink	Create a symbolic link	225
Umask	Set the file creation mask	230
UnLink	Remove a file	231
Utime	Change file timestamps	231

## Pipes, FIFOs and streams

Functions for creating and managing pipes.

Name	Description	Page
AssignPipe	Create a pipe	169
AssignStream	Create pipes to program's input and output	170
MkFifo	Make a fifo	210
PClose	Close a pipe	214
POpen	Open a pipe for to program's input or output	215

## Directory handling routines

Functions for reading and searching directories.

Name	Description	Page
CloseDir	Close directory handle	176
Glob	Return files matching a search expression	203
GlobFree	Free result of Glob	203
OpenDir	Open directory for reading	213
ReadDir	Read directory entry	216
SeekDir	Seek directory	218
TellDir	Seek directory	230

## Process handling

Functions for managing processes and programs.

Name	Description	Page
Clone	Create a thread	175
Execl	Execute process with command-line list	180
Execle	Execute process with command-line list and environment	180
Execlp	Search in path and execute process with command list	181
Execv	Execute process	182
Execve	Execute process with environment	183
Execvp	Search in path and execute process	184
Fork	Spawn child process	194
GetEGid	Get effective group id	196
GetEnv	Get environment variable	197
GetEUid	Get effective user id	197
GetGid	Get group id	199
GetPid	Get process id	200
GetPPid	Get parent process id	200

GetPriority	Get process priority	201
GetUid	Get user id	202
Nice	Change priority of process	212
SetPriority	Change priority of process	220
Shell	Execute shell command	220
WaitPid	Wait for child process to terminate	232

## Signals

Functions for managing and responding to signals.

Name	Description	Page
Alarm	Send alarm signal to self	169
Kill	Send arbitrary signal to process	207
pause	Wait for signal to arrive	214
SigAction	Set signal action	221
Signal	Set signal action	224
SigPending	See if signals are waiting	222
SigProcMask	Set signal processing mask	222
SigRaise	Send signal to self	223
SigSuspend	Sets signal mask and waits for signal	223

## System information

Functions for retrieving system information such as date and time.

Name	Description	Page
GetDate	Return system date	195
GetDateTime	Return system date and time	196
GetDomainName	Return system domain name	196
GetEpochTime	Return epoch time	198
GetHostName	Return system host name	199
GetLocalTimezone	Return system timezone	200
GetTime	Return system time	201
GetTimeOfDay	Return system time	202
GetTimezoneFile	Return name of timezone file	202
ReadTimezoneFile	Read timezone file contents	218
SysInfo	Return general system information	226
Uname	Return system information	231

## Terminal functions

Functions for controlling the terminal to which the process is connected.

Name	Description	Page
CFMakeRaw	Set terminal to raw mode	172
CFSetISpeed	Set terminal reading speed	173
CFSetOSpeed	Set terminal writing speed	173
IOCtl	General IO control call	204
IsATTY	See if filedescriptor is a terminal	205
TCDrain	Wait till all output was written	227
TCFlow	Suspend transmission or receipt of data	227
TCFlush	Discard data written to terminal	228
TCGetAttr	Get terminal attributes	228
TCGetPGrp	Return PID of foreground process	229
TCSendBreak	Send data for specific time	229
TCSetAttr	Set terminal attributes	229
TCSetPGrp	Set foreground process	230
TTYName	Name of tty file	230

## Port input/output

Functions for reading and writing to the hardware ports.

Name	Description	Page
IOperm	Set permissions for port access	204
ReadPort	Read data from port	217
ReadPortB	Read 1 byte from port	217
ReadPortL	Read 4 bytes from port	217
ReadPortW	Read 2 bytes from port	218
WritePort	Write data to port	233
WritePortB	Write 1 byte to port	233
WritePortL	Write 4 bytes to port	233
WritePortW	Write 2 bytes to port	233

## Utility routines

Auxiliary functions that are useful in connection with the other functions.

Name	Description	Page
CreateShellArgV	Create an array of pchars from string	176
EpochToLocal	Convert epoch time to local time	179
FD_Clr	Clear item of select filedescriptors	185



FD_IsSet	Check item of select filedescriptors	185
FD_Set	Set item of select filedescriptors	185
FD_ZERO	Clear all items in select filedescriptors	184
LocalToEpoch	Convert local time to epoch time	210
MMap	Map a file into memory	210
MUnMap	Unmap previously mapped memory file	212
Octal	Convert octal to digital	213
S_ISBLK	Check file mode for block device	205
S_ISCHR	Check file mode for character device	205
S_ISDIR	Check file mode for directory	205
S_ISFIFO	Check file mode for FIFO	205
S_ISLNK	Check file mode for symboloc link	206
S_ISREG	Check file mode for regular file	206
S_ISSOCK	Check file mode for socket	206
StringToPPchar	Create an array of pchars from string	224

## 11.3 Functions and procedures

### Access

Declaration: `Function Access (Path : Pathstr; Mode : integer) : Boolean;`

Description: Tests user's access rights on the specified file. Mode is a mask existing of one or more of

**R\_OK**User has read rights.

**W\_OK**User has write rights.

**X\_OK**User has execute rights.

**F\_OK**User has search rights in the directory where the file is.

The test is done with the real user ID, instead of the effective user ID. If access is denied, or an error occurred, false is returned.

Errors: `LinuxError` is used to report errors:

**sys\_eaccess**The requested access is denied, either to the file or one of the directories in its path.

**sys\_einval**Mode was incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**A directory component in `Path` doesn't exist or is a dangling symbolic link.

**sys\_enotdir**A directory component in `Path` is not a directory.

**sys\_enomem**Insufficient kernel memory.

**sys\_eloop**`Path` has a circular symbolic link.

See also: `Chown` (173), `Chmod` (174), `Access` (2)

**Listing:** `linuxex/ex26.pp`

---

```
Program Example26;

{ Program to demonstrate the Access function . }

Uses linux ;

begin
  if Access ( '/ etc / passwd',W_OK) then
    begin
      WriteLn ( 'Better check your system. ');
      WriteLn ( 'I can write to the / etc / passwd file !' );
    end;
end.
```

---

## Alarm

Declaration: `Function Alarm(Sec : longint) : Longint;`

Description: Alarm schedules an alarm signal to be delivered to your process in Sec seconds. When Sec seconds have elapsed, Linux will send a SIGALRM signal to the current process. If Sec is zero, then no new alarm will be set. Whatever the value of Sec, any previous alarm is cancelled.

The function returns the number of seconds till the previously scheduled alarm was due to be delivered, or zero if there was none.

Errors: None

**Listing:** linuxex/ex59.pp

---

```
Program Example59;

{ Program to demonstrate the Alarm function . }

Uses linux ;

Procedure AlarmHandler(Sig : longint); cdecl;

begin
  WriteLn ( 'Got to alarm handler' );
end;

begin
  WriteLn ( 'Setting alarm handler' );
  Signal(SIGALRM, @AlarmHandler);
  WriteLn ( 'Scheduling Alarm in 10 seconds' );
  Alarm(10);
  WriteLn ( 'Pausing' );
  Pause;
  WriteLn ( 'Pause returned' );
end.
```

---

## AssignPipe

Declaration: `Function AssignPipe(var pipe_in,pipe_out:longint):boolean; Function AssignPipe(var pipe_in,pipe_out:text):boolean; Function AssignPipe(var pipe_in,pipe_out:file):boolean;`

**Description:** AssignPipe creates a pipe, i.e. two file objects, one for input, one for output. What is written to Pipe\_out, can be read from Pipe\_in.

This call is overloaded. The in and out pipe can take three forms: an typed or untyped file, a text file or a file descriptor.

If a text file is passed then reading and writing from/to the pipe can be done through the usual Readln(Pipe\_in,...) and Writeln (Pipe\_out,...) procedures.

The function returns True if everything went successfully, False otherwise.

**Errors:** In case the function fails and returns False, LinuxError is used to report errors:

**sys\_emfile**Too many file descriptors for this process.

**sys\_enfile**The system file table is full.

See also: POpen (215), MkFifo (210), pipe (2)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex36.pp

---

**Program** Example36;

*{ Program to demonstrate the AssignPipe function . }*

**Uses** linux;

**Var** pipi,pipo : Text;  
s : **String**;

**begin**

```
Writeln ( 'Assigning Pipes.' );
If Not assignpipe(pipi,pipo) then
  Writeln('Error assigning pipes !',LinuxError);
Writeln ( 'Writing to pipe, and flushing.' );
Writeln ( pipo,'This is a textstring' );close(pipo);
Writeln ( 'Reading from pipe.' );
While not eof(pipi) do
  begin
    Readln ( pipi,s);
    Writeln ( 'Read from pipe : ',s);
  end;
close ( pipi );
writeln ( 'Closed pipes.' );
writeln
```

**end.**

---

## AssignStream

**Declaration:** Function AssignStream(Var StreamIn,Streamout:text; Const Prog:String)  
: longint; Function AssignStream(var StreamIn, StreamOut, StreamErr:  
Text; const prog: String): LongInt;

**Description:** AssignStream creates a 2 or 3 pipes, i.e. two (or three) file objects, one for input, one for output,(and one for standard error) the other ends of these pipes are connected to standard input and output (and standard error) of Prog. Prog is the name of a program (including path) with options, which will be executed.

What is written to `StreamOut`, will go to the standard input of `Prog`. Whatever is written by `Prog` to its standard output can be read from `StreamIn`. Whatever is written by `Prog` to its standard error read from `StreamErr`, if present.

Reading and writing happens through the usual `Readln(StreamIn,...)` and `Writeln(StreamOut,...)` procedures.

*Remark:* You should *not* use `Reset` or `Rewrite` on a file opened with `POpen`. This will close the file before re-opening it again, thereby closing the connection with the program.

The function returns the process ID of the spawned process, or -1 in case of error.

Errors: In case of error (return value -1) `LinuxError` is used to report errors:

`sys_emfile` Too many file descriptors for this process.

`sys_enfile` The system file table is full.

Other errors include the ones by the `fork` and `exec` programs

See also: `AssignPipe` (169), `POpen` (215), `pipe` (2)

**Listing:** `linuxex/ex38.pp`

---

**Program** Example38;

*{ Program to demonstrate the AssignStream function . }*

**Uses** linux ;

**Var** Si,So : Text;  
S : **String**;  
i : longint;

**begin**

```
  if not ( paramstr(1)='-son' ) then
    begin
      Writeln ( ' Calling son' );
      Assignstream ( Si,So, './ ex38 -son' );
      if linuxerror<>0 then
        begin
          writeln ( ' AssignStream failed !' );
          halt (1);
        end;
      Writeln ( ' Speaking to son' );
      For i:=1 to 10 do
        begin
          writeln ( so,' Hello son !' );
          if ioreult<>0 then writeln ( 'Can''t speak to son...' );
        end;
      For i:=1 to 3 do writeln ( so,' Hello chap !' );
      close ( so);
      while not eof(si) do
        begin
          readln ( si,s);
          writeln ( ' Father: Son said : ',S);
        end;
      Writeln ( ' Stopped conversation' );
      Close ( Si);
      Writeln ( ' Put down phone' );
    end
```

```
Else
  begin
    Writeln ( ' This is the son ' );
    While not eof ( input ) do
      begin
        readln ( s );
        if pos ( ' Hello son ! ' ,S)<>0 then
          Writeln ( ' Hello Dad ! ' )
        else
          writeln ( ' Who are you ? ' );
        end;
      close ( output );
    end
  end.
```

---

### BaseName

Declaration: `Function BaseName (Const Path;Const Suf : Pathstr) : Pathstr;`

Description: Returns the filename part of Path, stripping off Suf if it exists. The filename part is the whole name if Path contains no slash, or the part of Path after the last slash. The last character of the result is not a slash, unless the directory is the root directory.

Errors: None.

See also: DirName (177), FExpand (189), Basename (1)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex48.pp

---

**Program** Example48;

*{ Program to demonstrate the BaseName function . }*

**Uses** linux ;

**Var** S : **String**;

**begin**

S:=FExpand(**Paramstr**(0));

**Writeln** ( ' This program is called : ' ,Basename(S, '' ));

**end.**

---

### CFMakeRaw

Declaration: `Procedure CFMakeRaw (var Tios:TermIOS);`

Description: CFMakeRaw Sets the flags in the Termios structure Tios to a state so that the terminal will function in Raw Mode.

Errors: None.

See also: CFSetOSpeed (173), CFSetISpeed (173), termios (2)

For an example, see TCGetAttr (228).

### CFSetISpeed

Declaration: Procedure CFSetISpeed (var Tios:TermIOS;Speed:Longint);

Description: CFSetISpeed Sets the input baudrate in the TermIOS structure Tios to Speed.

Errors: None.

See also: CFSetOSpeed (173), CFMakeRaw (172), termios (2)

### CFSetOSpeed

Declaration: Procedure CFSetOSpeed (var Tios:TermIOS;Speed:Longint);

Description: CFSetOSpeed Sets the output baudrate in the Termios structure Tios to Speed.

Errors: None.

See also: CFSetISpeed (173), CFMakeRaw (172), termios (2)

### Chown

Declaration: Function Chown (Path : Pathstr;NewUid,NewGid : Longint) : Boolean;

Description: Chown sets the User ID and Group ID of the file in Path to NewUid, NewGid. The function returns True if the call was succesfull, False if the call failed.

Errors: Errors are returned in LinuxError.

**sys\_eperm**The effective UID doesn't match the ownership of the file, and is not zero. Owner or group were not specified correctly.

**sys\_eaccess**One of the directories in Path has no search (=execute) permission.

**sys\_enoent**A directory entry in Path does not exist or is a symbolic link pointing to a non-existent directory.

**sys\_enotdir**A directory entry in OldPath or NewPath is nor a directory.

**sys\_enomem**Insufficient kernel memory.

**sys\_erofs**The file is on a read-only filesystem.

**sys\_eloop**Path has a reference to a circular symbolic link, i.e. a symbolic link, whose expansion points to itself.

See also: Chmod (174), Access (168), Chown (()) 2)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex24.pp

---

**Program** Example24;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Chown function . }*

**Uses** linux;

**Var** UID,GID : Longint;  
F : Text;

**begin**

**WriteLn** ( 'This will only work if you are root.' );

```
Write ( ' Enter a UID : ' ); readln (UID);
Write ( ' Enter a GID : ' ); readln (GID);
Assign ( f, ' test.txt ' );
Rewrite ( f );
Writeln ( f, ' The owner of this file should become : ' );
Writeln ( f, ' UID : ' ,UID);
Writeln ( f, ' GID : ' ,GID);
Close ( F );
if not Chown ( ' test.txt ',UID,GID) then
  if LinuxError=Sys_EPERM then
    Writeln ( ' You are not root ! ' )
  else
    Writeln ( ' Chmod failed with exit code : ' ,LinuxError)
  else
    Writeln ( ' Changed owner successfully ! ' );
end.
```

---

## Chmod

Declaration: `Function Chmod (Path : Pathstr;NewMode : Longint) : Boolean;`

Description: Chmod Sets the Mode bits of the file in Path to NewMode. Newmode can be specified by 'or'-ing the following:

- S\_ISUID**Set user ID on execution.
- S\_ISGID**Set Group ID on execution.
- S\_ISVTX**Set sticky bit.
- S\_IRUSR**Read by owner.
- S\_IWUSR**Write by owner.
- S\_IXUSR**Execute by owner.
- S\_IRGRP**Read by group.
- S\_IWGRP**Write by group.
- S\_IXGRP**Execute by group.
- S\_IROTH**Read by others.
- S\_IWOTH**Write by others.
- S\_IXOTH**Execute by others.
- S\_IRWXO**Read, write, execute by others.
- S\_IRWXG**Read, write, execute by groups.
- S\_IRWXU**Read, write, execute by user.

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

- sys\_eperm**The effective UID doesn't match the ownership of the file, and is not zero. Owner or group were not specified correctly.
- sys\_eaccess**One of the directories in Path has no search (=execute) permission.
- sys\_enoent**A directory entry in Path does not exist or is a symbolic link pointing to a non-existent directory.
- sys\_enotdir**A directory entry in OldPath or NewPath is nor a directory.
- sys\_enomem**Insufficient kernel memory.
- sys\_erofs**The file is on a read-only filesystem.

**sys\_loopPath** has a reference to a circular symbolic link, i.e. a symbolic link, whose expansion points to itself.

See also: Chown (173), Access (168), Chmod (12), Octal (213)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex23.pp

---

**Program** Example23;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Chmod function . }*

**Uses** linux ;

**Var** F : Text;

**begin**

```
  { Create a file }
  Assign ( f, 'testex21' );
  Rewrite ( F );
  Writeln ( f, '#!/ bin / sh' );
  Writeln ( f, 'echo Some text for this file' );
  Close ( F );
  { Octal() makes the correct number from a
    number that LOOKS octal }
  Chmod ( 'testex21', octal (777));
  { File is now executable }
  execl ( './ testex21' );
```

**end.**

---

## Clone

**Declaration:** TCloneFunc=function(args:pointer):longint;cdecl; Clone(func:TCloneFunc;sp:pointer;flags

**Description:** Clone creates a child process which is a copy of the parent process, just like Fork (194) does. In difference with Fork, however, the child process shares some parts of it's execution context with its parent, so it is suitable for the implementation of threads: many instances of a program that share the same memory.

When the child process is created, it starts executing the function Func, and passes it Args. The return value of Func is either the explicit return value of the function, or the exit code of the child process.

The sp pointer points to the memory reserved as stack space for the child process. This address should be the top of the memory block to be used as stack.

The Flags determine the behaviour of the Clone call. The low byte of the Flags contains the number of the signal that will be sent to the parent when the child dies. This may be bitwise OR'ed with the following constants:

**CLONE\_VM**Parent and child share the same memory space, including memory (un)mapped with subsequent mmap calls.

**CLONE\_FS**Parent and child have the same view of the filesystem; the chroot, chdir and umask calls affect both processes.

**CLONE\_FILES**the file descriptor table of parent and child is shared.

**CLONE\_SIGHAND**the parent and child share the same table of signal handlers. The signal masks are different, though.



**CLONE\_PIDP**arent and child have the same process ID.

Clone returns the process ID in the parent process, and -1 if an error occurred.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned to the parent, and no child is created.

**sys\_eagain**Too many processes are running.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory to create child process.

See also: Fork (194), clone (2)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex14.pp

---

**Program** Example14;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Fork and WaitPidfunction . }*

**Uses** linux ;

**Var** PID, ExitStatus : Longint ;

**begin**

**WriteLn** ( 'Spawning a child' );

  PID:= Fork;

**If** PID=0 **then**

**begin**

**WriteLn** ( 'Hello From the Child !!' );

**WriteLn** ( 'Exiting with exit status 1 !' );

**Halt** (1);

**end**

**Else**

**begin**

**WriteLn** ( 'Spawned child with PID : ',PID);

      WaitPid (PID, @ExitStatus,0);

**WriteLn** ( 'Child exited with status : ',ExitStatus **shr** 8);

**end**;

**end.**

---

## CloseDir

Declaration: Function CloseDir (p:pdir) : integer;

Description: CloseDir closes the directory pointed to by p. It returns zero if the directory was closed successfully, -1 otherwise.

Errors: Errors are returned in LinuxError.

See also: OpenDir (213), ReadDir (216), SeekDir (218), TellDir (230), closedir (3)

For an example, see OpenDir (213).

## CreateShellArgV

Declaration: function CreateShellArgV(const prog:string):ppchar; function CreateShellArgV(const prog:Ansistring):ppchar;

**Description:** CreateShellArgV creates an array of 3 PChar pointers that can be used as arguments to ExecVE the first elements in the array will contain /bin/sh, the second will contain -c, and the third will contain prog.

The function returns a pointer to this array, of type PPChar.

**Errors:** None.

See also: Shell (220)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex61.pp

---

```
Program ex61;

{ Example program to demonstrate the CreateShellArgV function }

uses linux;

Var
  S: String;
  PP : PPchar;
  I : longint;

begin
  S:= 'script -a -b -c -d -e fghijk';
  PP:= CreateShellArgV (S);
  I:=0;
  If PP<>Nil then
    While PP[I]<>Nil do
      begin
        Writeln ( 'Got : "' ,PP[I], '"' );
        Inc(i);
      end;
    end;
end.
```

---

## DirName

**Declaration:** Function DirName (Const Path : Pathstr) : Pathstr;

**Description:** Returns the directory part of Path. The directory is the part of Path before the last slash, or empty if there is no slash. The last character of the result is not a slash, unless the directory is the root directory.

**Errors:** None.

See also: BaseName (172), FExpand (189), Dirname (1)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex47.pp

---

```
Program Example47;

{ Program to demonstrate the DirName function. }

Uses linux;

Var S : String;
```

```
begin
  S:=FExpand(Paramstr(0));
  Writeln ('This program is in directory : ',Dirname(S));
end.
```

---

## Dup

**Declaration:** Function Dup(oldfile:longint;var newfile:longint):Boolean; Function Dup(var oldfile,newfile:text):Boolean; Function Dup(var oldfile,newfile:file):Boolean;

**Description:** Makes NewFile an exact copy of OldFile, after having flushed the buffer of OldFile in case it is a Text file or untyped file. Due to the buffering mechanism of Pascal, this has not the same functionality as the dup (2) call in C. The internal Pascal buffers are not the same after this call, but when the buffers are flushed (e.g. after output), the output is sent to the same file. Doing an lseek will, however, work as in C, i.e. doing a lseek will change the fileposition in both files.

The function returns False in case of an error, True if successful.

**Errors:** In case of errors, Linuxerror is used to report errors.

**sys\_ebadf**OldFile hasn't been assigned.

**sys\_emfile**Maximum number of open files for the process is reached.

See also: Dup2 (178), Dup (2)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex31.pp

---

```
program Example31;

{ Program to demonstrate the Dup function. }

uses linux;

var f : text;

begin
  if not dup ( output,f) then
    Writeln ('Dup Failed !');
  writeln ('This is written to stdout. ');
  writeln (f,'This is written to the dup file , and flushed'); flush(f);
  writeln
end.
```

---

## Dup2

**Declaration:** Function Dup2(oldfile,newfile:longint):Boolean; Function Dup2(var oldfile,newfile:text) Function Dup2(var oldfile,newfile:file):Boolean;

**Description:** Makes NewFile an exact copy of OldFile, after having flushed the buffer of OldFile in the case of text or untyped files.

NewFile can be an assigned file. If newfile was open, it is closed first. Due to the buffering mechanism of Pascal, this has not the same functionality as the dup2 (2) call in C. The internal Pascal buffers are not the same after this call, but when the buffers are flushed (e.g. after output), the output is sent to the same file. Doing an lseek will, however, work as in C, i.e. doing a lseek will change the fileposition in both files.

The function returns True if succesful, false otherwise.

Errors: In case of error, `Linuxerror` is used to report errors.

`sys_ebadf`OldFile hasn't been assigned.

`sys_emfile`Maximum number of open files for the process is reached.

See also: Dup (178), Dup2 (2)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex32.pp

---

```
program Example31;

{ Program to demonstrate the Dup function . }

uses linux ;

var f : text;
    i : longint;

begin
  Assign ( f, 'text.txt' );
  Rewrite ( F);
  For i:=1 to 10 do writeln ( F, 'Line : ', i );
  if not dup2 ( output, f ) then
    Writeln ( 'Dup2 Failed !' );
  writeln ( 'This is written to stdout.' );
  writeln ( f, 'This is written to the dup file , and flushed' );
  flush ( f );
  writeln ;
  { Remove file . Comment this if you want to check flushing . }
  Unlink ( 'text.txt' );
end.
```

---

## EpochToLocal

Declaration: `Procedure EpochToLocal (Epoch : Longint; var Year, Month, Day, Hour, Minute, Second : Word);`

Description: Converts the epoch time (=Number of seconds since 00:00:00 , January 1, 1970, corrected for your time zone ) to local date and time.

This function takes into account the timzeone settings of your system.

Errors: None

See also: GetEpochTime (198), LocalToEpoch (210), GetTime (201), GetDate (195)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex3.pp

---

```
Program Example3;

{ Program to demonstrate the EpochToLocal function . }

Uses linux ;

Var Year, month, day, hour, minute, seconds : Word;

begin
```

```
EpochToLocal ( GetEpochTime, Year, month, day, hour, minute, seconds );  
Writeln ( ' Current date : ', Day:2, '/', Month:2, '/', Year:4 );  
Writeln ( ' Current time : ', Hour:2, ':', minute:2, ':', seconds:2 );  
end.
```

---

## Exec1

Declaration: Procedure Exec1 (Path : pathstr);

Description: Replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in path. Path is split into a command and it's options. The executable in path is NOT searched in the path. The current environment is passed to the program. On success, exec1 does not return.

Errors: Errors are reported in LinuxError:

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.  
**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted *noexec*.  
**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.  
**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.  
**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.  
**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel, or to split command line.  
**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.  
**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: Execve (183), Execv (182), Execvp (184), Execle (180), Execlp (181), Fork (194), execvp (3)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex10.pp

---

```
Program Example10;  
  
{ Program to demonstrate the Exec1 function. }  
  
Uses linux, strings;  
  
begin  
  { Execute 'ls -l', with current environment. }  
  { 'ls' is NOT looked for in PATH environment variable. }  
  Exec1 ( '/ bin / ls -l ' );  
end.
```

---

## Execle

Declaration: Procedure Execle (Path : pathstr, Ep : ppchar);

Description: Replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in path. Path is split into a command and it's options. The executable in path is searched in the path, if it isn't an absolute filename. The environment in ep is passed to the program. On success, execle does not return.

Errors: Errors are reported in LinuxError:

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted *noexec*.

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel, or to split command line.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: Execve (183), Execv (182), Execvp (184), Execl (180), Execlp (181), Fork (194), execvp (3)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex11.pp

---

**Program** Example11;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Execl function . }*

**Uses** linux , strings ;

**begin**

*{ Execute 'ls -l', with current environment . }*

*{ 'ls' is NOT looked for in PATH environment variable . }*

*{ envp is defined in the system unit . }*

Execl ( '/ bin / ls -l ', envp );

**end.**

---

## Execlp

**Declaration:** Procedure Execlp (Path : pathstr);

**Description:** Replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in path. Path is split into a command and it's options. The executable in path is searched in the path, if it isn't an absolute filename. The current environment is passed to the program. On success, `execlp` does not return.

**Errors:** Errors are reported in `LinuxError`:

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted *noexec*.

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel, or to split command line.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: Execve (183), Execv (182), Execvp (184), Execl (180), Execl (180), Fork (194), execvp (3)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex12.pp

---

```
Program Example12;  
  
  { Program to demonstrate the Execlp function . }  
  
Uses linux , strings ;  
  
begin  
  { Execute 'ls -l' , with current environment . }  
  { 'ls' is looked for in PATH environment variable . }  
  { envp is defined in the system unit . }  
  Execlp ( 'ls -l' , envp );  
end.
```

---

## Execv

Declaration: Procedure Execv (Path : pathstr; args : ppchar);

Description: Replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in path. It gives the program the options in args. This is a pointer to an array of pointers to null-terminated strings. The last pointer in this array should be nil. The current environment is passed to the program. On success, execv does not return.

Errors: Errors are reported in LinuxError:

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted *noexec*.

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: Execve (183), Execvp (184), Execle (180), Execl (180), Execlp (181), Fork (194), execv (3)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex8.pp

---

```
Program Example8;  
  
  { Program to demonstrate the Execv function . }  
  
Uses linux , strings ;  
  
Const Arg0 : PChar = '/ bin / ls ' ;  
       Arg1 : Pchar = '-l ' ;  
  
Var PP : PPchar;  
  
begin  
  GetMem ( PP,3* SizeOf ( Pchar ));  
  PP[0]:= Arg0;
```

```

PP[1]:= Arg1;
PP[3]:= Nil;
{ Execute '/ bin / ls -l ', with current environment }
Execv ( '/ bin / ls ', pp);
end.

```

---

## Execve

**Declaration:** Procedure Execve(Path:pchar;args:ppchar;ep:ppchar); Procedure Execve (Path : pathstr; args,ep : ppchar);

**Description:** Replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in path. It gives the program the options in args, and the environment in ep. They are pointers to an array of pointers to null-terminated strings. The last pointer in this array should be nil. On success, execve does not return.

**Errors:** Errors are reported in LinuxError:

**eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_ eperm**The file system is mounted *noexec*.

**sys\_ e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_ enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_ enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_ enomem**Not enough memory for kernel.

**sys\_ notdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_ eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: Execve (183), Execv (182), Execvp (184) Execle (180), Execl (180), Execlp (181), Fork (194), execve (2)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex7.pp

---

```

Program Example7;

{ Program to demonstrate the Execve function . }

Uses linux , strings ;

Const Arg0 : PChar = '/ bin / ls ' ;
        Arg1 : Pchar = '-l ' ;

Var PP : PPchar ;

begin
  GetMem ( PP,3* SizeOf ( Pchar ));
  PP[0]:= Arg0;
  PP[1]:= Arg1;
  PP[3]:= Nil;
  { Execute '/ bin / ls -l ', with current environment }
  { Env is defined in system.inc }
  ExecVe ( '/ bin / ls ', pp, envp);
end.

```

---



## Execvp

Declaration: Procedure Execvp (Path : pathstr; args : ppchar);

Description: Replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in path. The executable in path is searched in the path, if it isn't an absolute filename. It gives the program the options in args. This is a pointer to an array of pointers to null-terminated strings. The last pointer in this array should be nil. The current environment is passed to the program. On success, execvp does not return.

Errors: Errors are reported in LinuxError:

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted *noexec*.

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: Execve (183), Execv (182), Execle (180), Execl (180), Execlp (181), Fork (194), execvp (3)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex9.pp

---

```
Program Example9;

{ Program to demonstrate the Execvp function . }

Uses linux , strings ;

Const Arg0 : PChar = 'ls' ;
        Arg1 : Pchar = '-l' ;

Var PP : PPchar;

begin
  GetMem ( PP,3* SizeOf ( Pchar ));
  PP[0]:= Arg0;
  PP[1]:= Arg1;
  PP[3]:= Nil ;
  { Execute 'ls -l', with current environment . }
  { 'ls' is looked for in PATH environment variable . }
  { Env is defined in the system unit . }
  Execvp ( 'ls' , pp, envp );
end.
```

---

## FD\_ZERO

Declaration: Procedure FD\_ZERO (var fds:fdSet);

Description: FD\_ZERO clears all the filedescriptors in the file descriptor set fds.

Errors: None.

See also: [Select](#) (219), [SelectText](#) (220), [GetFS](#) (198), [FD\\_Clr](#) (185), [FD\\_Set](#) (185), [FD\\_IsSet](#) (185)

For an example, see [Select](#) (219).

### **FD\_Clr**

Declaration: `Procedure FD_Clr (fd:longint;var fds:fdSet);`

Description: `FD_Clr` clears file descriptor `fd` in filedescriptor set `fds`.

Errors: None.

See also: [Select](#) (219), [SelectText](#) (220), [GetFS](#) (198), [FD\\_ZERO](#) (184), [FD\\_Set](#) (185), [FD\\_IsSet](#) (185)

For an example, see [Select](#) (219).

### **FD\_IsSet**

Declaration: `Function FD_IsSet (fd:longint;var fds:fdSet) : boolean;`

Description: `FD_Set` Checks whether file descriptor `fd` in filedescriptor set `fds` is set.

Errors: None.

See also: [Select](#) (219), [SelectText](#) (220), [GetFS](#) (198), [FD\\_ZERO](#) (184), [FD\\_Clr](#) (185), [FD\\_Set](#) (185)

For an example, see [Select](#) (219).

### **FD\_Set**

Declaration: `Procedure FD_Set (fd:longint;var fds:fdSet);`

Description: `FD_Set` sets file descriptor `fd` in filedescriptor set `fds`.

Errors: None.

See also: [Select](#) (219), [SelectText](#) (220), [GetFS](#) (198), [FD\\_ZERO](#) (184), [FD\\_Clr](#) (185), [FD\\_IsSet](#) (185)

For an example, see [Select](#) (219).

### **fdClose**

Declaration: `Function fdClose (fd:longint) : boolean;`

Description: `fdClose` closes a file with file descriptor `fd`. The function returns `True` if the file was closed successfully, `False` otherwise.

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`

See also: [fdOpen](#) (186), [fdRead](#) (187), [fdWrite](#) (189), [fdTruncate](#) (188), [fdFlush](#) (186), [seefdSeek](#)

For an example, see [fdOpen](#) (186).

## fdFlush

Declaration: `Function fdFlush (fd:Longint) : boolean;`

Description: `fdflush` flushes the Linux kernel file buffer, so the file is actually written to disk. This is NOT the same as the internal buffer, maintained by Free Pascal. The function returns `True` if the call was successful, `false` if an error occurred.

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

See also: `fdOpen` (186), `fdClose` (185), `fdRead` (187), `fdWrite` (189), `fdTruncate` (188), `fdSeek` (188)

For an example, see `fdRead` (187).

## fdOpen

Declaration: `Function fdOpen(PathName:String;flags:longint):longint; Function fdOpen(PathName:Pchar ;flags:longint):longint; Function fdOpen(PathName:String;flags,mode:longint):longint; Function fdOpen(PathName:Pchar ;flags,mode:longint):longint;`

Description: `fdOpen` opens a file in `PathName` with flags `flags` One of the following:

**Open\_RdOnlyFile** is opened Read-only.

**Open\_WrOnlyFile** is opened Write-only.

**Open\_RdWrFile** is opened Read-Write.

The flags may beOR-ed with one of the following constants:

**Open\_AccmodeFile** is opened

**Open\_CreatFile** is created if it doesn't exist.

**Open\_ExclIf** the file is opened with `Open_Creat` and it already exists, the call will fail.

**Open\_NoCtty** If the file is a terminal device, it will NOT become the process' controlling terminal.

**Open\_TruncIf** the file exists, it will be truncated.

**Open\_Append** the file is opened in append mode. *Before each write*, the file pointer is positioned at the end of the file.

**Open\_NonBlock** The file is opened in non-blocking mode. No operation on the file descriptor will cause the calling process to wait till.

**Open\_NDelay** Idem as `Open_NonBlock`

**Open\_Sync** The file is opened for synchronous IO. Any write operation on the file will not return untill the data is physically written to disk.

**Open\_NoFollow** if the file is a symbolic link, the open fails. (LINUX 2.1.126 and higher only)

**Open\_Directory** if the file is not a directory, the open fails. (LINUX 2.1.126 and higher only)

`PathName` can be of type `PChar` or `String`. The optional mode argument specifies the permissions to set when opening the file. This is modified by the `umask` setting. The real permissions are `Mode` and not `umask`. The return value of the function is the filedescriptor, or a negative value if there was an error.

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`

See also: `fdClose` (185), `fdRead` (187), `fdWrite` (189), `fdTruncate` (188), `fdFlush` (186), `fdSeek` (188)

**Listing:** `linuxex/ex19.pp`

---

```
Program Example19;

{ Program to demonstrate the fdOpen, fdwrite and fdClose functions . }

Uses linux ;

Const Line : String [80] = 'This is easy writing !' ;

Var FD : Longint;

begin
  FD:=fdOpen ( ' Test.dat' , Open_WrOnly or Open_Creat);
  if FD>0 then
    begin
      if length(Line)<>fdwrite ( FD,Line [1], Length(Line)) then
        WriteLn ( 'Error when writing to file !' );
      fdClose(FD);
    end;
end.
```

---

### **fdRead**

**Declaration:** Function fdRead (fd:longint;var buf;size:longint) : longint;

**Description:** fdRead reads at most size bytes from the file descriptor fd, and stores them in buf. The function returns the number of bytes actually read, or -1 if an error occurred. No checking on the length of buf is done.

**Errors:** Errors are returned in LinuxError.

See also: fdOpen (186), fdClose (185), fdWrite (189),fdTruncate (188), fdFlush (186), fdSeek (188)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex20.pp

---

```
Program Example20;

{ Program to demonstrate the fdRead and fdTruncate functions . }

Uses linux ;

Const Data : string [10] = '12345687890';

Var FD : Longint;
    I : longint;

begin
  FD:=fdOpen(' test.dat' , open_wronly or open_creat, octal (666));
  if fd>0 then
    begin
      { Fill file with data }
      for I:=1 to 10 do
        if fdWrite (FD,Data[I],10)<>10 then
          begin
            writeln ( 'Error when writing !' );
            halt (1);
          end;
    end;
end.
```

```
fdClose (FD);
FD:=fdOpen(' test . dat', open_rdonly);
{ Read data again }
If FD>0 then
  begin
    For l:=1 to 5 do
      if fdRead (FD,Data[1],10)<>10 then
        begin
          Writeln (' Error when Reading !' );
          Halt (2);
        end;
    fdClose(FD);
    { Truncating file at 60 bytes }
    { For truncating, file must be open or write }
    FD:=fdOpen(' test . dat', open_wronly, octal (666));
    if FD>0 then
      begin
        if not fdTruncate (FD,60) then
          Writeln (' Error when truncating !' );
        fdClose (FD);
      end;
    end;
  end;
end.
```

---

### fdSeek

Declaration: Function fdSeek (fd,Pos,SeekType:longint) : longint;

Description: fdSeek sets the current fileposition of file fd to Pos, starting from SeekType, which can be one of the following:

**Seek\_Set** Pos is the absolute position in the file.

**Seek\_Cur** Pos is relative to the current position.

**Seek\_end** Pos is relative to the end of the file.

The function returns the new fileposition, or -1 if an error occurred.

Errors: Errors are returned in LinuxError.

See also: fdOpen (186), fdWrite (189), fdClose (185), fdRead (187),fdTruncate (188), fdFlush (186)

For an example, see fdOpen (186).

### fdTruncate

Declaration: Function fdTruncate (fd,size:longint) : boolean;

Description: fdTruncate sets the length of a file in fd on size bytes, where size must be less than or equal to the current length of the file in fd. The function returns True if the call was successful, false if an error occurred.

Errors: Errors are returned in LinuxError.

See also: fdOpen (186), fdClose (185), fdRead (187),fdWrite (189),fdFlush (186), fdSeek (188)

**fdWrite**

Declaration: `Function fdWrite (fd:longint;var buf;size:longint) : longint;`

Description: `fdWrite` writes at most `size` bytes from `buf` to file descriptor `fd`. The function returns the number of bytes actually written, or -1 if an error occurred.

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

See also: `fdOpen` (186), `fdClose` (185), `fdRead` (187), `fdTruncate` (188), `fdSeek` (188), `fdFlush` (186)

**FExpand**

Declaration: `Function FExpand (Const Path: Pathstr) : pathstr;`

Description: Expands `Path` to a full path, starting from root, eliminating directory references such as `.` and `..` from the result.

Errors: None

See also: `BaseName` (172), `DirName` (177)

**Listing:** `linuxex/ex45.pp`

---

**Program** `Example45;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the FExpand function . }*

**Uses** `linux;`

**begin**

`Writeln ( 'This program is in : ' ,FExpand(Paramstr(0)));`

**end.**

---

**FLock**

Declaration: `Function Flock (fd,mode : longint) : boolean;` `Function Flock (var T : text;mode : longint) : boolean;` `Function Flock (var F : File;mode : longint) : boolean;`

Description: `FLock` implements file locking. it sets or removes a lock on the file `F`. `F` can be of type `Text` or `File`, or it can be a LINUX filedescriptor (a `longint`) `Mode` can be one of the following constants :

**LOCK\_SH** sets a shared lock.

**LOCK\_EX** sets an exclusive lock.

**LOCK\_UN** unlocks the file.

**LOCK\_NB** This can be OR-ed together with the other. If this is done the application doesn't block when locking.

The function returns `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

Errors: If an error occurs, it is reported in `LinuxError`.

See also: `Fcntl` (193), `flock` (2)

## FNMatch

Declaration: `Function FNMatch(const Pattern,Name:string):Boolean;`

Description: `FNMatch` returns `True` if the filename in `Name` matches the wildcard pattern in `Pattern`, `False` otherwise.

`Pattern` can contain the wildcards `*` (match zero or more arbitrary characters) or `?` (match a single character).

Errors: None.

See also: `FSearch` (190), `FExpand` (189)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex69.pp

---

**Program** Example69;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FNMatch function. }*

**Uses** linux;

**Procedure** TestMatch ( Pattern , Name : String );

**begin**

**Write** ( ' ' , Name , ' ' );

**If** FNMatch ( Pattern , Name ) **then**

**Write** ( ' matches' )

**else**

**Write** ( ' does not match' );

**WriteLn** ( ' ' , Pattern , ' ' );

**end;**

**begin**

    TestMatch ( '\*' , ' FileName' );

    TestMatch ( '. \* ' , ' FileName' );

    TestMatch ( '\* a \* ' , ' FileName' );

    TestMatch ( '? ile \* ' , ' FileName' );

    TestMatch ( '? ' , ' FileName' );

    TestMatch ( '. ? ' , ' FileName' );

    TestMatch ( '? a \* ' , ' FileName' );

    TestMatch ( '??\*me?' , ' FileName' );

**end.**

---

## FSearch

Declaration: `Function FSearch (Path : pathstr;DirList : string) : Pathstr;`

Description: Searches in `DirList`, a colon separated list of directories, for a file named `Path`. It then returns a path to the found file.

Errors: An empty string if no such file was found.

See also: `BaseName` (172), `DirName` (177), `FExpand` (189), `FNMatch` (190)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex46.pp

---

```
Program Example46;

{ Program to demonstrate the FSearch function . }

Uses linux , strings ;

begin
  WriteLn ( 'Is is in : ' , FSearch ( 'Is' , strpas ( Getenv ( 'PATH' ) ) ) );
end.
```

---

### FSplit

Declaration: Procedure FSplit(const Path:PathStr;  
Var Dir:DirStr;Var Name:NameStr;Var Ext:ExtStr);

Description: FSplit splits a full file name into 3 parts : A Path, a Name and an extension (in ext). The extension is taken to be all letters after the last dot (.).

Errors: None.

See also: FSearch (190)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex67.pp

---

```
Program Example67;

uses Linux;

{ Program to demonstrate the FSplit function . }

var
  Path , Name , Ext : string ;

begin
  FSplit ( ParamStr ( 1 ) , Path , Name , Ext );
  WriteLn ( ' Split ' , ParamStr ( 1 ) , ' in : ' );
  WriteLn ( ' Path      : ' , Path );
  WriteLn ( ' Name      : ' , Name );
  WriteLn ( ' Extension : ' , Ext );
end.
```

---

### FSStat

Declaration: Function FSStat (Path : Pathstr; Var Info : statfs) : Boolean; Function  
FSStat (Fd:longint;Var Info:stat) : Boolean;

Description: Return in Info information about the filesystem on which the file Path resides, or on which the file with file descriptor fd resides. Info is of type statfs. The function returns True if the call was succesfull, False if the call failed.

Errors: LinuxError is used to report errors.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of Path is not a directory.

**sys\_einval**Invalid character in Path.



**sys\_enoent**Path does not exist.

**sys\_eaccess**Search permission is denied for component in Path.

**sys\_eloop**A circular symbolic link was encountered in Path.

**sys\_eio**An error occurred while reading from the filesystem.

See also: FStat (192), LStat (207), statfs (2)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex30.pp

---

```
program Example30;

{ Program to demonstrate the FStat function. }

uses linux;

var s : string;
    info : statfs;

begin
  writeln ( 'Info about current partition : ' );
  s := '.';
  while s <> 'q' do
    begin
      if not fsstat ( s, info ) then
        begin
          writeln ( 'Fstat failed . Errno : ', linuxerror );
          halt ( 1 );
        end;
      writeln;
      writeln ( 'Result of fsstat on file ', s, ' . ' );
      writeln ( 'fstype   : ', info.fstype );
      writeln ( 'bsize    : ', info.bsize );
      writeln ( 'bfree     : ', info.bfree );
      writeln ( 'bavail   : ', info.bavail );
      writeln ( 'files     : ', info.files );
      writeln ( 'ffree     : ', info.ffree );
      writeln ( 'fsid      : ', info.fsid );
      writeln ( 'Namelen   : ', info.namelen );
      write ( 'Type name of file to do fsstat . ( q quits ) : ' );
      readln ( s );
    end;
  end.
```

---

## FStat

**Declaration:** Function FStat(Path:Pathstr;Var Info:stat):Boolean; Function FStat(Fd:longint;Var Info:stat):Boolean; Function FStat(var F:Text;Var Info:stat):Boolean;  
Function FStat(var F:File;Var Info:stat):Boolean;

**Description:** FStat gets information about the file specified in one of the following:

**Path**a file on the filesystem.

**Fd**a valid file descriptor.

**F**an opened text file or untyped file.

and stores it in `Info`, which is of type `stat`. The function returns `True` if the call was successful, `False` if the call failed.

Errors: `LinuxError` is used to report errors.

`sys_enoent`Path does not exist.

See also: `FStat` (191), `LStat` (207), `stat` (2)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex28.pp

---

```
program example28;

{ Program to demonstrate the FStat function . }

uses linux;

var f : text;
    i : byte;
    info : stat;

begin
  { Make a file }
  assign ( f, ' test.fil ' );
  rewrite ( f );
  for i:=1 to 10 do writeln ( f, ' Testline # ', i );
  close ( f );
  { Do the call on made file . }
  if not fstat ( ' test.fil ', info ) then
    begin
      writeln ( ' Fstat failed . Errno : ', linuxerror );
      halt ( 1 );
    end;
  writeln;
  writeln ( ' Result of fstat on file ' ' test.fil ' ' . ' );
  writeln ( ' Inode   : ', info.ino );
  writeln ( ' Mode    : ', info.mode );
  writeln ( ' nlink   : ', info.nlink );
  writeln ( ' uid     : ', info.uid );
  writeln ( ' gid     : ', info.gid );
  writeln ( ' rdev    : ', info.rdev );
  writeln ( ' Size    : ', info.size );
  writeln ( ' Blksize  : ', info.blksize );
  writeln ( ' Blocks   : ', info.blocks );
  writeln ( ' atime   : ', info.atime );
  writeln ( ' mtime   : ', info.mtime );
  writeln ( ' ctime   : ', info.ctime );
  { Remove file }
  erase ( f );
end.
```

---

## Fcntl

Declaration: `Function Fcntl(Fd:longint;Cmd:Integer):integer; Function Fcntl(var Fd:Text;Cmd:Integer)`

Description: Read a file's attributes. `Fd` is an assigned file, or a valid file descriptor. `Cmd` specifies what to do, and is one of the following:

**F\_GetFd**Read the `close_on_exec` flag. If the low-order bit is 0, then the file will remain open across `execve` calls.

**F\_GetFl**Read the descriptor's flags.

**F\_GetOwn**Get the Process ID of the owner of a socket.

Errors: `LinuxError` is used to report errors.

**sys\_ebadf**`Fd` has a bad file descriptor.

See also: `Fcntl` (194), `Fcntl` (2)

## **Fcntl**

Declaration: `Procedure Fcntl (Fd : text, Cmd : Integer; Arg : longint); Procedure Fcntl (Fd:longint;Cmd:longint;Arg:Longint);`

Description: Read or Set a file's attributes. `Fd` is an assigned file or a valid file descriptor. `Cmd` specifies what to do, and is one of the following:

**F\_SetFd**Set the `close_on_exec` flag of `Fd`. (only the least significant bit is used).

**F\_GetLk**Return the `flock` record that prevents this process from obtaining the lock, or set the `l_type` field of the lock of there is no obstruction. `Arg` is a pointer to a `flock` record.

**F\_SetLk**Set the lock or clear it (depending on `l_type` in the `flock` structure). if the lock is held by another process, an error occurs.

**F\_GetLkw**Same as for **F\_Setlk**, but wait until the lock is released.

**F\_SetOwn**Set the Process or process group that owns a socket.

Errors: `LinuxError` is used to report errors.

**sys\_ebadf**`Fd` has a bad file descriptor.

**sys\_eagain** or **sys\_eaccess**For **F\_SetLk**, if the lock is held by another process.

See also: `Fcntl` (193), `Fcntl` (2) , `seefFlock`

## **Fork**

Declaration: `Function Fork : Longint;`

Description: `Fork` creates a child process which is a copy of the parent process. `Fork` returns the process ID in the parent process, and zero in the child's process. (you can get the parent's PID with `GetPPid` (200)).

Errors: On error, -1 is returned to the parent, and no child is created.

**sys\_eagain**Not enough memory to create child process.

See also: `Execve` (183), `Clone` (175), `fork` (2)

## **FRename**

Declaration: `Function FReName (OldName,NewName : Pchar) : Boolean; Function FReName (OldName,NewName : String) : Boolean;`

**Description:** `FRename` renames the file `OldName` to `NewName`. `NewName` can be in a different directory than `OldName`, but it cannot be on another partition (device). Any existing file on the new location will be replaced.

If the operation fails, then the `OldName` file will be preserved.

The function returns `True` on succes, `False` on failure.

**Errors:** On error, errors are reported in `LinuxError`. Possible errors include:

**`sys_eisdir`**`NewName` exists and is a directory, but `OldName` is not a directory.

**`sys_exdev`**`NewName` and `OldName` are on different devices.

**`sys_enotempty` or `sys_eexist`**`NewName` is an existing, non-empty directory.

**`sys_ebusy`**`OldName` or `NewName` is a directory and is in use by another process.

**`sys_einval`**`NewName` is part of `OldName`.

**`sys_emlink`**`OldPath` or `NewPath` already have tha maximum amount of links pointing to them.

**`sys_enotdir`**part of `OldName` or `NewName` is not directory.

**`sys_efault`**For the `pchar` case: One of the pointers points to an invalid address.

**`sys_eaccess`**access is denied when attempting to move the file.

**`sys_enametoolong`**Either `OldName` or `NewName` is too long.

**`sys_enoenta`**directory component in `OldName` or `NewName` didn't exist.

**`sys_enomem`**not enough kernel memory.

**`sys_erofs`**`NewName` or `OldName` is on a read-only file system.

**`sys_eloop`**too many symbolic links were encountered trying to expand `OldName` or `NewName`

**`sys_enospct`**the filesystem has no room for the new directory entry.

See also: `UnLink` (231)

## GetDate

**Declaration:** `Procedure GetDate (Var Year, Month, Day : Word) ;`

**Description:** Returns the current date.

**Errors:** None

See also: `GetEpochTime` (198), `GetTime` (201), `GetDateTime` (196), `EpochToLocal` (179)

**Listing:** `linuxex/ex6.pp`

---

```
Program Example6;

{ Program to demonstrate the GetDate function. }

Uses linux;

Var Year, Month, Day : Word;

begin
  GetDate (Year, Month, Day);
  Writeln ( ' Date : ', Day:2, '/' , Month:2, '/' , Year:4);
end.
```

---

## GetDateTime

Declaration: `Procedure GetDateTime(Var Year,Month,Day,hour,minute,second:Word);`

Description: Returns the current date and time. The time is corrected for the local time zone. This procedure is equivalent to the `GetDate` (195) and `GetTime` calls.

Errors: None

See also: `GetEpochTime` (198), `GetTime` (201), `EpochToLocal` (179), `GetDate` (195)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex60.pp

---

**Program** Example6;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetDateTime function . }*

**Uses** linux;

**Var** Year, Month, Day, Hour, min, sec : Word;

**begin**

`GetDateTime ( Year, Month, Day, Hour, min, sec);`

`Writeln ( ' Date : ' ,Day:2, '/' ,Month:2, '/' ,Year:4);`

`Writeln ( ' Time : ' ,Hour:2, ':' ,Min:2, ':' ,Sec:2);`

**end.**

---

## GetDomainName

Declaration: `Function GetDomainName : String;`

Description: Get the domain name of the machine on which the process is running. An empty string is returned if the domain is not set.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetHostName` (199), `seemGetdomainname2`

**Listing:** linuxex/ex39.pp

---

**Program** Example39;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetDomainName function . }*

**Uses** linux;

**begin**

`Writeln ( 'Domain name of this machine is : ' ,GetDomainName);`

**end.**

---

## GetEGid

Declaration: `Function GetEGid : Longint;`

Description: Get the effective group ID of the currently running process.

Errors: None.

See also: GetGid (199), getegid (2)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex18.pp

---

**Program** Example18;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetGid and GetEGid functions . }*

**Uses** linux ;

**begin**

**writeln** ( 'Group Id = ', getgid , ' Effective group Id = ', getegid );

**end.**

---

## GetEUid

**Declaration:** Function GetEUid : Longint;

**Description:** Get the effective user ID of the currently running process.

**Errors:** None.

See also: GetEUid (197), geteuid (2)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex17.pp

---

**Program** Example17;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetUid and GetEUid functions . }*

**Uses** linux ;

**begin**

**writeln** ( 'User Id = ', getuid , ' Effective user Id = ', geteuid );

**end.**

---

## GetEnv

**Declaration:** Function GetEnv ( P : String ) : PChar;

**Description:** Returns the value of the environment variable in P. If the variable is not defined, nil is returned. The value of the environment variable may be the empty string. A PChar is returned to accomodate for strings longer than 255 bytes, TERMCAP and LS\_COLORS, for instance.

**Errors:** None.

See also: sh (1) , csh (1)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex41.pp

---

**Program** Example41;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetEnv function . }*

**Uses** linux ;

```
begin
  Writeln ( 'Path is : ', Getenv('PATH') );
end.
```

---

## GetEpochTime

Declaration: `Function GetEpochTime : longint;`

Description: returns the number of seconds since 00:00:00 gmt, january 1, 1970. it is adjusted to the local time zone, but not to DST.

Errors: no errors

See also: `EpochToLocal` (179), `GetTime` (201), `time` (2)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex1.pp

---

```
Program Example1;

{ Program to demonstrate the GetEpochTime function . }

Uses linux;

begin
  Write ( 'Secs past the start of the Epoch (00:00 1/1/1980) : ' );
  Writeln ( GetEpochTime );
end.
```

---

## GetFS

Declaration: `Function GetFS (Var F : Any File Type) : Longint;`

Description: `GetFS` returns the file selector that the kernel provided for your file. In principle you don't need this file selector. Only for some calls it is needed, such as the `Select` (219) call or so.

Errors: In case the file was not opened, then -1 is returned.

See also: `Select` (219)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex34.pp

---

```
Program Example33;

{ Program to demonstrate the SelectText function . }

Uses linux;

Var tv : TimeVal;

begin
  Writeln ( 'Press the <ENTER> to continue the program.' );
  { Wait until File descriptor 0 (= Input) changes }
  SelectText ( Input, nil );
  { Get rid of <ENTER> in buffer }
  readln;
```

```
Writeln ( 'Press <ENTER> key in less than 2 seconds...' );
tv.sec:=2;
tv.usec:=0;
if SelectText ( Input, @tv)>0 then
  Writeln ( 'Thank you !' )
else
  Writeln ( 'Too late !' );
end.
```

---

## GetGid

Declaration: `Function GetGid : Longint;`

Description: Get the real group ID of the currently running process.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetEGid` (196), `getgid` (2)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex18.pp

---

```
Program Example18;

{ Program to demonstrate the GetGid and GetEGid functions . }

Uses linux;

begin
  writeln ( 'Group Id = ', getgid, ' Effective group Id = ', getegid );
end.
```

---

## GetHostName

Declaration: `Function GetHostName : String;`

Description: Get the hostname of the machine on which the process is running. An empty string is returned if hostname is not set.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetDomainName` (196), `seemGethostname2`

**Listing:** linuxex/ex40.pp

---

```
Program Example40;

{ Program to demonstrate the GetHostName function . }

Uses linux;

begin
  Writeln ( 'Name of this machine is : ', GetHostName );
end.
```

---



### GetLocalTimezone

**Declaration:** `procedure GetLocalTimezone(timer:longint;var leap_correct,leap_hit:longint);`  
`procedure GetLocalTimezone(timer:longint);`

**Description:** `GetLocalTimezone` returns the local timezone information. It also initializes the `TZSeconds` variable, which is used to correct the epoch time to local time.

There should never be any need to call this function directly. It is called by the initialization routines of the Linux unit.

See also: `GetTimezoneFile` (202), `ReadTimezoneFile` (218)

### GetPid

**Declaration:** `Function GetPid : Longint;`

**Description:** Get the Process ID of the currently running process.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetPPid` (200), `getpid` (2)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex16.pp

---

**Program** Example16;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetPid, GetPPid function. }*

**Uses** linux;

**begin**

**WriteLn** ( 'Process Id = ',getpid,' Parent process Id = ',getppid);  
**end.**

---

### GetPPid

**Declaration:** `Function GetPPid : Longint;`

**Description:** Get the Process ID of the parent process.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetPid` (200), `getppid` (2)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex16.pp

---

**Program** Example16;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetPid, GetPPid function. }*

**Uses** linux;

**begin**

**WriteLn** ( 'Process Id = ',getpid,' Parent process Id = ',getppid);  
**end.**

---

## GetPriority

Declaration: `Function GetPriority (Which,Who : Integer) : Integer;`

Description: `GetPriority` returns the priority with which a process is running. Which process(es) is determined by the `Which` and `Who` variables. Which can be one of the pre-defined `Prio_Process`, `Prio_PGrp`, `Prio_User`, in which case `Who` is the process ID, Process group ID or User ID, respectively.

Errors: Error checking must be done on `LinuxError`, since a priority can be negative.

**sys\_esrch**No process found using which and who.

**sys\_einval**Which was not one of `Prio_Process`, `Prio_Grp` or `Prio_User`.

See also: `SetPriority` (220), `Nice` (212), `Getpriority` (2)

For an example, see `Nice` (212).

## GetTime

Declaration: `procedure GetTime(var hour,min,sec,msec,usec:word); procedure GetTime(var hour,min,sec,sec100:word); procedure GetTime(var hour,min,sec:word);`

Description: Returns the current time of the day, adjusted to local time. Upon return, the parameters are filled with

**hour**Hours since 00:00 today.

**min**minutes in current hour.

**sec**seconds in current minute.

**sec100**hundreds of seconds in current second.

**msec**milliseconds in current second.

**usec**microseconds in current second.

Errors: None

See also: `GetEpochTime` (198), `GetDate` (195), `GetDateTime` (196), `EpochToLocal` (179)

**Listing:** `linuxex/ex5.pp`

---

**Program** `Example5;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetTime function. }*

**Uses** `linux;`

**Var** `Hour, Minute, Second : Word;`

**begin**

`GetTime ( Hour, Minute, Second);`

`Writeln ( 'Time : ', Hour:2, ':', Minute:2, ':', Second:2);`

**end.**

---

### **GetTimeOfDay**

Declaration: `Procedure GetTimeOfDay(var tv:timeval);`

Description: `GetTimeOfDay` returns the number of seconds since 00:00, January 1 1970, GMT in a `timeval` record. This time NOT corrected any way, not taking into account timezones, daylight savings time and so on.

It is simply a wrapper to the kernel system call. To get the local time, `GetTime` (201).

Errors: None.

See also: `GetTime` (201), `GetTimeOfDay` (202)

### **GetTimeOfDay**

Declaration: `Function GetTimeOfDay:longint;`

Description: `GetTimeOfDay` returns the number of seconds since 00:00, January 1 1970, GMT. This time NOT corrected any way, not taking into account timezones, daylight savings time and so on.

It is simply a wrapper to the kernel system call. To get the local time, `GetTime` (201).

Errors: None.

See also: `GetTimeOfDay` (202), `GetTime` (201)

### **GetTimezoneFile**

Declaration: `function GetTimezoneFile:string;`

Description: `GetTimezoneFile` returns the location of the current timezone file. The location of file is determined as follows:

- 1.If `/etc/timezone` exists, it is read, and the contents of this file is returned. This should work on Debian systems.
- 2.If `/usr/lib/zoneinfo/localtime` exists, then it is returned. (this file is a symlink to the timezone file on SuSE systems)
- 3.If `/etc/localtime` exists, then it is returned. (this file is a symlink to the timezone file on RedHat systems)

Errors: If no file was found, an empty string is returned.

See also: `ReadTimezoneFile` (218)

### **GetUid**

Declaration: `Function GetUid : Longint;`

Description: Get the real user ID of the currently running process.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetEUid` (197), `getuid` (2)

**Listing:** `linuxex/ex17.pp`

---

**Program** Example17;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetUid and GetEUid functions . }*

**Uses** linux ;

**begin**

**writeln** ( 'User Id = ',getuid,' Effective user Id = ',geteuid);

**end.**

---

## Glob

Declaration: Function Glob (Const Path : Pathstr) : PGlob;

Description: Glob returns a pointer to a glob structure which contains all filenames which exist and match the pattern in Path. The pattern can contain wildcard characters, which have their usual meaning.

Errors: Returns nil on error, and LinuxError is set.

**sys\_enomem**No memory on heap for glob structure.

**others**As returned by the opendir call, and sys\_readdir.

See also: GlobFree (203), Glob (3)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex49.pp

---

**Program** Example49;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Glob and GlobFree functions . }*

**Uses** linux ;

**Var** G1,G2 : PGlob;

**begin**

G1:=Glob ( '\*' );

**if** LinuxError=0 **then**

**begin**

G2:=G1;

**Writeln** ( ' Files in this directory : ' );

**While** g2<>Nil **do**

**begin**

**Writeln** ( g2^.name);

g2:=g2^. next;

**end;**

GlobFree ( g1);

**end;**

**end.**

---

## GlobFree

Declaration: Procedure GlobFree (Var P : Pglob);

Description: Releases the memory, occupied by a pglob structure. P is set to nil.

Errors: None

See also: Glob (203)

For an example, see Glob (203).

## IOctl

Declaration: Procedure IOctl (Handle, Ndx: Longint; Data: Pointer);

Description: This is a general interface to the Unix/ LINUX ioctl call. It performs various operations on the filedescriptor Handle. Ndx describes the operation to perform. Data points to data needed for the Ndx function. The structure of this data is function-dependent, so we don't elaborate on this here. For more information on this, see various manual pages under linux.

Errors: Errors are reported in LinuxError. They are very dependent on the used function, that's why we don't list them here

See also: ioctl (2)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex54.pp

---

```
Program Example54;

uses Linux;

{ Program to demonstrate the IOctl function. }

var
  tios : Termios;
begin
  IOctl(1, TCGETS, @tios);
  WriteLn(' Input  Flags  : $', hexstr(tios.c_iflag, 8));
  WriteLn(' Output  Flags : $', hexstr(tios.c_oflag, 8));
  WriteLn(' Line   Flags   : $', hexstr(tios.c_lflag, 8));
  WriteLn(' Control Flags : $', hexstr(tios.c_cflag, 8));
end.
```

---

## IOperm

Declaration: Function IOperm (From, Num : Cardinal; Value : Longint) : boolean;

Description: IOperm sets permissions on Num ports starting with port From to Value. The function returns True if the call was successful, False otherwise. *Remark:*

- This works ONLY as root.
- Only the first 0x03ff ports can be set.
- When doing a Fork (194), the permissions are reset. When doing a Execve (183) they are kept.

Errors: Errors are returned in LinuxError

See also: ioperm (2)

**IsATTY**

Declaration: Function IsATTY (var f) : Boolean;

Description: Check if the filehandle described by f is a terminal. f can be of type

1. longint for file handles;
2. Text for text variables such as input etc.

Returns True if f is a terminal, False otherwise.

Errors: No errors are reported

See also: IOCTL (204), TTYName (230)

**S\_ISBLK**

Declaration: Function S\_ISBLK (m:integer) : boolean;

Description: S\_ISBLK checks the file mode m to see whether the file is a block device file. If so it returns True.

Errors: FStat (192), S\_ISLNK (206), S\_ISREG (206), S\_ISDIR (205), S\_ISCHR (205), S\_ISFIFO (205), S\_ISSOCK (206)

See also: ISLNK.

**S\_ISCHR**

Declaration: Function S\_ISCHR (m:integer) : boolean;

Description: S\_ISCHR checks the file mode m to see whether the file is a character device file. If so it returns True.

Errors: FStat (192), S\_ISLNK (206), S\_ISREG (206), S\_ISDIR (205), S\_ISBLK (205), S\_ISFIFO (205), S\_ISSOCK (206)

See also: ISLNK.

**S\_ISDIR**

Declaration: Function S\_ISDIR (m:integer) : boolean;

Description: S\_ISDIR checks the file mode m to see whether the file is a directory. If so it returns True

Errors: FStat (192), S\_ISLNK (206), S\_ISREG (206), S\_ISCHR (205), S\_ISBLK (205), S\_ISFIFO (205), S\_ISSOCK (206)

See also: ISLNK.

**S\_ISFIFO**

Declaration: Function S\_ISFIFO (m:integer) : boolean;

Description: S\_ISFIFO checks the file mode m to see whether the file is a fifo (a named pipe). If so it returns True.

Errors: FStat (192), S\_ISLNK (206), S\_ISREG (206), S\_ISDIR (205), S\_ISCHR (205), S\_ISBLK (205), S\_ISSOCK (206)

See also: ISLNK.

## S\_ISLNK

Declaration: Function S\_ISLNK (m:integer) : boolean;

Description: S\_ISLNK checks the file mode m to see whether the file is a symbolic link. If so it returns True

Errors: FStat (192), S\_ISREG (206), S\_ISDIR (205), S\_ISCHR (205), S\_ISBLK (205), S\_ISFIFO (205), S\_ISSOCK (206)

See also:

**Listing:** linuxex/ex53.pp

---

**Program** Example53;

*{ Program to demonstrate the S\_ISLNK function . }*

**Uses** linux ;

**Var** Info : Stat;

**begin**

**if** LStat ( paramstr(1), info ) **then**

**begin**

**if** S\_ISLNK( info .mode) **then**

        Writeln ( ' File is a link ' );

**if** S\_ISREG( info .mode) **then**

        Writeln ( ' File is a regular file ' );

**if** S\_ISDIR( info .mode) **then**

        Writeln ( ' File is a directory ' );

**if** S\_ISCHR( info .mode) **then**

        Writeln ( ' File is a character device file ' );

**if** S\_ISBLK( info .mode) **then**

        Writeln ( ' File is a block device file ' );

**if** S\_ISFIFO( info .mode) **then**

        Writeln ( ' File is a named pipe ( FIFO ) ' );

**if** S\_ISSOCK( info .mode) **then**

        Writeln ( ' File is a socket ' );

**end;**

**end.**

---

## S\_ISREG

Declaration: Function S\_ISREG (m:integer) : boolean;

Description: S\_ISREG checks the file mode m to see whether the file is a regular file. If so it returns True

Errors: FStat (192), S\_ISLNK (206), S\_ISDIR (205), S\_ISCHR (205), S\_ISBLK (205), S\_ISFIFO (205), S\_ISSOCK (206)

See also: ISLNK.

## S\_ISSOCK

Declaration: Function S\_ISSOCK (m:integer) : boolean;

Description: S\_ISSOCK checks the file mode m to see whether the file is a socket. If so it returns True.

Errors: FStat (192), S\_ISLNK (206), S\_ISREG (206), S\_ISDIR (205), S\_ISCHR (205), S\_ISBLK (205), S\_ISFIFO (205)

See also: ISLNK.

## Kill

Declaration: Function Kill (Pid : Longint; Sig : Integer) : Integer;

Description: Send a signal Sig to a process or process group. If Pid>0 then the signal is sent to Pid, if it equals -1, then the signal is sent to all processes except process 1. If Pid<-1 then the signal is sent to process group -Pid. The return value is zero, except in case three, where the return value is the number of processes to which the signal was sent.

Errors: LinuxError is used to report errors:

**sys\_einval**An invalid signal is sent.

**sys\_esrch**The Pid or process group don't exist.

**sys\_eperm**The effective userid of the current process doesn't math the one of process Pid.

See also: SigAction (221), Signal (224), Kill (2)

## LStat

Declaration: Function LStat (Path : Pathstr; Var Info : stat) : Boolean;

Description: LStat gets information about the link specified in Path, and stores it in Info, which is of type stat. Contrary to FStat, it stores information about the link, not about the file the link points to. The function returns True if the call was succesfull, False if the call failed.

Errors: LinuxError is used to report errors.

**sys\_enoent**Path does not exist.

See also: FStat (192), FSStat (191), stat (2)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex29.pp

---

```
program example29;

{ Program to demonstrate the LStat function. }

uses linux;

var f : text;
    i : byte;
    info : stat;

begin
  { Make a file }
  assign ( f, 'test.fil ' );
  rewrite ( f );
  for i:=1 to 10 do writeln ( f, 'Testline # ', i );
  close ( f );
  { Do the call on made file. }
  if not fstat ( 'test.fil ', info ) then
```



```
begin
  writeln('Fstat failed. Errno : ', linuxerror);
  halt (1);
end;
writeln;
writeln('Result of fstat on file ''test.fil''.');
writeln('Inode   : ', info.ino);
writeln('Mode    : ', info.mode);
writeln('nlink   : ', info.nlink);
writeln('uid      : ', info.uid);
writeln('gid      : ', info.gid);
writeln('rdev     : ', info.rdev);
writeln('Size     : ', info.size);
writeln('Blksize  : ', info.blksize);
writeln('Blocks   : ', info.blocks);
writeln('atime    : ', info.atime);
writeln('mtime    : ', info.mtime);
writeln('ctime    : ', info.ctime);

If not SymLink('test.fil', 'test.lnk') then
  writeln('Link failed ! Errno : ', linuxerror);

if not lstat('test.lnk', info) then
  begin
    writeln('LStat failed. Errno : ', linuxerror);
    halt (1);
  end;
  writeln;
  writeln('Result of fstat on file ''test.lnk''.');
  writeln('Inode   : ', info.ino);
  writeln('Mode    : ', info.mode);
  writeln('nlink   : ', info.nlink);
  writeln('uid      : ', info.uid);
  writeln('gid      : ', info.gid);
  writeln('rdev     : ', info.rdev);
  writeln('Size     : ', info.size);
  writeln('Blksize  : ', info.blksize);
  writeln('Blocks   : ', info.blocks);
  writeln('atime    : ', info.atime);
  writeln('mtime    : ', info.mtime);
  writeln('ctime    : ', info.ctime);
  { Remove file and link }
  erase(f);
  unlink('test.lnk');
end.
```

---

## Link

Declaration: Function Link (OldPath, NewPath : pathstr) : Boolean;

Description: Link makes NewPath point to the same file als OldPath. The two files then have the same inode number. This is known as a 'hard' link. The function returns True if the call was succesfull, False if the call failed.

Errors: Errors are returned in LinuxError.

sys\_exdevOldPath and NewPath are not on the same filesystem.

**sys\_eperm**The filesystem containing oldpath and newpath doesn't support linking files.

**sys\_eaccess**Write access for the directory containing Newpath is disallowed, or one of the directories in OldPath or NewPath has no search (=execute) permission.

**sys\_enoent**A directory entry in OldPath or NewPath does not exist or is a symbolic link pointing to a non-existent directory.

**sys\_enotdir**A directory entry in OldPath or NewPath is not a directory.

**sys\_enomem**Insufficient kernel memory.

**sys\_erofs**The files are on a read-only filesystem.

**sys\_eexist**NewPath already exists.

**sys\_mlink**OldPath has reached maximal link count.

**sys\_eloop**OldPath or NewPath has a reference to a circular symbolic link, i.e. a symbolic link, whose expansion points to itself.

**sys\_enospc**The device containing NewPath has no room for another entry.

**sys\_eperm**OldPath points to . or .. of a directory.

See also: SymLink (225), UnLink (231), Link (2)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex21.pp

---

**Program** Example21;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Link and UnLink functions. }*

**Uses** linux;

**Var** F : Text;

    S : **String**;

**begin**

    Assign (F, 'test.txt');

**Rewrite** (F);

**Writeln** (F, 'This is written to test.txt');

    Close(f);

*{ new.txt and test.txt are now the same file }*

**if not** Link ('test.txt', 'new.txt') **then**

**writeln** ('Error when linking !');

*{ Removing test.txt still leaves new.txt }*

**If not** Unlink ('test.txt') **then**

**Writeln** ('Error when unlinking !');

    Assign (f, 'new.txt');

**Reset** (F);

**While not** EOF(f) **do**

**begin**

**Readln**(F,S);

**Writeln** ('> ',s);

**end**;

    Close (f);

*{ Remove new.txt also }*

**If not** Unlink ('new.txt') **then**

**Writeln** ('Error when unlinking !');

**end.**

---

## LocalToEpoch

**Declaration:** Function LocalToEpoch (Year,Month,Day,Hour,Minute,Second : Word) : longint;

**Description:** Converts the Local time to epoch time (=Number of seconds since 00:00:00 , January 1, 1970 ).

**Errors:** None

**See also:** GetEpochTime (198), EpochToLocal (179), GetTime (201),GetDate (195)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex4.pp

---

```
Program Example4;

{ Program to demonstrate the LocalToEpoch function . }

Uses linux;

Var year , month , day , hour , minute , second : Word;

begin
  Write ( ' Year      : ' ); readln ( Year );
  Write ( ' Month    : ' ); readln ( Month );
  Write ( ' Day      : ' ); readln ( Day );
  Write ( ' Hour     : ' ); readln ( Hour );
  Write ( ' Minute   : ' ); readln ( Minute );
  Write ( ' Seonds   : ' ); readln ( Second );
  Write ( ' This is : ' );
  Write ( LocalToEpoch ( year , month , day , hour , minute , second ) );
  Writeln ( ' seconds past 00:00 1/1/1980' );
end.
```

---

## MkFifo

**Declaration:** Function MkFifo (PathName: String; Mode : Longint) : Boolean;

**Description:** MkFifo creates named a named pipe in the filesystem, with name PathName and mode Mode.

**Errors:** LinuxError is used to report errors:

**sys\_emfile**Too many file descriptors for this process.

**sys\_enfile**The system file table is full.

**See also:** POpen (215), MkFifo (210), mkfifo (4)

## MMap

**Declaration:** Function MMap(const m:tmmapargs):longint;

**Description:** MMap maps or unmaps files or devices into memory. The different fields of the argument m determine what and how the mmap maps this:

**address**Address where to mmap the device. This address is a hint, and may not be followed.

**size**Size (in bytes) of area to be mapped.

**prot**Protection of mapped memory. This is a OR-ed combination of the following constants:

**PROT\_EXEC**The memory can be executed.

**PROT\_READ**The memory can be read.

**PROT\_WRITE**The memory can be written.

**PROT\_NONE**The memory can not be accessed.

**flags**Contains some options for the mmap call. It is an OR-ed combination of the following constants:

**MAP\_FIXED**Do not map at another address than the given address. If the address cannot be used, MMap will fail.

**MAP\_SHARED**Share this map with other processes that map this object.

**MAP\_PRIVATE**Create a private map with copy-on-write semantics.

**MAP\_ANONYMOUS**fd does not have to be a file descriptor.

One of the options MAP\_SHARED and MAP\_PRIVATE must be present, but not both at the same time.

**fd**File descriptor from which to map.

**offset**Offset to be used in file descriptor fd.

The function returns a pointer to the mapped memory, or a -1 in case of an error.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned and LinuxError is set to the error code:

**Sys\_EBADF**fd is not a valid file descriptor and MAP\_ANONYMOUS was not specified.

**Sys\_EACCES**MAP\_PRIVATE was specified, but fd is not open for reading. Or MAP\_SHARED was asked and PROT\_WRITE is set, fd is not open for writing

**Sys\_EINVAL**One of the record fields Start, length or offset is invalid.

**Sys\_ETXTBUSY**MAP\_DENYWRITE was set but the object specified by fd is open for writing.

**Sys\_EAGAIN**fd is locked, or too much memory is locked.

**Sys\_ENOMEM**Not enough memory for this operation.

See also: MUnMap (212), mmap (2)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex66.pp

---

**Program** Example66;

*{ Program to demonstrate the MMap function . }*

**Uses** linux ;

**Var** S : **String** ;

fd, Len : Longint ;

args : tmapargs ;

P : PChar ;

**begin**

S:= 'This is a string' #0;

Len:= **Length**(S);

fd:=fdOpen(' testfile . txt ', Open\_wrOnly **or** open\_creat);

**If** fd=-1 **then**

**Halt** (1);

**If** fdWrite (fd, S[1], Len)=-1 **then**

**Halt** (2);

fdClose (fd);

fdOpen(' testfile . txt ', Open\_rdOnly);

**if** fd=-1 **then**

```
    Halt (3);
    args.address:=0;
    args.offset:=0;
    args.size:=Len+1;
    args.fd:=Fd;
    args.flags:=MAP_PRIVATE;
    args.prot:=PROT_READ or PROT_WRITE;
    P:=Pchar(mmap(args));
    If longint(P)=-1 then
        Halt(4);
    Writeln('Read in memory :',P);
    fdclose(fd);
    if Not MUnMap(P,Len) Then
        Halt(LinuxError);
end.
```

---

## MUnMap

Declaration: `function MUnMap (P : Pointer; Size : Longint) : Boolean;`

Description: MUnMap unmaps the memory block of size Size, pointed to by P, which was previously allocated with MMap (210).

The function returns True if successful, False otherwise.

Errors: In case of error the function returns False and LinuxError is set to an error value. See MMap (210) for possible error values.

See also: MMap (210), munmap (2)

For an example, see MMap (210).

## Nice

Declaration: `Procedure Nice ( N : Integer);`

Description: Nice adds -N to the priority of the running process. The lower the priority numerically, the less the process is favored. Only the superuser can specify a negative N, i.e. increase the rate at which the process is run.

Errors: Errors are returned in LinuxError

`sys_epermA` non-superuser tried to specify a negative N, i.e. do a priority increase.

See also: GetPriority (201), SetPriority (220), Nice (2)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex15.pp

---

**Program** Example15;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Nice and Get/SetPriority functions. }*

**Uses** linux;

**begin**

```
    writeln ('Setting priority to 5');
    setpriority (prio_process, getpid, 5);
```

```
writeln ( 'New priority = ', getpriority ( prio_process , getpid ));  
writeln ( 'Doing nice 10');  
nice (10);  
writeln ( 'New Priority = ', getpriority ( prio_process , getpid ));  
end.
```

---

## Octal

Declaration: `Function Octal(l:longint):longint;`

Description: `Octal` will convert a number specified as an octal number to its decimal value.

This is useful for the `Chmod` (174) call, where permissions are specified as octal numbers.

Errors: No checking is performed whether the given number is a correct Octal number. e.g. specifying 998 is possible; the result will be wrong in that case.

See also: `Chmod` (174).

**Listing:** linuxex/ex68.pp

---

**Program** Example68;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Octal function . }*

**Uses** linux;

**begin**

**Writeln** ( 'Mode 777 : ' , Octal (777));

**Writeln** ( 'Mode 644 : ' , Octal (644));

**Writeln** ( 'Mode 755 : ' , Octal (755));

**end.**

---

## OpenDir

Declaration: `Function OpenDir (f:pchar) : pdir; Function OpenDir (f:string) : pdir;`

Description: `OpenDir` opens the directory `f`, and returns a `pdir` pointer to a `Dir` record, which can be used to read the directory structure. If the directory cannot be opened, `nil` is returned.

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

See also: `CloseDir` (176), `ReadDir` (216), `SeekDir` (218), `TellDir` (230), `opendir` (3)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex35.pp

---

**Program** Example35;

*{ Program to demonstrate the  
  OpenDir, ReadDir, SeekDir and TellDir functions . }*

**Uses** linux;

**Var** TheDir : PDir;

    ADirent : PDirent;

    Entry : Longint;

```
begin
  TheDir:= OpenDir( ' ./.' );
  Repeat
    Entry:= TellDir ( TheDir );
    ADirent:= ReadDir ( TheDir );
    If ADirent<>Nil then
      With ADirent ^ do
        begin
          Writeln ( ' Entry No : ' , Entry );
          Writeln ( ' Inode      : ' , ino );
          Writeln ( ' Offset     : ' , off );
          Writeln ( ' Reclen    : ' , reclen );
          Writeln ( ' Name       : ' , pchar (@name[0]));
        end;
      Until ADirent=Nil ;
    Repeat
      Write ( ' Entry No. you would like to see again (-1 to stop): ' );
      ReadLn ( Entry );
      If Entry<>-1 then
        begin
          SeekDir ( TheDir , Entry );
          ADirent:= ReadDir ( TheDir );
          If ADirent<>Nil then
            With ADirent ^ do
              begin
                Writeln ( ' Entry No : ' , Entry );
                Writeln ( ' Inode      : ' , ino );
                Writeln ( ' Offset     : ' , off );
                Writeln ( ' Reclen    : ' , reclen );
                Writeln ( ' Name       : ' , pchar (@name[0]));
              end;
            end;
          Until Entry=-1;
        end;
      CloseDir ( TheDir );
    end.
```

---

## pause

Declaration: Procedure Pause;

Description: Pause puts the process to sleep and waits until the application receives a signal. If a signal handler is installed for the received sigal, the handler will be called and after that pause will return control to the process.

Errors: None.

For an example, see Alarm (169).

## PClose

Declaration: Function PClose (Var F : FileType) : longint;

Description: PClose closes a file opened with POpen. It waits for the command to complete, and then returns the exit status of the command.

Errors: LinuxError is used to report errors. If it is different from zero, the exit status is not valid.

See also: POpen (215)

For an example, see POpen (215)

## POpen

**Declaration:** Procedure POpen (Var F : FileType; Cmd : pathstr; rw : char);

**Description:** Popen runs the command specified in Cmd, and redirects the standard in or output of the command to the other end of the pipe F. The parameter rw indicates the direction of the pipe. If it is set to 'W', then F can be used to write data, which will then be read by the command from stdin. If it is set to 'R', then the standard output of the command can be read from F. F should be reset or rewritten prior to using it. F can be of type Text or File. A file opened with POpen can be closed with Close, but also with PClose (214). The result is the same, but PClose returns the exit status of the command Cmd.

**Errors:** Errors are reported in LinuxError and are essentially those of the Execve, Dup and AssignPipe commands.

See also: AssignPipe (169), popen (3) , PClose (214)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex37.pp

---

**Program** Example37;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Popen function . }*

**uses** linux ;

**var** f : text ;  
i : longint ;

**begin**

```
writeln ( 'Creating a shell script to which echoes its arguments' );
writeln ( 'and input back to stdout' );
assign ( f, 'test21a' );
rewrite ( f );
writeln ( f, '#!/ bin / sh' );
writeln ( f, 'echo this is the child speaking .... ' );
writeln ( f, 'echo got arguments \" $* \"' );
writeln ( f, 'cat' );
writeln ( f, 'exit 2' );
writeln ( f );
close ( f );
chmod ( 'test21a', octal ( 755 ));
popen ( f, './ test21a arg1 arg2', 'W' );
if linuxerror <> 0 then
  writeln ( 'error from POpen : Linuxerror : ', Linuxerror );
for i:=1 to 10 do
  writeln ( f, 'This is written to the pipe, and should appear on stdout.' );
Flush(f);
Writeln ( 'The script exited with status : ', PClose ( f ));
writeln ;
writeln ( 'Press <return> to remove shell script.' );
readln ;
assign ( f, 'test21a' );
erase ( f )
```

**end.**

---



## ReadDir

**Declaration:** `Function ReadDir (p:pdirent) : pdirent;`

**Description:** `ReadDir` reads the next entry in the directory pointed to by `p`. It returns a `pdirent` pointer to a structure describing the entry. If the next entry can't be read, `Nil` is returned.

**Errors:** Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

**See also:** `CloseDir` (176), `OpenDir` (213), `SeekDir` (218), `TellDir` (230), `readdir` (3)

For an example, see `OpenDir` (213).

## ReadLink

**Declaration:** `Function ReadLink(name,linkname:pchar;maxlen:longint):longint; Function ReadLink(name:pathstr):pathstr;`

**Description:** `ReadLink` returns the file the symbolic link name is pointing to. The first form of this function accepts a buffer `linkname` of length `maxlen` where the filename will be stored. It returns the actual number of characters stored in the buffer.

The second form of the function returns simply the name of the file.

**Errors:** On error, the first form of the function returns -1; the second one returns an empty string. `LinuxError` is set to report errors:

**SYS\_ENOTDIR**A part of the path in `Name` is not a directory.

**SYS\_EINVAL**`maxlen` is not positive, or the file is not a symbolic link.

**SYS\_ENAMETOOLONG**A pathname, or a component of a pathname, was too long.

**SYS\_ENOENT**the link name does not exist.

**SYS\_EACCES**No permission to search a directory in the path

**SYS\_ELOOP**Too many symbolic links were encountered in translating the pathname.

**SYS\_EIO**An I/O error occurred while reading from the file system.

**SYS\_EFAULT**The buffer is not part of the process's memory space.

**SYS\_ENOMEM**Not enough kernel memory was available.

**See also:** `SymLink` (225)

**Listing:** `linuxex/ex62.pp`

---

**Program** `Example62;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the ReadLink function. }*

**Uses** `linux;`

**Var** `F : Text;`  
      `S : String;`

**begin**  
  Assign ( F, ' test . txt ' );  
  Rewrite ( F );  
  Writeln ( F, ' This is written to test . txt ' );  
  Close ( f );

```
{ new.txt and test.txt are now the same file }
if not SymLink ( 'test.txt', 'new.txt' ) then
  writeln ( 'Error when symlinking !' );
S:=ReadLink('new.txt');
If S='' then
  Writeln ( 'Error reading link !' )
Else
  Writeln ( 'Link points to : ',S);
{ Now remove links }
If not Unlink ( 'new.txt' ) then
  Writeln ( 'Error when unlinking !' );
If not Unlink ( 'test.txt' ) then
  Writeln ( 'Error when unlinking !' );
end.
```

---

## ReadPort

**Declaration:** Procedure ReadPort (Port : Longint; Var Value : Byte); Procedure ReadPort (Port : Longint; Var Value : Word); Procedure ReadPort (Port : Longint; Var Value : Longint);

**Description:** ReadPort reads one Byte, Word or Longint from port Port into Value.

Note that you need permission to read a port. This permission can be set by the root user with the IOperm (204) call.

**Errors:** In case of an error (not enough permissions read this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

See also: IOperm (204), ReadPortB (217), ReadPortW (218), ReadPortL (217), WritePort (233), WritePortB (233), WritePortL (233), WritePortW (233)

## ReadPortB

**Declaration:** Procedure ReadPortB (Port : Longint; Var Buf; Count: longint); Function ReadPortB (Port : Longint): Byte;

**Description:** The procedural form of ReadPortB reads Count bytes from port Port and stores them in Buf.

There must be enough memory allocated at Buf to store Count bytes.

The functional form of ReadPortB reads 1 byte from port B and returns the byte that was read.

Note that you need permission to read a port. This permission can be set by the root user with the IOperm (204) call.

**Errors:** In case of an error (not enough permissions read this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

See also: IOperm (204), ReadPort (217), ReadPortW (218), ReadPortL (217), WritePort (233), WritePortB (233), WritePortL (233), WritePortW (233)

## ReadPortL

**Declaration:** function ReadPortL (Port : Longint): LongInt; Procedure ReadPortL (Port : Longint; Var Buf; Count: longint);

**Description:** The procedural form of `ReadPortL` reads `Count` longints from port `Port` and stores them in `Buf`. There must be enough memory allocated at `Buf` to store `Count` Longints.

The functional form of `ReadPortB` reads 1 longint from port `B` and returns the longint that was read.

Note that you need permission to read a port. This permission can be set by the root user with the `IOperm` (204) call.

**Errors:** In case of an error (not enough permissions read this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

See also: `IOperm` (204), `ReadPort` (217), `ReadPortW` (218), `ReadPortB` (217), `WritePort` (233), `WritePortB` (233), `WritePortL` (233), `WritePortW` (233)

### **ReadPortW**

**Declaration:** `Procedure ReadPortW (Port : Longint; Var Buf; Count: longint); function ReadPortW (Port : Longint): Word;`

**Description:** The procedural form of `ReadPortB` reads `Count` words from port `Port` and stores them in `Buf`. There must be enough memory allocated at `Buf` to store `Count` words.

The functional form of `ReadPortB` reads 1 word from port `B` and returns the word that was read.

Note that you need permission to read a port. This permission can be set by the root user with the `IOperm` (204) call.

**Errors:** In case of an error (not enough permissions read this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

See also: `IOperm` (204), `ReadPort` (217), `ReadPortB` (217), `ReadPortL` (217), `WritePort` (233), `WritePortB` (233), `WritePortL` (233), `WritePortW` (233)

### **ReadTimezoneFile**

**Declaration:** `procedure ReadTimezoneFile(fn:string);`

**Description:** `ReadTimezoneFile` reads the timezone file `fn` and initializes the local time routines based on the information found there.

There should be no need to call this function. The initialization routines of the `linux` unit call this routine at unit startup.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `GetTimezoneFile` (202), `GetLocalTimezone` (200)

### **SeekDir**

**Declaration:** `Procedure SeekDir (p:pdir;off:longint);`

**Description:** `SeekDir` sets the directory pointer to the `off`-th entry in the directory structure pointed to by `p`.

**Errors:** Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

See also: `CloseDir` (176), `ReadDir` (216), `OpenDir` (213), `TellDir` (230), `seekdir` (3)

For an example, see `OpenDir` (213).

## Select

**Declaration:** Function Select (N : Longint;  
var readfds, writefds, exceptfds : PFDset; Var Timeout) : Longint;

**Description:** Select checks one of the file descriptors in the FDsets to see if its status changed. readfds, writefds and exceptfds are pointers to arrays of 256 bits. If you want a file descriptor to be checked, you set the corresponding element in the array to 1. The other elements in the array must be set to zero. Three arrays are passed : The entries in readfds are checked to see if characters become available for reading. The entries in writefds are checked to see if it is OK to write to them, while entries in exceptfds are checked to see if an exception occurred on them. You can use the functions FD\_ZERO (184), FD\_Clr (185), FD\_Set (185), FD\_IsSet (185) to manipulate the individual elements of a set. The pointers can be nil. N is the largest index of a nonzero entry plus 1. (= the largest file-descriptor + 1). Timeout can be used to set a time limit. If Timeout can be two types :

1. Timeout is of type PTime and contains a zero time, the call returns immediately. If Timeout is Nil, the kernel will wait forever, or until a status changed.
2. Timeout is of type Longint. If it is -1, this has the same effect as a Timeout of type PTime which is Nil. Otherwise, Timeout contains a time in milliseconds.

When the Timeout is reached, or one of the file descriptors has changed, the Select call returns. On return, it will have modified the entries in the array which have actually changed, and it returns the number of entries that have been changed. If the timeout was reached, and no descriptor changed, zero is returned; The arrays of indexes are undefined after that. On error, -1 is returned.

**Errors:** On error, the function returns -1, and Errors are reported in LinuxError :

**SYS\_EBADF** An invalid descriptor was specified in one of the sets.

**SYS\_EINTR** A non blocked signal was caught.

**SYS\_EINVAL** N is negative or too big.

**SYS\_ENOMEM** Select was unable to allocate memory for its internal tables.

See also: SelectText (220), GetFS (198), FD\_ZERO (184), FD\_Clr (185), FD\_Set (185), FD\_IsSet (185)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex33.pp

---

**Program** Example33;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Select function . }*

**Uses** linux ;

**Var** FDS : FDSet;

**begin**

```
FD_Zero (FDS);
FD_Set (0, FDS);
Writeln ( ' Press the <ENTER> to continue the program.' );
{ Wait until File descriptor 0 (= Input) changes }
Select (1, @FDS, nil, nil, nil);
{ Get rid of <ENTER> in buffer }
readln;
Writeln ( ' Press <ENTER> key in less than 2 seconds...' );
FD_Zero (FDS);
FD_Set (0, FDS);
```

```
if Select (1,@FDS,nil,nil,2000)>0 then
  Writeln ( 'Thank you !' )
  { FD_ISSET(0,FDS) would be true here. }
else
  Writeln ( 'Too late !' );
end.
```

---

## SelectText

Declaration: Function SelectText ( var T : Text; TimeOut : PTime) : Longint;

Description: SelectText executes the **Select** (219) call on a file of type Text. You can specify a timeout in TimeOut. The SelectText call determines itself whether it should check for read or write, depending on how the file was opened : With **Reset** it is checked for reading, with **Rewrite** and **Append** it is checked for writing.

Errors: See **Select** (219). **SYS\_EBADF** can also mean that the file wasn't opened.

See also: **Select** (219), **GetFS** (198)

## SetPriority

Declaration: Function SetPriority (Which,Who,Prio : Integer) : Integer;

Description: SetPriority sets the priority with which a process is running. Which process(es) is determined by the Which and Who variables. Which can be one of the pre-defined **Prio\_Process**, **Prio\_PGrp**, **Prio\_User**, in which case Who is the process ID, Process group ID or User ID, respectively. Prio is a value in the range -20 to 20.

Errors: Error checking must be done on **LinuxError**, since a priority can be negative.

**sys\_esrch**No process found using which and who.

**sys\_einval**Which was not one of **Prio\_Process**, **Prio\_Grp** or **Prio\_User**.

**sys\_eperm**A process was found, but neither its effective or real user ID match the effective user ID of the caller.

**sys\_eaccess**A non-superuser tried to a priority increase.

See also: **GetPriority** (201), **Nice** (212), **Setpriority** (2)

For an example, see **Nice** (212).

## Shell

Declaration: Function Shell (Command : String) : Longint;

Description: Shell invokes the bash shell (/bin/sh), and feeds it the command Command (using the **-c** option). The function then waits for the command to complete, and then returns the exit status of the command, or 127 if it could not complete the **Fork** (194) or **Execve** (183) calls.

Errors: Errors are reported in **LinuxError**.

See also: **POpen** (215), **Fork** (194), **Execve** (183), **system** (3)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex56.pp

---

```
program example56;

uses linux;

{ Program to demonstrate the Shell function }

Var S : Longint;

begin
  Writeln ( 'Output of ls -l *.pp' );
  S:= Shell ( 'ls -l *.pp' );
  Writeln ( 'Command exited with status : ',S);
end.
```

---

## SigAction

Declaration: Procedure SigAction (Signum : Integer; Var Act,OldAct : PSigActionRec);

Description: Changes the action to take upon receipt of a signal. Act and Oldact are pointers to a SigActionRec record. SigNum specifies the signal, and can be any signal except **SIGKILL** or **SIGSTOP**. If Act is non-nil, then the new action for signal SigNum is taken from it. If OldAct is non-nil, the old action is stored there. Sa\_Handler may be SIG\_DFL for the default action or SIG\_IGN to ignore the signal. Sa\_Mask Specifies which signals should be ignored during the execution of the signal handler. Sa\_Flags Specifies a series of flags which modify the behaviour of the signal handler. You can 'or' none or more of the following :

**SA\_NOCLDSTOP**If signum is **SIGCHLD** do not receive notification when child processes stop.

**SA\_ONESHOT** or **SA\_RESETHAND**Restore the signal action to the default state once the signal handler has been called.

**SA\_RESTART**For compatibility with BSD signals.

**SA\_NOMASK** or **SA\_NODEFER**Do not prevent the signal from being received from within its own signal handler.

Errors: LinuxError is used to report errors.

**sys\_einval**an invalid signal was specified, or it was **SIGKILL** or **SIGSTOP**.

**sys\_efault**Act , OldAct point outside this process address space

**sys\_eintr**System call was interrupted.

See also: SigProcMask (222), SigPending (222), SigSuspend (223), Kill (207), Sigaction (2)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex57.pp

---

```
Program example57;

{ Program to demonstrate the SigAction function .}

{
do a kill -USR1 pid from another terminal to see what happens.
replace pid with the real pid of this program.
You can get this pid by running 'ps'.
}

uses Linux;
```

```
Var
    oa, na : PSigActionRec;

Procedure DoSig(sig : Longint); cdecl;

begin
    writeln('Receiving signal : ', sig);
end;

begin
    new(na);
    new(oa);
    na^.Handler.sh := @DoSig;
    na^.Sa_Mask := 0;
    na^.Sa_Flags := 0;
    na^.Sa_Restorer := Nil;
    SigAction(SigUsrc1, na, oa);
    if LinuxError <> 0 then
        begin
            writeln('Error : ', linuxerror, '.');
            halt(1);
        end;
    WriteLn('Send USR1 signal or press <ENTER> to exit');
    readln;
end.
```

---

## SigPending

Declaration: Function SigPending : SigSet;

Description: Sigpending allows the examination of pending signals (which have been raised while blocked.) The signal mask of pending signals is returned.

Errors: None

See also: SigAction (221), SigProcMask (222), SigSuspend (223), Signal (224), Kill (207), Sigpending (2)

## SigProcMask

Declaration: Procedure SigProcMask (How : Integer; SSet, OldSSet : PSigSet);

Description: Changes the list of currently blocked signals. The behaviour of the call depends on How :

**SIG\_BLOCK** The set of blocked signals is the union of the current set and the SSet argument.

**SIG\_UNBLOCK** The signals in SSet are removed from the set of currently blocked signals.

**SIG\_SETMASK** The list of blocked signals is set so SSet.

If OldSSet is non-nil, then the old set is stored in it.

Errors: LinuxError is used to report errors.

**sys\_efault** SSet or OldSSet point to an address outside the range of the process.

**sys\_eintr** System call was interrupted.

See also: SigAction (221), SigPending (222), SigSuspend (223), Kill (207), Sigprocmask (2)

## SigRaise

Declaration: `Procedure SigRaise(Sig:integer);`

Description: `SigRaise` sends a `Sig` signal to the current process.

Errors: None.

See also: `Kill` (207), `GetPid` (200)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex65.pp

---

```
Program example64;

{ Program to demonstrate the SigRaise function.}

uses Linux;

Var
    oa,na : PSigActionRec;

Procedure DoSig( sig : Longint ); cdecl;

begin
    writeln( ' Receiving  signal : ', sig );
end;

begin
    new(na);
    new(oa);
    na^. handler . sh := @DoSig;
    na^. Sa_Mask:=0;
    na^. Sa_Flags:=0;
    na^. Sa_Restorer:= Nil ;
    SigAction ( SigUsr1 , na, oa );
    if LinuxError <> 0 then
        begin
            writeln( ' Error : ', linuxerror , ' . ' );
            halt (1);
        end;
    WriteIn( ' Sending USR1 ( ' , sigusr1 , ' ) signal to self . ' );
    SigRaise( sigusr1 );
end.
```

---

## SigSuspend

Declaration: `Procedure SigSuspend (Mask : SigSet);`

Description: `SigSuspend` temporarily replaces the signal mask for the process with the one given in `Mask`, and then suspends the process until a signal is received.

Errors: None

See also: `SigAction` (221), `SigProcMask` (222), `SigPending` (222), `Signal` (224), `Kill` (207), `SigSuspend` (2)



## Signal

Declaration: `Function Signal (SigNum : Integer; Handler : SignalHandler) : SignalHandler;`

Description: `Signal` installs a new signal handler for signal `SigNum`. This call has the same functionality as the **SigAction** call. The return value for `Signal` is the old signal handler, or `nil` on error.

Errors: `LinuxError` is used to report errors :

**SIG\_ERR**An error occurred.

See also: `SigAction` (221), `Kill` (207), `Signal` (2)

**Listing:** `linuxex/ex58.pp`

---

**Program** `example58;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Signal function .}*

```
{
do a kill -USR1 pid from another terminal to see what happens.
replace pid with the real pid of this program.
You can get this pid by running 'ps'.
}
```

**uses** `Linux;`

**Procedure** `DoSig(sig : Longint); cdecl;`

**begin**

`writeln('Receiving signal : ', sig);`

**end;**

**begin**

`SigNal(SigUsr1, @DoSig);`

**if** `LinuxError <> 0` **then**

**begin**

`writeln('Error : ', linuxerror, '.');`

`halt(1);`

**end;**

`Writeln('Send USR1 signal or press <ENTER> to exit');`

`readln;`

**end.**

---

## StringToPPchar

Declaration: `Function StringToPPChar(Var S:String):ppchar;`

Description: `StringToPPChar` splits the string `S` in words, replacing any whitespace with zero characters. It returns a pointer to an array of `pchar`s that point to the first letters of the words in `S`. This array is terminated by a `Nil` pointer.

The function does *not* add a zero character to the end of the string unless it ends on whitespace.

The function reserves memory on the heap to store the array of `PChar`; The caller is responsible for freeing this memory.

This function can be called to create arguments for the various `Exec` calls.

Errors: None.

See also: CreateShellArgV (176), Execve (183), Execv (182)

**Listing:** linux/ex70.pp

---

```
Program Example70;

{ Program to demonstrate the StringToPPchar function . }

Uses linux;

Var S : String;
    P : PPChar;
    I : longint;

begin
    // remark whitespace at end.
    S:= 'This is a string with words. ' ;
    P:= StringToPPChar(S);
    I:=0;
    While P[I]<> Nil do
        begin
            WriteLn ( 'Word ', i, ' : ', P[I] );
            Inc (I);
        end;
    FreeMem(P, i * SizeOf ( Pchar ));
end.
```

---

## SymLink

**Declaration:** Function SymLink (OldPath, NewPath : pathstr) : Boolean;

**Description:** SymLink makes Newpath point to the file in OldPath, which doesn't necessarily exist. The two files DO NOT have the same inode number. This is known as a 'soft' link. The permissions of the link are irrelevant, as they are not used when following the link. Ownership of the file is only checked in case of removal or renaming of the link. The function returns True if the call was succesfull, False if the call failed.

**Errors:** Errors are returned in LinuxError.

**sys\_eperm**The filesystem containing oldpath and newpath doesn't support linking files.

**sys\_eaccess**Write access for the directory containing Newpath is disallowed, or one of the directories in OldPath or NewPath has no search (=execute) permission.

**sys\_enoent**A directory entry in OldPath or NewPath does not exist or is a symbolic link pointing to a non-existent directory.

**sys\_enotdir**A directory entry in OldPath or NewPath is nor a directory.

**sys\_enomem**Insufficient kernel memory.

**sys\_erofs**The files are on a read-only filesystem.

**sys\_eexist**NewPath already exists.

**sys\_eloop**OldPath or NewPath has a reference to a circular symbolic link, i.e. a symbolic link, whose expansion points to itself.

**sys\_enospc**The device containing NewPath has no room for anothe entry.

See also: Link (208), UnLink (231), ReadLink (216), SymLink (2)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex22.pp

---

**Program** Example22;

*{ Program to demonstrate the SymLink and UnLink functions . }*

**Uses** linux ;

**Var** F : Text;  
      S : **String**;

**begin**  
  Assign ( F, ' test.txt ' );  
  **Rewrite** ( F );  
  **WriteIn** ( F, ' This is written to test.txt ' );  
  Close ( f );  
  *{ new.txt and test.txt are now the same file }*  
  **if not** SymLink ( ' test.txt ', ' new.txt ' ) **then**  
    **writeln** ( ' Error when symlinking ! ' );  
  *{ Removing test.txt still leaves new.txt*  
    *Pointing now to a non-existent file ! }*  
  **If not** Unlink ( ' test.txt ' ) **then**  
    **WriteIn** ( ' Error when unlinking ! ' );  
  Assign ( f, ' new.txt ' );  
  *{ This should fail , since the symbolic link*  
    *points to a non-existent file ! }*  
  { \$i-}  
  **Reset** ( F );  
  { \$i+}  
  **If IOResult=0 then**  
    **WriteIn** ( ' This shouldn''t happen' );  
  *{ Now remove new.txt also }*  
  **If not** Unlink ( ' new.txt ' ) **then**  
    **WriteIn** ( ' Error when unlinking ! ' );  
**end.**

---

## SysInfo

**Declaration:** Function SysInfo ( var Info : TSysinfo ) : Boolean;

**Description:** SysInfo returns system information in Info. Returned information in Info includes:

- uptime** Number of seconds since boot.
- loads** 1, 5 and 15 minute load averages.
- totalram** total amount of main memory.
- freeram** amount of free memory.
- sharedram** amount of shared memory
- bufferram** amount of memory used by buffers.
- totalswap** total amount of swap space.
- freeswap** amount of free swap space.
- procs** number of current processes.

**Errors:** None.

See also: Uname (231)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex64.pp

---

```
program Example64;

{ Example to demonstrate the SysInfo function }

Uses Linux;

Function Mb(L : Longint) : longint;

begin
  Mb:=L div (1024*1024);
end;

Var Info : TSysInfo;
     D,M,Secs,H : longint;

begin
  If Not SysInfo(Info) then
    Halt(1);
  With Info do
    begin
      D:=Uptime div (3600*24);
      UpTime:=UpTime mod (3600*24);
      h:=uptime div 3600;
      uptime:=uptime mod 3600;
      m:=uptime div 60;
      secs:=uptime mod 60;
      WriteLn(' Uptime   : ',d,' days , ',h,' hours , ',m,' min , ',secs,' s. ');
      WriteLn(' Loads    : ',Loads[1], '/' ,Loads[2], '/' ,Loads[3]);
      WriteLn(' Total Ram   : ',Mb(totalram),' Mb. ');
      WriteLn(' Free Ram    : ',Mb(freeram),' Mb. ');
      WriteLn(' Shared Ram  : ',Mb(sharedram),' Mb. ');
      WriteLn(' Buffer Ram   : ',Mb(bufferram),' Mb. ');
      WriteLn(' Total Swap  : ',Mb(totalswap),' Mb. ');
      WriteLn(' Free Swap   : ',Mb(freeswap),' Mb. ');
    end;
  end.
```

---

## TCDrain

**Declaration:** Function TCDrain (Fd:longint) : Boolean;

**Description:** TCDrain waits until all data to file descriptor Fd is transmitted.

The function returns True if the call was succesfull, False otherwise.

**Errors:** Errors are reported in LinuxError

**See also:** termios (2)

## TCFlow

**Declaration:** Function TCFlow (Fd,Act:longint) : Boolean;

**Description:** TCFlow suspends/resumes transmission or reception of data to or from the file descriptor Fd, depending on the action Act. This can be one of the following pre-defined values:

**TCOOFF** suspend reception/transmission,  
**TCOON** resume reception/transmission,  
**TCIOFF** transmit a stop character to stop input from the terminal,  
**TCION** transmit start to resume input from the terminal.

The function returns `True` if the call was succesfull, `False` otherwise.

Errors: Errors are reported in `LinuxError`.

See also: `termios (2)`

### **TCFlush**

Declaration: `Function TCFlush (Fd,QSel:longint) : Boolean;`

Description: `TCFlush` discards all data sent or received to/from file descriptor `fd`. `QSel` indicates which queue should be discard. It can be one of the following pre-defined values :

**TCIFLUSH** input,  
**TCOFLUSH** output,  
**TCIOFLUSH** both input and output.

The function returns `True` if the call was succesfull, `False` otherwise.

Errors: Errors are reported in `LinuxError`.

See also: `termios (2)`

### **TCGetAttr**

Declaration: `Function TCGetAttr (fd:longint;var tios:TermIOS) : Boolean;`

Description: `TCGetAttr` gets the terminal parameters from the terminal referred to by the file descriptor `fd` and returns them in a `TermIOS` structure `tios`. The function returns `True` if the call was succesfull, `False` otherwise.

Errors: Errors are reported in `LinuxError`

See also: `TCSetAttr (229)`, `termios (2)`

**Listing:** `linuxex/ex55.pp`

---

**Program** `Example55;`

**uses** `Linux;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the TCGetAttr/TCSetAttr/CFMakeRaw functions . }*

```
procedure ShowTermios(var tios : Termios);  
begin  
  WriteLn(' Input  Flags   : $', hexstr(tios.c_iflag,8)+#13);  
  WriteLn(' Output  Flags : $', hexstr(tios.c_oflag,8));  
  WriteLn(' Line   Flags   : $', hexstr(tios.c_lflag,8));  
  WriteLn(' Control Flags : $', hexstr(tios.c_cflag,8));  
end;
```

```
var
  oldios,
  tios : Termios;
begin
  WriteLn(' Old attributes :' );
  TCGetAttr(1, tios);
  ShowTermios( tios );
  oldios := tios;
  WriteLn(' Setting raw terminal mode' );
  CFMakeRaw( tios );
  TCSetAttr(1, TCSANOW, tios);
  WriteLn(' Current attributes :' );
  TCGetAttr(1, tios);
  ShowTermios( tios );
  TCSetAttr(1, TCSANOW, oldios);
end.
```

---

### TCGetPGrp

Declaration: Function TCGetPGrp (Fd:longint;var Id:longint) : boolean;

Description: TCGetPGrp returns the process group ID of a foreground process group in Id The function returns True if the call was succesfull, False otherwise

Errors: Errors are reported in LinuxError

See also: termios (2)

### TCSendBreak

Declaration: Function TCSendBreak (Fd,Duration:longint) : Boolean;

Description: TCSendBreak Sends zero-valued bits on an asynchrone serial connection decribed by file-descriptor Fd, for duration Duration. The function returns True if the action was performed successfully, False otherwise.

Errors: Errors are reported in LinuxError.

See also: termios (2)

### TCSetAttr

Declaration: Function TCSetAttr (Fd:longint;OptAct:longint;var Tios:TermIOS) : Boolean;

Description: TCSetAttr Sets the terminal parameters you specify in a TermIOS structure Tios for the terminal referred to by the file descriptor Fd. OptAct specifies an optional action when the set need to be done, this could be one of the following pre-defined values:

**TCSANOW** set immediately.

**TCSADRAIN** wait for output.

**TCSAFLUSH** wait for output and discard all input not yet read.

The function Returns True if the call was succesfull, False otherwise.

Errors: Errors are reported in LinuxError.

See also: TCGetAttr (228), termios (2)

For an example, see TCGetAttr (228).

## TCSetsPGrp

Declaration: `Function TCSetsPGrp (Fd,Id:longint) : boolean;`

Description: `TCSetsPGrp` Sets the Process Group Id to `Id`. The function returns `True` if the call was successful, `False` otherwise.

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

See also: `TCGetPGrp` (229), `termios` (2)

For an example, see `TCGetPGrp` (229).

## TTYName

Declaration: `Function TTYName (var f) : String;`

Description: Returns the name of the terminal pointed to by `f`. `f` must be a terminal. `f` can be of type:

1. `longint` for file handles;
2. Text for text variables such as `input` etc.

Errors: Returns an empty string in case of an error. `Linuxerror` may be set to indicate what error occurred, but this is uncertain.

See also: `IsATTY` (205), `IOctl` (204)

## TellDir

Declaration: `Function TellDir (p:pdir) : longint;`

Description: `TellDir` returns the current location in the directory structure pointed to by `p`. It returns `-1` on failure.

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

See also: `CloseDir` (176), `ReadDir` (216), `SeekDir` (218), `OpenDir` (213), `telldir` (3)

For an example, see `OpenDir` (213).

## Umask

Declaration: `Function Umask (Mask : Integer) : Integer;`

Description: Change the file creation mask for the current user to `Mask`. The current mask is returned.

Errors: None

See also: `Chmod` (174), `Umask` (2)

**Listing:** `linuxex/ex27.pp`

---

**Program** `Example27;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Umask function. }*

**Uses** `linux;`

```
begin
  Writeln ( 'Old Umask was : ', Umask( Octal(111)));
  WRiteln ( 'New Umask is   : ', Octal(111));
end.
```

---

## Uname

Declaration: Procedure Uname (var unamerec:utsname);

Description: Uname gets the name and configuration of the current LINUX kernel, and returns it in unamerec.

Errors: LinuxError is used to report errors.

See also: GetHostName (199), GetDomainName (196), uname (2)

## UnLink

Declaration: Function UnLink (Var Path) : Boolean;

Description: UnLink decreases the link count on file Path. Path can be of type PathStr or PChar. If the link count is zero, the file is removed from the disk. The function returns True if the call was succesfull, False if the call failed.

Errors: Errors are returned in LinuxError.

**sys\_eaccess**You have no write access right in the directory containing Path, or you have no search permission in one of the directory components of Path.

**sys\_eperm**The directory containing pathname has the sticky-bit set and the process's effective uid is neither the uid of the file to be deleted nor that of the directory containing it.

**sys\_enoent**A component of the path doesn't exist.

**sys\_enotdir**A directory component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eisdir**Path refers to a directory.

**sys\_enomem**Insufficient kernel memory.

**sys\_erofs**Path is on a read-only filesystem.

See also: Link (208), SymLink (225), Unlink (2)

For an example, see Link (208).

## Utime

Declaration: Function Utime (path : pathstr; utim : utimbuf) : Boolean;

Description: Utime sets the access and modification times of a file. the utimbuf record contains 2 fields, actime, and modtime, both of type Longint. They should be filled with an epoch-like time, specifying, respectively, the last access time, and the last modification time. For some filesystem (most notably, FAT), these times are the same.

Errors: Errors are returned in LinuxError.

**sys\_eaccess**One of the directories in Path has no search (=execute) permission.

**sys\_enoent**A directory entry in Path does not exist or is a symbolic link pointing to a non-existent directory.



Other errors may occur, but aren't documented.

See also: GetEpochTime (198), Chown (173), Access (168), utime (0 2)

**Listing:** linuxex/ex25.pp

---

**Program** Example25;

*{ Program to demonstrate the UTime function . }*

**Uses** linux ;

**Var** utim : utimbuf ;  
       year , month , day , hour , minute , second : Word ;

**begin**  
   *{ Set access and modification time of executable source }*  
   GetTime ( hour , minute , second ) ;  
   GetDate ( year , month , day ) ;  
   utim . actime := LocalToEpoch ( year , month , day , hour , minute , second ) ;  
   utim . modtime := utim . actime ;  
   **if not** Utime ( 'ex25.pp' , utim ) **then**  
     **writeln** ( ' Call to UTime failed ! ' )  
   **else**  
     **begin**  
       **Write** ( ' Set access and modification times to : ' ) ;  
       **Write** ( Hour : 2 , ':' , minute : 2 , ':' , second , ' , ' ) ;  
       **Writeln** ( Day : 2 , '/' , month : 2 , '/' , year : 4 ) ;  
     **end** ;  
**end.**

---

## WaitPid

**Declaration:** Function WaitPid (Pid : longint; Status : pointer; Options : Integer)  
       : Longint;

**Description:** WaitPid waits for a child process with process ID Pid to exit. The value of Pid can be one of the following:

**Pid < -1** Causes WaitPid to wait for any child process whose process group ID equals the absolute value of pid.

**Pid = -1** Causes WaitPid to wait for any child process.

**Pid = 0** Causes WaitPid to wait for any child process whose process group ID equals the one of the calling process.

**Pid > 0** Causes WaitPid to wait for the child whose process ID equals the value of Pid.

The Options parameter can be used to specify further how WaitPid behaves:

**WNOHANG** Causes Waitpid to return immediately if no child has exited.

**WUNTRACED** Causes WaitPid to return also for children which are stopped, but whose status has not yet been reported.

Upon return, it returns the exit status of the process, or -1 in case of failure.

**Errors:** Errors are returned in LinuxError.

See also: Fork (194), Execve (183), waitpid (2)

For an example, see Fork (194).

### WritePort

**Declaration:** `Procedure WritePort (Port : Longint; Value : Byte); Procedure WritePort (Port : Longint; Value : Word); Procedure WritePort (Port : Longint; Value : Longint);`

**Description:** WritePort writes Value – 1 byte, Word or longint – to port Port.

**Note:** You need permission to write to a port. This permission can be set with root permission with the IOperm call.

**Errors:** In case of an error (not enough permissions to write to this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

**See also:** IOperm (204), WritePortB (233), WritePortL (233), WritePortW (233), ReadPortB (217), ReadPortL (217), ReadPortW (218)

### WritePortB

**Declaration:** `Procedure WritePortB (Port : Longint; Value : Byte); Procedure WritePortB (Port : Longint; Var Buf; Count: longint);`

**Description:** The first form of WritePortB writes 1 byte to port Port. The second form writes Count bytes from Buf to port Port.

**Note:** You need permission to write to a port. This permission can be set with root permission with the IOperm call.

**Errors:** In case of an error (not enough permissions to write to this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

**See also:** IOperm (204), WritePort (233), WritePortL (233), WritePortW (233), ReadPortB (217), ReadPortL (217), ReadPortW (218)

### WritePortL

**Declaration:** `Procedure WritePortL (Port : Longint; Value : Longint); Procedure WritePortL (Port : Longint; Var Buf; Count: longint);`

**Description:** The first form of WritePortB writes 1 byte to port Port. The second form writes Count bytes from Buf to port Port.

**Note:** You need permission to write to a port. This permission can be set with root permission with the IOperm call.

**Errors:** In case of an error (not enough permissions to write to this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

**See also:** IOperm (204), WritePort (233), WritePortB (233), WritePortW (233), ReadPortB (217), ReadPortL (217), ReadPortW (218)

### WritePortW

**Declaration:** `Procedure WritePortW (Port : Longint; Var Buf; Count: longint); Procedure WritePortW (Port : Longint; Value : Word);`

**Description:** The first form of `WritePortB` writes 1 byte to port `Port`. The second form writes `Count` bytes from `Buf` to port `Port`.

**Note:** You need permission to write to a port. This permission can be set with root permission with the `IOperm` call.

**Errors:** In case of an error (not enough permissions to write to this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

**See also:** `IOperm` (204), `WritePort` (233), `WritePortL` (233), `WritePortB` (233), `ReadPortB` (217), `ReadPortL` (217), `ReadPortW` (218)

# Chapter 12

## The MATH unit

This chapter describes the `math` unit. The `math` unit was initially written by Florian Klaempfl. It provides mathematical functions which aren't covered by the system unit.

This chapter starts out with a definition of all types and constants that are defined, after which an overview is presented of the available functions, grouped by category, and the last part contains a complete explanation of each function.

The following things must be taken into account when using this unit:

1. This unit is compiled in Object Pascal mode so all `integers` are 32 bit.
2. Some overloaded functions exist for data arrays of integers and floats. When using the address operator (`@`) to pass an array of data to such a function, make sure the address is typecasted to the right type, or turn on the 'typed address operator' feature. failing to do so, will cause the compiler not be able to decide which function you want to call.

### 12.1 Constants and types

The following types are defined in the `math` unit:

```
Type
  Float = Extended;
  PFloat = ^Float
```

All calculations are done with the `Float` type. This allows to recompile the unit with a different float type to obtain a desired precision. The pointer type is used in functions that accept an array of values of arbitrary length.

```
Type
  TPaymentTime = (PTEndOfPeriod, PTStartOfPeriod);
```

`TPaymentTime` is used in the financial calculations.

```
Type
  EInvalidArgument = Class(EMathError);
```

The `EInvalidArgument` exception is used to report invalid arguments.

## 12.2 Function list by category

What follows is a listing of the available functions, grouped by category. For each function there is a reference to the page where you can find the function.

### Min/max determination

Functions to determine the minimum or maximum of numbers:

Name	Description	Page
max	Maximum of 2 values	249
maxIntValue	Maximum of an array of integer values	250
maxvalue	Maximum of an array of values	250
min	Minimum of 2 values	253
minIntValue	Minimum of an array of integer values	253
minvalue	Minimum of an array of values	254

### Angle conversion

Name	Description	Page
cycletorad	convert cycles to radians	242
degtograd	convert degrees to grads	243
degtorad	convert degrees to radians	243
gradtodeg	convert grads to degrees	245
gradtorad	convert grads to radians	245
radto cycle	convert radians to cycles	258
radtodeg	convert radians to degrees	258
radtograd	convert radians to grads	259

### Trigonometric functions

Name	Description	Page
arccos	calculate reverse cosine	238
arcsin	calculate reverse sine	239
arctan2	calculate reverse tangent	240
cotan	calculate cotangent	242
sincos	calculate sine and cosine	260
tan	calculate tangent	264

**Hyperbolic functions**

Name	Description	Page
arcosh	calculate reverse hyperbolic cosine	238
arsinh	calculate reverse hyperbolic sine	240
artanh	calculate reverse hyperbolic tangent	241
cosh	calculate hyperbolic cosine	242
sinh	calculate hyperbolic sine	261
tanh	calculate hyperbolic tangent	264

**Exponential and logarithmic functions**

Name	Description	Page
intpower	Raise float to integer power	246
ldexp	Calculate $2^p x$	247
lnxp1	calculate $\log(x+1)$	247
log10	calculate 10-base log	248
log2	calculate 2-base log	248
logn	calculate N-base log	249
power	raise float to arbitrary power	257

**Number converting**

Name	Description	Page
ceil	Round to infinity	241
floor	Round to minus infinity	244
frexp	Return mantissa and exponent	244

**Statistical functions**

Name	Description	Page
mean	Mean of values	251
meanandstddev	Mean and standard deviation of values	252
momentskewkurtosis	Moments, skew and kurtosis	255
popnstddev	Population standard deviation	256
popnvariance	Population variance	257
randg	Gaussian distributed random value	259
stddev	Standard deviation	261
sum	Sum of values	262
sumofsquares	Sum of squared values	262

sumsandsquares	Sum of values and squared values	263
totalvariance	Total variance of values	265
variance	variance of values	265

### Geometrical functions

Name	Description	Page
hypot	Hypotenuse of triangle	246
norm	Euclidian norm	255

## 12.3 Functions and Procedures

### arccos

Declaration: `Function arccos(x : float) : float;`

Description: `Arccos` returns the inverse cosine of its argument `x`. The argument `x` should lie between -1 and 1 (borders included).

Errors: If the argument `x` is not in the allowed range, an `EInvalidArgument` exception is raised.

See also: `arcsin` (239), `arcosh` (238), `arsinh` (240), `artanh` (241)

**Listing:** `mathex/ex1.pp`

---

```
Program Example1;

{ Program to demonstrate the arccos function. }

Uses math;

Procedure WriteRadDeg(X : float);

begin
  WriteLn(X:8:5, ' rad = ', radtodeg(x):8:5, ' degrees.')
end;

begin
  WriteRadDeg ( arccos (1));
  WriteRadDeg ( arccos (sqrt (3)/2));
  WriteRadDeg ( arccos (sqrt (2)/2));
  WriteRadDeg ( arccos (1/2));
  WriteRadDeg ( arccos (0));
  WriteRadDeg ( arccos (-1));
end.
```

---

### arcosh

Declaration: `Function arcosh(x : float) : float; Function arccosh(x : float) : float;`

**Description:** `Arcosh` returns the inverse hyperbolic cosine of its argument `x`. The argument `x` should be larger than 1.

The `arccosh` variant of this function is supplied for Delphi compatibility.

**Errors:** If the argument `x` is not in the allowed range, an `EInvalidArgument` exception is raised.

See also: `cosh` (242), `sinh` (261), `arcsin` (239), `arsinh` (240), `artanh` (241), `tanh` (264)

**Listing:** `mathex/ex3.pp`

---

```
Program Example3;

{ Program to demonstrate the arcosh function . }

Uses math;

begin
    WriteLn ( arcosh ( 1 ));
    WriteLn ( arcosh ( 2 ));
end.
```

---

### **arcsin**

**Declaration:** `Function arcsin(x : float) : float;`

**Description:** `Arcsin` returns the inverse sine of its argument `x`. The argument `x` should lie between -1 and 1.

**Errors:** If the argument `x` is not in the allowed range, an `EInvalidArgument` exception is raised.

See also: `arccos` (238), `arcosh` (238), `arsinh` (240), `artanh` (241)

**Listing:** `mathex/ex2.pp`

---

```
Program Example1;

{ Program to demonstrate the arcsin function . }

Uses math;

    Procedure WriteRadDeg(X : float );

    begin
        WriteLn (X:8:5, ' rad = ', radtodeg(x):8:5, ' degrees. ' )
    end;

begin
    WriteRadDeg ( arcsin ( 1 ));
    WriteRadDeg ( arcsin ( sqrt ( 3 ) / 2 ));
    WriteRadDeg ( arcsin ( sqrt ( 2 ) / 2 ));
    WriteRadDeg ( arcsin ( 1 / 2 ));
    WriteRadDeg ( arcsin ( 0 ));
    WriteRadDeg ( arcsin ( - 1 ));
end.
```

---



**arctan2**

Declaration: `Function arctan2(x,y : float) : float;`

Description: `arctan2` calculates `arctan(y/x)`, and returns an angle in the correct quadrant. The returned angle will be in the range  $-\pi$  to  $\pi$  radians. The values of `x` and `y` must be between  $-2^{64}$  and  $2^{64}$ , moreover `x` should be different from zero.

On Intel systems this function is implemented with the native intel `fpatan` instruction.

Errors: If `x` is zero, an overflow error will occur.

See also: `arccos` (238), `arcosh` (238), `arsinh` (240), `artanh` (241)

**Listing:** `mathex/ex6.pp`

---

**Program** `Example6;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the arctan2 function . }*

**Uses** `math;`

**Procedure** `WriteRadDeg(X : float );`

**begin**

`Writeln(X:8:5, ' rad = ', radtodeg(x):8:5, ' degrees.')`

**end;**

**begin**

`WriteRadDeg ( arctan2 (1,1));`

**end.**

---

**arsinh**

Declaration: `Function arsinh(x : float) : float; Function arcsinh(x : float) : float;`

Description: `arsinh` returns the inverse hyperbolic sine of its argument `x`.

The `arcsinh` variant of this function is supplied for Delphicompatibility.

Errors: None.

See also: `arcosh` (238), `arccos` (238), `arcsin` (239), `artanh` (241)

**Listing:** `mathex/ex4.pp`

---

**Program** `Example4;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the arsinh function . }*

**Uses** `math;`

**begin**

`Writeln ( arsinh (0));`

`Writeln ( arsinh (1));`

**end.**

---

**artanh**

Declaration: `Function artanh(x : float) : float; Function arctanh(x : float) : float;`

Description: `artanh` returns the inverse hyperbolic tangent of its argument `x`, where `x` should lie in the interval `[-1,1]`, borders included.

The `arctanh` variant of this function is supplied for Delphi compatibility.

Errors: In case `x` is not in the interval `[-1,1]`, an `EInvalidArgument` exception is raised.

See also: `arcosh` (238), `arccos` (238), `arcsin` (239), `artanh` (241)

Errors:

See also:

**Listing:** `mathex/ex5.pp`

---

```
Program Example5;

{ Program to demonstrate the artanh function . }

Uses math;

begin
  Writeln ( artanh (0));
  Writeln ( artanh (0.5));
end.
```

---

**ceil**

Declaration: `Function ceil(x : float) : longint;`

Description: `Ceil` returns the lowest integer number greater than or equal to `x`. The absolute value of `x` should be less than `maxint`.

Errors: If the absolute value of `x` is larger than `maxint`, an overflow error will occur.

See also: `floor` (244)

**Listing:** `mathex/ex7.pp`

---

```
Program Example7;

{ Program to demonstrate the Ceil function . }

Uses math;

begin
  Writeln ( Ceil (-3.7)); // should be -3
  Writeln ( Ceil (3.7)); // should be 4
  Writeln ( Ceil (-4.0)); // should be -4
end.
```

---

**cosh**

Declaration: `Function cosh(x : float) : float;`

Description: `Cosh` returns the hyperbolic cosine of its argument `x`.

Errors: None.

See also: `arcosh` (238), `sinh` (261), `arsinh` (240)

**Listing:** `mathex/ex8.pp`

---

```
Program Example8;

{ Program to demonstrate the cosh function . }

Uses math;

begin
    Writeln ( Cosh (0));
    Writeln ( Cosh (1));
end.
```

---

**cotan**

Declaration: `Function cotan(x : float) : float;`

Description: `Cotan` returns the cotangent of its argument `x`. `x` should be different from zero.

Errors: If `x` is zero then a overflow error will occur.

See also: `tanh` (264)

**Listing:** `mathex/ex9.pp`

---

```
Program Example9;

{ Program to demonstrate the cotan function . }

Uses math;

begin
    writeln ( cotan ( pi / 2 ));
    Writeln ( cotan ( pi / 3 ));
    Writeln ( cotan ( pi / 4 ));
end.
```

---

**cycletorad**

Declaration: `Function cycletorad(cycle : float) : float;`

Description: `Cycletorad` transforms its argument `cycle` (an angle expressed in cycles) to radians. (1 cycle is  $2\pi$  radians).

Errors: None.

See also: `degtograd` (243), `degtorad` (243), `radtodeg` (258), `radtograd` (259), `radtcycle` (258)

**Listing:** mathex/ex10.pp

---

```
Program Example10;  
  
  { Program to demonstrate the cycletorad function . }  
  
Uses math;  
  
begin  
  writeln(cos(cycletorad (1/6))); // Should print 1/2  
  writeln(cos(cycletorad (1/8))); // should be sqrt(2)/2  
end.
```

---

**degtograd**

Declaration: `Function degtograd(deg : float) : float;`

Description: Degtograd transforms it's argument deg (an angle in degrees) to grads.  
(90 degrees is 100 grad.)

Errors: None.

See also: cycletorad (242), degtorad (243), radtodeg (258), radtograd (259), radtcycle (258)

**Listing:** mathex/ex11.pp

---

```
Program Example11;  
  
  { Program to demonstrate the degtograd function . }  
  
Uses math;  
  
begin  
  writeln(degtograd (90));  
  writeln(degtograd (180));  
  writeln(degtograd (270))  
end.
```

---

**degtorad**

Declaration: `Function degtorad(deg : float) : float;`

Description: Degtorad converts it's argument deg (an angle in degrees) to radians.  
(pi radians is 180 degrees)

Errors: None.

See also: cycletorad (242), degtograd (243), radtodeg (258), radtograd (259), radtcycle (258)

**Listing:** mathex/ex12.pp

---

```
Program Example12;  
  
  { Program to demonstrate the degtorad function . }
```

**Uses** math;

```
begin
  writeln (degtorad (45));
  writeln (degtorad (90));
  writeln (degtorad (180));
  writeln (degtorad (270));
  writeln (degtorad (360));
end.
```

---

## **floor**

Declaration: Function floor(x : float) : longint;

Description: Floor returns the largest integer smaller than or equal to x. The absolute value of x should be less than maxint.

Errors: If x is larger than maxint, an overflow will occur.

See also: ceil (241)

**Listing:** mathex/ex13.pp

---

```
Program Example13;

{ Program to demonstrate the floor function. }

Uses math;

begin
  Writeln (Ceil (-3.7)); // should be -4
  Writeln (Ceil (3.7));  // should be 3
  Writeln (Ceil (-4.0)); // should be -4
end.
```

---

## **frexp**

Declaration: Procedure frexp(x : float; var mantissa, exponent : float);

Description: Frexp returns the mantissa and exponent of its argument x in mantissa and exponent.

Errors: None

See also:

**Listing:** mathex/ex14.pp

---

```
Program Example14;

{ Program to demonstrate the frexp function. }

Uses math;

Procedure dofrep (Const X : extended);

var man : extended;
```

```
    exp: integer;  
  
begin  
  man:=0;  
  exp:=0;  
  frexp(x,man,exp);  
  write(x,' has ');  
  Writeln(' mantissa ',man,' and exponent ',exp);  
end;  
  
begin  
  //  dofrep(1.00);  
  dofrep(1.02e-1);  
  dofrep(1.03e-2);  
  dofrep(1.02e1);  
  dofrep(1.03e2);  
end.
```

---

### gradtodeg

Declaration: Function gradtodeg(grad : float) : float;

Description: Gradtodeg converts its argument grad (an angle in grads) to degrees.

(100 grad is 90 degrees)

Errors: None.

See also: cycletorad (242), degtograd (243), radtodeg (258), radtograd (259), radtcycle (258), gradtorad (245)

**Listing:** mathex/ex15.pp

---

```
Program Example15;  
  
{ Program to demonstrate the gradtodeg function. }  
  
Uses math;  
  
begin  
  writeln ( gradtodeg (100));  
  writeln ( gradtodeg (200));  
  writeln ( gradtodeg (300));  
end.
```

---

### gradtorad

Declaration: Function gradtorad(grad : float) : float;

Description: Gradtorad converts its argument grad (an angle in grads) to radians.

(200 grad is pi degrees).

Errors: None.

See also: cycletorad (242), degtograd (243), radtodeg (258), radtograd (259), radtcycle (258), gradtodeg (245)

**Listing:** mathex/ex16.pp

---

```
Program Example16;  
  
  { Program to demonstrate the gradtorad function . }  
  
Uses math;  
  
begin  
  writeln ( gradtorad (100));  
  writeln ( gradtorad (200));  
  writeln ( gradtorad (300));  
end.
```

---

### hypot

Declaration: `Function hypot(x,y : float) : float;`

Description: `Hypot` returns the hypotenuse of the triangle where the sides adjacent to the square angle have lengths `x` and `y`.

The function uses Pythagoras' rule for this.

Errors: None.

See also:

**Listing:** mathex/ex17.pp

---

```
Program Example17;  
  
  { Program to demonstrate the hypot function . }  
  
Uses math;  
  
begin  
  Writeln (hypot (3,4)); // should be 5  
end.
```

---

### intpower

Declaration: `Function intpower(base : float;exponent : longint) : float;`

Description: `Intpower` returns `base` to the power `exponent`, where `exponent` is an integer value.

Errors: If `base` is zero and the `exponent` is negative, then an overflow error will occur.

See also: `power` (257)

**Listing:** mathex/ex18.pp

---

```
Program Example18;  
  
  { Program to demonstrate the intpower function . }  
  
Uses math;
```

```
Procedure DoIntpower (X : extended; Pow : Integer);  
  
begin  
  writeln (X:8:4, '^', Pow:2, ' = ', intpower(X,pow):8:4);  
end;  
  
begin  
  dointpower (0.0,0);  
  dointpower (1.0,0);  
  dointpower (2.0,5);  
  dointpower (4.0,3);  
  dointpower (2.0,-1);  
  dointpower (2.0,-2);  
  dointpower (-2.0,4);  
  dointpower (-4.0,3);  
end.
```

---

### Idexp

Declaration: `Function Idexp(x : float;p : longint) : float;`

Description: `Idexp` returns  $2^p x$ .

Errors: None.

See also: `Inxp1` (247), `log10` (248), `log2` (248), `logn` (249)

**Listing:** mathex/ex19.pp

---

```
Program Example19;  
  
{ Program to demonstrate the Idexp function. }  
  
Uses math;  
  
begin  
  writeln (Idexp (2,4):8:4);  
  writeln (Idexp (0.5,3):8:4);  
end.
```

---

### Inxp1

Declaration: `Function Inxp1(x : float) : float;`

Description: `Inxp1` returns the natural logarithm of  $1+X$ . The result is more precise for small values of  $x$ .  $x$  should be larger than  $-1$ .

Errors: If  $x \leq -1$  then an `EInvalidArgument` exception will be raised.

See also: `Idexp` (247), `log10` (248), `log2` (248), `logn` (249)

**Listing:** mathex/ex20.pp

---

```
Program Example20;
```



```
{ Program to demonstrate the lnxp1 function . }
```

```
Uses math;
```

```
begin
```

```
  writeln (lnxp1 (0));  
  writeln (lnxp1 (0.5));  
  writeln (lnxp1 (1));
```

```
end.
```

---

## log10

Declaration: `Function log10(x : float) : float;`

Description: `Log10` returns the 10-base logarithm of X.

Errors: If x is less than or equal to 0 an 'invalid fpu operation' error will occur.

See also: `ldexp` (247), `lnxp1` (247), `log2` (248), `logn` (249)

**Listing:** mathex/ex21.pp

---

**Program** Example21;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the log10 function . }
```

```
Uses math;
```

```
begin
```

```
  Writeln (Log10 (10):8:4);  
  Writeln (Log10 (100):8:4);  
  Writeln (Log10 (1000):8:4);  
  Writeln (Log10 (1):8:4);  
  Writeln (Log10 (0.1):8:4);  
  Writeln (Log10 (0.01):8:4);  
  Writeln (Log10 (0.001):8:4);
```

```
end.
```

---

## log2

Declaration: `Function log2(x : float) : float;`

Description: `Log2` returns the 2-base logarithm of X.

Errors: If x is less than or equal to 0 an 'invalid fpu operation' error will occur.

See also: `ldexp` (247), `lnxp1` (247), `log10` (248), `logn` (249)

**Listing:** mathex/ex22.pp

---

**Program** Example22;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the log2 function . }
```

```
Uses math;
```

```
begin
  Writeln (Log2 (2):8:4);
  Writeln (Log2 (4):8:4);
  Writeln (Log2 (8):8:4);
  Writeln (Log2 (1):8:4);
  Writeln (Log2 (0.5):8:4);
  Writeln (Log2 (0.25):8:4);
  Writeln (Log2 (0.125):8:4);
end.
```

---

### **logn**

Declaration: Function logn(n,x : float) : float;

Description: Logn returns the n-base logarithm of X.

Errors: If x is less than or equal to 0 an 'invalid fpu operation' error will occur.

See also: ldexp (247), lnxp1 (247), log10 (248), log2 (248)

**Listing:** mathex/ex23.pp

---

```
Program Example23;

{ Program to demonstrate the logn function . }

Uses math;

begin
  Writeln (Logn (3,4):8:4);
  Writeln (Logn (2,4):8:4);
  Writeln (Logn (6,9):8:4);
  Writeln (Logn (exp (1), exp (1)):8:4);
  Writeln (Logn (0.5,1):8:4);
  Writeln (Logn (0.25,3):8:4);
  Writeln (Logn (0.125,5):8:4);
end.
```

---

### **max**

Declaration: Function max(Int1,Int2:Cardinal):Cardinal; Function max(Int1,Int2:Integer):Integer;

Description: Max returns the maximum of Int1 and Int2.

Errors: None.

See also: min (253), maxIntValue (250), maxvalue (250)

**Listing:** mathex/ex24.pp

---

```
Program Example24;

{ Program to demonstrate the max function . }

Uses math;
```

```
Var
  A,B : Cardinal;

begin
  A:=1;b:=2;
  writeln (max(a,b));
end.
```

---

### maxIntValue

Declaration: `function MaxIntValue(const Data: array of Integer): Integer;`

Description: `MaxIntValue` returns the largest integer out of the `Data` array.

This function is provided for Delphicompatibility, use the `maxvalue` (250) function instead.

Errors: None.

See also: `maxvalue` (250), `minvalue` (254), `minIntValue` (253)

**Listing:** `mathex/ex25.pp`

---

```
Program Example25;

{ Program to demonstrate the MaxIntValue function . }

{ Make sure integer is 32 bit }
{$mode objfpc}

Uses math;

Type
  TExArray = Array[1..100] of Integer;

Var
  I : Integer;
  ExArray : TExArray;

begin
  Randomize;
  for I:=1 to 100 do
    ExArray[I]:=Random(I)-Random(100);
  Writeln (MaxIntValue ( ExArray ));
end.
```

---

### maxvalue

Declaration: `Function maxvalue(const data : array of float) : float;` `Function maxvalue(const data : array of Integer) : Integer;` `Function maxvalue(const data : PFloat; Const N : Integer) : float;` `Function maxvalue(const data : PInteger; Const N : Integer) : Integer;`

Description: `Maxvalue` returns the largest value in the `data` array with integer or float values. The return value has the same type as the elements of the array.

The third and fourth forms accept a pointer to an array of `N` integer or float values.

Errors: None.

See also: `maxIntValue` (250), `minvalue` (254), `minIntValue` (253)

**Listing:** `mathex/ex26.pp`

---

**Program** `Example26`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the MaxValue function . }*

*{ Make sure integer is 32 bit }*  
*{ \$mode objfpc }*

**Uses** `math`;

**Type**

`TExFloatArray = Array[1..100] of Float;`  
`TExIntArray = Array[1..100] of Integer;`

**Var**

`I : Integer;`  
`ExFloatArray : TExFloatArray;`  
`ExIntArray : TExIntArray;`  
`AFloatArray : PFloat;`  
`AlntArray : PInteger;`

**begin**

`Randomize;`  
`AFloatArray := @ExFloatArray[1];`  
`AlntArray := @ExIntArray[1];`  
**for** `I:=1 to 100 do`  
    `ExFloatArray[I] := (Random-Random)*100;`  
**for** `I:=1 to 100 do`  
    `ExIntArray[I] := Random(I)-Random(100);`  
`Writeln('Max Float : ', MaxValue(ExFloatArray):8:4);`  
`Writeln('Max Float (b) : ', MaxValue(AFloatArray,100):8:4);`  
`Writeln('Max Integer : ', MaxValue(ExIntArray):8);`  
`Writeln('Max Integer (b) : ', MaxValue(AlntArray,100):8);`

**end.**

---

**mean**

**Declaration:** `Function mean(const data : array of float) : float;` `Function mean(const data : PFloat; Const N : longint) : float;`

**Description:** `Mean` returns the average value of `data`.

The second form accepts a pointer to an array of `N` values.

Errors: None.

See also: `meanandstddev` (252), `momentskewkurtosis` (255), `sum` (262)

**Listing:** `mathex/ex27.pp`

---

**Program** `Example27`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Mean function . }*

**Uses** math;

**Type**

TExArray = **Array**[1..100] **of** Float;

**Var**

I : Integer;  
ExArray : TExArray;

**begin**

Randomize;  
for I:=1 to 100 do  
  ExArray[I]:=(~~Random~~-Random)\*100;  
  Writeln('Max : ', MaxValue(ExArray):8:4);  
  Writeln('Min : ', MinValue(ExArray):8:4);  
  Writeln('Mean : ', Mean(ExArray):8:4);  
  Writeln('Mean (b) : ', Mean(@ExArray[1],100):8:4);

**end.**

---

### meanandstddev

**Declaration:** Procedure meanandstddev(const data : array of float; var mean,stddev : float); procedure meanandstddev(const data : PFloat; Const N : Longint;var mean,stddev : float);

**Description:** meanandstddev calculates the mean and standard deviation of data and returns the result in mean and stddev, respectively. Stddev is zero if there is only one value.

The second form accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

**Errors:** None.

See also: mean (251),sum (262), sumofsquares (262), momentskewkurtosis (255)

**Listing:** mathex/ex28.pp

---

**Program** Example28;

{ Program to demonstrate the Meanandstddev function . }

**Uses** math;

**Type**

TExArray = **Array**[1..100] **of** Extended;

**Var**

I : Integer;  
ExArray : TExArray;  
Mean, stddev : Extended;

**begin**

Randomize;  
for I:=1 to 100 do  
  ExArray[I]:=(~~Random~~-Random)\*100;  
  MeanAndStdDev(ExArray, Mean, StdDev);  
  Writeln('Mean : ', Mean:8:4);  
  Writeln('StdDev : ', StdDev:8:4);

```
MeanAndStdDev( @ExArray[1],100, Mean, StdDev );  
Writeln ( 'Mean    ( b ) : ',Mean:8:4);  
Writeln ( 'StdDev  ( b ) : ',StdDev:8:4);  
end.
```

---

### min

Declaration: `Function min(Int1,Int2:Cardinal):Cardinal; Function min(Int1,Int2:Integer):Integer;`

Description: min returns the smallest value of Int1 and Int2;

Errors: None.

See also: max (249)

**Listing:** mathex/ex29.pp

---

```
Program Example29;  
  
{ Program to demonstrate the min function . }  
  
Uses math;  
  
Var  
  A,B : Cardinal;  
  
begin  
  A:=1;b:=2;  
  writeln ( min(a,b));  
end.
```

---

### minIntValue

Declaration: `Function minIntValue(const Data: array of Integer): Integer;`

Description: MinIntvalue returns the smallest value in the Data array.

This function is provided for Delphicompatibility, use minvalue instead.

Errors: None

See also: minvalue (254), maxIntValue (250), maxvalue (250)

**Listing:** mathex/ex30.pp

---

```
Program Example30;  
  
{ Program to demonstrate the MinIntValue function . }  
  
{ Make sure integer is 32 bit }  
{ $mode objfpc }  
  
Uses math;  
  
Type  
  TExArray = Array[1..100] of Integer;
```

```

Var
  I : Integer;
  ExArray : TExArray;

begin
  Randomize;
  for I:=1 to 100 do
    ExArray[I]:=Random(I)-Random(100);
  Writeln ( MinIntValue ( ExArray ));
end.

```

---

### minvalue

Declaration: Function minvalue(const data : array of float) : float; Function minvalue(const data : array of Integer) : Integer; Function minvalue(const data : PFloat; Const N : Integer) : float; Function minvalue(const data : PInteger; Const N : Integer) : Integer;

Description: Minvalue returns the smallest value in the data array with integer or float values. The return value has the same type as the elements of the array.

The third and fourth forms accept a pointer to an array of N integer or float values.

Errors: None.

See also: maxIntValue (250), maxvalue (250), minIntValue (253)

**Listing:** mathex/ex31.pp

---

**Program** Example26;

```

{ Program to demonstrate the MinValue function . }

{ Make sure integer is 32 bit }
{$mode objfpc}

```

**Uses** math;

#### Type

```

TExFloatArray = Array [1..100] of Float;
TExIntArray = Array [1..100] of Integer;

```

#### Var

```

I : Integer;
ExFloatArray : TExFloatArray;
AFloatArray : PFloat;
ExIntArray : TExIntArray;
AIntArray : PInteger;

```

#### begin

```

Randomize;
AFloatArray := @ExFloatArray[0];
AIntArray := @ExIntArray[0];
for I:=1 to 100 do
  ExFloatArray[I] := (Random-Random)*100;
for I:=1 to 100 do
  ExIntArray[I] := Random(I)-Random(100);
Writeln ( ' Min Float      : ' , MinValue ( ExFloatArray ):8:4);

```

```

Writeln ( 'Min Float    ( b ) : ' , MinValue ( AFloatArray , 100 ) : 8 : 4 );
Writeln ( 'Min Integer   : ' , MinValue ( ExIntArray ) : 8 );
Writeln ( 'Min Integer ( b ) : ' , MinValue ( AintArray , 100 ) : 8 );
end.

```

---

### **momentskewkurtosis**

**Declaration:** `procedure momentskewkurtosis(const data : array of float; var m1,m2,m3,m4,skew,kurtosis : float); procedure momentskewkurtosis(const data : PFloat; Const N : Integer; var m1,m2,m3,m4,skew,kurtosis : float);`

**Description:** `momentskewkurtosis` calculates the 4 first moments of the distribution of values in data and returns them in m1,m2,m3 and m4, as well as the skew and kurtosis.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `mean` (251), `meanandstddev` (252)

**Listing:** `mathex/ex32.pp`

---

**Program** `Example32;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the momentskewkurtosis function . }*

**Uses** `math;`

**Var**

```

  DistArray : Array [1..1000] of float ;
  l : longint ;
  m1,m2,m3,m4,skew,kurtosis : float ;

```

**begin**

```

  randomize ;
  for l:=1 to 1000 do
    distarray [ l ]:= random ;
  momentskewkurtosis ( DistArray , m1,m2,m3,m4,skew,kurtosis );

```

```

  Writeln ( '1 st moment : ' , m1 : 8 : 6 );
  Writeln ( '2 nd moment : ' , m2 : 8 : 6 );
  Writeln ( '3 rd moment : ' , m3 : 8 : 6 );
  Writeln ( '4 th moment : ' , m4 : 8 : 6 );
  Writeln ( 'Skew       : ' , skew : 8 : 6 );
  Writeln ( 'kurtosis   : ' , kurtosis : 8 : 6 );

```

**end.**

---

### **norm**

**Declaration:** `Function norm(const data : array of float) : float; Function norm(const data : PFloat; Const N : Integer) : float;`

**Description:** `Norm` calculates the Euclidian norm of the array of data. This equals `sqrt ( sumofsquares ( data ) )`.

The second form accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `sumofsquares` (262)



**Listing:** mathex/ex33.pp

---

```
Program Example33;

{ Program to demonstrate the norm function . }

Uses math;

Type
  TVector = Array[1..10] of Float;

Var
  AVector : TVector;
  I : longint;

begin
  for I:=1 to 10 do
    AVector[I] := Random;
  Writeln (Norm(AVector));
end.
```

---

### popnstddev

**Declaration:** Function popnstddev(const data : array of float) : float; Function popnstddev(const data : PFloat; Const N : Integer) : float;

**Description:** Popnstddev returns the square root of the population variance of the values in the Data array. It returns zero if there is only one value.

The second form of this function accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

**Errors:** None.

See also: popnvariance (257), mean (251), meanandstddev (252), stddev (261), momentskewkurtosis (255)

**Listing:** mathex/ex35.pp

---

```
Program Example35;

{ Program to demonstrate the PopnStdDev function . }

Uses Math;

Type
  TExArray = Array[1..100] of Float;

Var
  I : Integer;
  ExArray : TExArray;

begin
  Randomize;
  for I:=1 to 100 do
    ExArray[I] := (Random-Random)*100;
  Writeln ( 'Max           : ' , MaxValue( ExArray ):8:4);
  Writeln ( 'Min           : ' , MinValue( ExArray ):8:4);
```

```
    Writeln('Pop. stddev.      : ', PopnStdDev(ExArray):8:4);  
    Writeln('Pop. stddev. ( b ) : ', PopnStdDev(@ExArray[1],100):8:4);  
end.
```

---

### popnvariance

Declaration: Function popnvariance(const data : array of float) : float; Function popnvariance(const data : PFloat; Const N : Integer) : float;

Description: Popnvariance returns the square root of the population variance of the values in the Data array. It returns zero if there is only one value.

The second form of this function accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

Errors: None.

See also: popnstddev (256), mean (251), meanandstddev (252), stddev (261), momentskewkurtosis (255)

**Listing:** mathex/ex36.pp

---

```
Program Example36;  
  
  { Program to demonstrate the PopnVariance function. }  
  
Uses math;  
  
Type  
  TExArray = Array[1..100] of Float;  
  
Var  
  I : Integer;  
  ExArray : TExArray;  
  
begin  
  Randomize;  
  for I:=1 to 100 do  
    ExArray[I]:= (Random-Random)*100;  
  Writeln('Max          : ', MaxValue(ExArray):8:4);  
  Writeln('Min          : ', MinValue(ExArray):8:4);  
  Writeln('Pop. var.      : ', PopnVariance(ExArray):8:4);  
  Writeln('Pop. var. ( b ) : ', PopnVariance(@ExArray[1],100):8:4);  
end.
```

---

### power

Declaration: Function power(base,exponent : float) : float;

Description: power raises base to the power power. This is equivalent to  $\exp(\text{power} \cdot \ln(\text{base}))$ . Therefore base should be non-negative.

Errors: None.

See also: intpower (246)

**Listing:** mathex/ex34.pp

---

```
Program Example34;  
  
{ Program to demonstrate the power function . }  
  
Uses Math;  
  
procedure dopower(x,y : float );  
  
begin  
    writeln (x:8:6, '^' ,y:8:6, ' = ' ,power(x,y):8:6)  
end;  
  
begin  
    dopower(2,2);  
    dopower(2,-2);  
    dopower(2,0.0);  
end.
```

---

### radtcycle

Declaration: `Function radtcycle(rad : float) : float;`

Description: Radtcycle converts its argument rad (an angle expressed in radians) to an angle in cycles.  
(1 cycle equals 2 pi radians)

Errors: None.

See also: degtograd (243), degtorad (243), radtodeg (258), radtograd (259), cycletorad (242)

**Listing:** mathex/ex37.pp

---

```
Program Example37;  
  
{ Program to demonstrate the radtcycle function . }  
  
Uses math;  
  
begin  
    writeln ( radtcycle (2*pi):8:6);  
    writeln ( radtcycle ( pi):8:6);  
    writeln ( radtcycle ( pi/2):8:6);  
end.
```

---

### radtodeg

Declaration: `Function radtodeg(rad : float) : float;`

Description: Radtodeg converts its argument rad (an angle expressed in radians) to an angle in degrees.  
(180 degrees equals pi radians)

Errors: None.

See also: degtograd (243), degtorad (243), radtcycle (258), radtograd (259), cycletorad (242)

**Listing:** mathex/ex38.pp

---

```
Program Example38;

{ Program to demonstrate the radtodeg function . }

Uses math;

begin
  writeln ( radtodeg (2*pi) :8:6);
  writeln ( radtodeg (pi) :8:6);
  writeln ( radtodeg (pi/2) :8:6);
end.
```

---

### **radtograd**

Declaration: `Function radtograd(rad : float) : float;`

Description: `Radtodeg` converts its argument `rad` (an angle expressed in radians) to an angle in grads.  
(200 grads equals pi radians)

Errors: None.

See also: `degtograd` (243), `degtorad` (243), `radtcycle` (258), `radtodeg` (258), `cycletorad` (242)

**Listing:** `mathex/ex39.pp`

---

```
Program Example39;

{ Program to demonstrate the radtograd function . }

Uses math;

begin
  writeln ( radtograd (2*pi) :8:6);
  writeln ( radtograd (pi) :8:6);
  writeln ( radtograd (pi/2) :8:6);
end.
```

---

### **randg**

Declaration: `Function randg(mean,stddev : float) : float;`

Description: `randg` returns a random number which - when produced in large quantities - has a Gaussian distribution with mean `mean` and standarddeviation `stddev`.

Errors: None.

See also: `mean` (251), `stddev` (261), `meanandstddev` (252)

**Listing:** `mathex/ex40.pp`

---

```
Program Example40;

{ Program to demonstrate the randg function . }
```

**Uses** Math;

**Type**

TExArray = **Array**[1..10000] **of** Float;

**Var**

I : Integer;  
ExArray : TExArray;  
Mean, stddev : Float;

**begin**

Randomize;  
**for** I:=1 **to** 10000 **do**  
    ExArray[I]:=Randg(1,0.2);  
MeanAndStdDev( ExArray , Mean, StdDev);  
**WriteLn**( ' Mean         : ' , Mean:8:4);  
**WriteLn**( ' StdDev       : ' , StdDev:8:4);

**end.**

---

## **sincos**

Declaration: `Procedure sincos(theta : float;var sinus,cosinus : float);`

Description: Sincos calculates the sine and cosine of the angle theta, and returns the result in sinus and cosinus.

On Intel hardware, This calculation will be faster than making 2 calls to calculate the sine and cosine separately.

Errors: None.

See also: arcsin (239), arccos (238).

**Listing:** mathex/ex41.pp

---

**Program** Example41;

*{ Program to demonstrate the sincos function . }*

**Uses** math;

**Procedure** dosincos ( Angle : Float );

**Var**

Sine, Cosine : Float;

**begin**

sincos ( angle , sine , cosine );  
**Write**( ' Angle : ' , Angle:8:6);  
**Write**( ' Sine : ' , sine:8:6);  
**Write**( ' Cosine : ' , cosine:8:6);

**end;**

**begin**

dosincos ( pi );  
dosincos ( pi /2);  
dosincos ( pi /3);  
dosincos ( pi /4);

```
dosincos ( pi / 6 );  
end.
```

---

### **sinh**

Declaration: `Function sinh(x : float) : float;`

Description: Sinh returns the hyperbolic sine of its argument x.

Errors:

See also: cosh (242), arsinh (240), tanh (264), artanh (241)

**Listing:** mathex/ex42.pp

---

```
Program Example42;  
  
{ Program to demonstrate the sinh function . }  
  
Uses math;  
  
begin  
  writeln ( sinh ( 0 ));  
  writeln ( sinh ( 1 ));  
  writeln ( sinh ( - 1 ));  
end.
```

---

### **stddev**

Declaration: `Function stddev(const data : array of float) : float; Function stddev(const data : PFloat; Const N : Integer) : float;`

Description: Stddev returns the standard deviation of the values in Data. It returns zero if there is only one value.

The second form of the function accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

Errors: None.

See also: mean (251), meanandstddev (252), variance (265), totalvariance (265)

**Listing:** mathex/ex43.pp

---

```
Program Example40;  
  
{ Program to demonstrate the stddev function . }  
  
Uses Math;  
  
Type  
  TExArray = Array [ 1 .. 10000 ] of Float;  
  
Var  
  I : Integer;  
  ExArray : TExArray;
```

```
begin
  Randomize;
  for I:=1 to 10000 do
    ExArray[I]:=Randg(1,0.2);
  Writeln('StdDev      : ', StdDev(ExArray):8:4);
  Writeln('StdDev (b) : ', StdDev(@ExArray[0],10000):8:4);
end.
```

---

### sum

Declaration: Function sum(const data : array of float) : float; Function sum(const data : PFloat; Const N : Integer) : float;

Description: Sum returns the sum of the values in the data array.

The second form of the function accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

Errors: None.

See also: sumofsquares (262), sumsandsquares (263), totalvariance (265) , variance (265)

**Listing:** mathex/ex44.pp

---

```
Program Example44;

{ Program to demonstrate the Sum function . }

Uses math;

Type
  TExArray = Array[1..100] of Float;

Var
  I : Integer;
  ExArray : TExArray;

begin
  Randomize;
  for I:=1 to 100 do
    ExArray[I]:=( Random-Random)*100;
  Writeln('Max      : ', MaxValue(ExArray):8:4);
  Writeln('Min      : ', MinValue(ExArray):8:4);
  Writeln('Sum       : ', Sum(ExArray):8:4);
  Writeln('Sum (b) : ', Sum(@ExArray[1],100):8:4);
end.
```

---

### sumofsquares

Declaration: Function sumofsquares(const data : array of float) : float; Function sumofsquares(const data : PFloat; Const N : Integer) : float;

Description: Sumofsquares returns the sum of the squares of the values in the data array.

The second form of the function accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

Errors: None.

See also: sum (262), sumsandsquares (263), totalvariance (265) , variance (265)

**Listing:** mathex/ex45.pp

---

```
Program Example45;

{ Program to demonstrate the SumOfSquares function . }

Uses math;

Type
  TExArray = Array[1..100] of Float;

Var
  I : Integer;
  ExArray : TExArray;

begin
  Randomize;
  for I:=1 to 100 do
    ExArray[I] := (Random-Random)*100;
  Writeln ( 'Max           : ' , MaxValue( ExArray ):8:4 );
  Writeln ( 'Min           : ' , MinValue( ExArray ):8:4 );
  Writeln ( 'Sum squares   : ' , SumOfSquares( ExArray ):8:4 );
  Writeln ( 'Sum squares ( b ) : ' , SumOfSquares( @ExArray[1],100):8:4 );
end.
```

---

### **sumsandsquares**

**Declaration:** Procedure sumsandsquares(const data : array of float; var sum,sumofsquares : float); Procedure sumsandsquares(const data : PFloat; Const N : Integer; var sum,sumofsquares : float);

**Description:** sumsandsquares calculates the sum of the values and the sum of the squares of the values in the data array and returns the results in sum and sumofsquares.

The second form of the function accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

**Errors:** None.

See also: sum (262), sumofsquares (262), totalvariance (265) , variance (265)

**Listing:** mathex/ex46.pp

---

```
Program Example45;

{ Program to demonstrate the SumOfSquares function . }

Uses math;

Type
  TExArray = Array[1..100] of Float;

Var
  I : Integer;
  ExArray : TExArray;
  s,ss : float;

begin
```



```
Randomize;
for I:=1 to 100 do
  ExArray[I]:=(Random-Random)*100;
  Writeln('Max           : ', MaxValue(ExArray):8:4);
  Writeln('Min           : ', MinValue(ExArray):8:4);
  SumsAndSquares(ExArray,S,SS);
  Writeln('Sum           : ', S:8:4);
  Writeln('Sum squares   : ', SS:8:4);
  SumsAndSquares(@ExArray[1],100,S,SS);
  Writeln('Sum (b)       : ', S:8:4);
  Writeln('Sum squares (b) : ', SS:8:4);
end.
```

---

### **tan**

Declaration: Function tan(x : float) : float;

Description: Tan returns the tangent of x.

Errors: If x (normalized) is pi/2 or 3pi/2 then an overflow will occur.

See also: tanh (264), arcsin (239), sincos (260), arccos (238)

**Listing:** mathex/ex47.pp

---

```
Program Example47;

{ Program to demonstrate the Tan function . }

Uses math;

Procedure DoTan(Angle : Float);

begin
  Write('Angle : ', RadToDeg(Angle):8:6);
  Writeln('Tangent : ', Tan(Angle):8:6);
end;

begin
  DoTan(0);
  DoTan(Pi);
  DoTan(Pi/3);
  DoTan(Pi/4);
  DoTan(Pi/6);
end.
```

---

### **tanh**

Declaration: Function tanh(x : float) : float;

Description: Tanh returns the hyperbolic tangent of x.

Errors: None.

See also: arcsin (239), sincos (260), arccos (238)

**Listing:** mathex/ex48.pp

---

```
Program Example48;

{ Program to demonstrate the Tanh function . }

Uses math;

begin
  writeln ( tanh (0));
  writeln ( tanh (1));
  writeln ( tanh (-1));
end.
```

---

### **totalvariance**

**Declaration:** Function totalvariance(const data : array of float) : float; Function totalvariance(const data : PFloat; Const N : Integer) : float;

**Description:** TotalVariance returns the total variance of the values in the data array. It returns zero if there is only one value.

The second form of the function accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

**Errors:** None.

See also: variance (265), stddev (261), mean (251)

**Listing:** mathex/ex49.pp

---

```
Program Example49;

{ Program to demonstrate the TotalVariance function . }

Uses math;

Type
  TExArray = Array [1..100] of Float;

Var
  I : Integer;
  ExArray : TExArray;
  TV : float;

begin
  Randomize;
  for I:=1 to 100 do
    ExArray[I]:=(RandomRandom)*100;
  TV:=TotalVariance ( ExArray );
  Writeln ( ' Total variance      : ' ,TV:8:4);
  TV:=TotalVariance ( @ExArray[1],100);
  Writeln ( ' Total Variance (b) : ' ,TV:8:4);
end.
```

---

### **variance**

**Declaration:** Function variance(const data : array of float) : float; Function variance(const data : PFloat; Const N : Integer) : float;

**Description:** `Variance` returns the variance of the values in the `data` array. It returns zero if there is only one value.

The second form of the function accepts a pointer to an array of `N` values.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `totalvariance` (265), `stddev` (261), `mean` (251)

**Listing:** `mathex/ex50.pp`

---

```
Program Example50;

{ Program to demonstrate the Variance function. }

Uses math;

Type
  TExArray = Array[1..100] of Float;

Var
  I : Integer;
  ExArray : TExArray;
  V : float;

begin
  Randomize;
  for I:=1 to 100 do
    ExArray[I]:= (Random-Random)*100;
  V:= Variance ( ExArray );
  Writeln ( ' Variance      : ' ,V:8:4);
  V:= Variance ( @ExArray[1],100);
  Writeln ( ' Variance ( b ) : ' ,V:8:4);
end.
```

---

## Chapter 13

# The MMX unit

This chapter describes the MMX unit. This unit allows you to use the MMX capabilities of the Free Pascal compiler. It was written by Florian Klämpfl for the i386 processor. It should work on all platforms that use the Intel processor.

### 13.1 Variables, Types and constants

The following types are defined in the MMX unit:

```
tmmxshortint = array[0..7] of shortint;  
tmmxbyte = array[0..7] of byte;  
tmmxword = array[0..3] of word;  
tmmxinteger = array[0..3] of integer;  
tmmxfixed = array[0..3] of fixed16;  
tmmxlongint = array[0..1] of longint;  
tmmxcardinal = array[0..1] of cardinal;  
{ for the AMD 3D }  
tmmxsingle = array[0..1] of single;
```

And the following pointers to the above types:

```
pmmxshortint = ^tmmxshortint;  
pmmxbyte = ^tmmxbyte;  
pmmxword = ^tmmxword;  
pmmxinteger = ^tmmxinteger;  
pmmxfixed = ^tmmxfixed;  
pmmxlongint = ^tmmxlongint;  
pmmxcardinal = ^tmmxcardinal;  
{ for the AMD 3D }  
pmmxsingle = ^tmmxsingle;
```

The following initialized constants allow you to determine if the computer has MMX extensions. They are set correctly in the unit's initialization code.

```
is_mmx_cpu : boolean = false;  
is_amd_3d_cpu : boolean = false;
```

## 13.2 Functions and Procedures

### Emms

Declaration: `Procedure Emms ;`

Description: `Emms` sets all floating point registers to empty. This procedure must be called after you have used any MMX instructions, if you want to use floating point arithmetic. If you just want to move floating point data around, it isn't necessary to call this function, the compiler doesn't use the FPU registers when moving data. Only when doing calculations, you should use this function.

Errors: None.

See also: Programmers' guide

Example:: Program `MMXDemo`;

```
uses mmx;
var
  d1 : double;
  a : array[0..10000] of double;
  i : longint;
begin
  d1:=1.0;
  {$mmx+}
  { floating point data is used, but we do _no_ arithmetic }
  for i:=0 to 10000 do
    a[i]:=d2; { this is done with 64 bit moves }
  {$mmx-}
  emms; { clear fpu }
  { now we can do floating point arithmetic again }
end.
```

## Chapter 14

# The MsMouse unit

The msmouse unit provides basic mouse handling under DOS (Go32v1 and Go32v2) Some general remarks about the msmouse unit:

- The mouse driver does not know when the text screen scrolls. This results in unerased mouse cursors on the screen when the screen scrolls while the mouse cursor is visible. The solution is to hide the mouse cursor (using HideMouse) when you write something to the screen and to show it again afterwards (using ShowMouse).
- All Functions/Procedures that return and/or accept coordinates of the mouse cursor, always do so in pixels and zero based (so the upper left corner of the screen is (0,0)). To get the (column, row) in standard text mode, divide both x and y by 8 (and add 1 if you want to have it 1 based).
- The real resolution of graphic modes and the one the mouse driver uses can differ. For example, mode 13h (320\*200 pixels) is handled by the mouse driver as 640\*200, so you will have to multiply the X coordinates you give to the driver and divide the ones you get from it by 2 in that mode.
- By default the msmouse unit is compiled with the conditional define MouseCheck. This causes every procedure/function of the unit to check the MouseFound variable prior to doing anything. Of course this is not necessary, so if you are sure you are not calling any mouse unit procedures when no mouse is found, you can recompile the mouse unit without this conditional define.
- You will notice that several procedures/functions have longint sized parameters while only the lower 16 bits are used. This is because FPC is a 32 bit compiler and consequently 32 bit parameters result in faster code.

### 14.1 Constants, types and variables

The following constants are defined (to be used in e.g. the GetLastButtonPress (270) call).

```
LButton = 1; {left button}
RButton = 2; {right button}
MButton = 4; {middle button}
```

The following variable exist:

```
MouseFound: Boolean;
```

it is set to True or False in the unit's initialization code.

## 14.2 Functions and procedures

### GetLastButtonPress

Declaration: `Function GetLastButtonPress (Button: Longint; Var x,y:Longint) : Longint;`

Description: `GetLastButtonPress` Stores the position where `Button` was last pressed in `x` and `y` and returns the number of times this button has been pressed since the last call to this function with `Button` as parameter. For `Button` you can use the `LButton`, `RButton` and `MButton` constants for resp. the left, right and middle button. With certain mouse drivers, checking the middle button when using a two-button mouse to gives and clears the stats of the right button.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetLastButtonRelease` (271)

---

*{example for GetLastButtonPress and GetLastButtonRelease}*

**Uses** MsMouse, Crt;

**Var** x, y, times: Longint;  
c: Char;

**Begin**

**If** MouseFound **Then**

**Begin**

**ClrScr**;

ShowMouse;

**WriteLn**('Move the mouse and click the buttons (press escape to quit).');

**WriteLn**('Press the L-key to see the stats for the left button.');

**WriteLn**('Press the R-key to see the stats for the right button.');

**WriteLn**('Press the M-key to see the stats for the middle button.');

**GotoXY**(1,19);

**Write**('Since the last call to `GetLastButtonPress` with this button as parameter, the');

**GotoXY**(1,22);

**Write**('Since the last call to `GetLastButtonRelease` with this button as parameter, the');

**Repeat**

**If** Keypressed **Then**

**Begin**

c := **UpCase**(**Readkey**);

**Case** c **Of**

'L':

**Begin**

**GotoXY**(1, 20);

**ClrEol**;

times := `GetLastButtonPress`(`LButton`, x, y);

**Write**('left button has been pressed ',times,  
' times, the last time at (' ,x, ',' ,y, ')');

times := `GetLastButtonRelease`(`LButton`, x, y);

**GotoXY**(1,23);

**ClrEol**;

**Write**('left button has been released ',times,  
' times, the last time at (' ,x, ',' ,y, ')');

**End**;

'R':

**Begin**

**GotoXY**(1, 20);

**ClrEol**;

```
        times := GetLastButtonPress(RButton, x, y);
        WriteLn('right button has been pressed ', times,
                ' times, the last time at (' ,x, ', ',y, ')');
        times := GetLastButtonRelease(RButton, x, y);
        GotoXY(1,23);
        ClrEol;
        Write('right button has been released ', times,
                ' times, the last time at (' ,x, ', ',y, ')')
    End;
'M':
    Begin
        GotoXY(1, 20);
        ClrEol;
        times := GetLastButtonPress(MButton, x, y);
        WriteLn('middle button has been pressed ', times,
                ' times, the last time at (' ,x, ', ',y, ')');
        times := GetLastButtonRelease(MButton, x, y);
        GotoXY(1,23);
        ClrEol;
        Write('middle button has been released ', times,
                ' times, the last time at (' ,x, ', ',y, ')')
    End
End
End;
Until (c = #27); {escape}
While KeyPressed do ReadKey;
GotoXY(1,24);
HideMouse
End
End.
```

---

### GetLastButtonRelease

**Declaration:** Function GetLastButtonRelease (Button: Longint; Var x,y:Longint) : Longint;

**Description:** GetLastButtonRelease stores the position where Button was last released in x and y and returns the number of times this button has been released since the last call to this function with Button as parameter. For button you can use the LButton, RButton and MButton constants for resp. the left, right and middle button. With certain mouse drivers, checking the middle button when using a two-button mouse to gives and clears the stats of the right button.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** GetLastButtonPress (270)

For an example, see GetLastButtonPress (270).

### GetMouseState

**Declaration:** Procedure GetMouseState (Var x, y, buttons: Longint);

**Description:** GetMouseState Returns information on the current mouse position and which buttons are currently pressed. x and y return the mouse cursor coordinates in pixels. Buttons is a bitmask. Check the example program to see how you can get the necessary information from it.

**Errors:** None.



See also: LPressed (273), MPressed (274), RPressed (274), SetMousePos (275)

---

*{example for GetMouseState, IsLPressed, IsRPressed and IsMPressed}*

**Uses** MsMouse, Crt;

**Var** X, Y, State : Longint;

**Begin**

**If** MouseFound **Then**

**Begin**

**ClrScr**;

            ShowMouse;

**GotoXY**(5,24);

**Write**(' Left button: ');

**GotoXY**(30,24);

**Write**(' Right button: ');

**GotoXY**(55,24);

**Write**(' Middle button: ');

**While** KeyPressed **do** Readkey; *{clear keyboard buffer}*

**Repeat**

                GetMouseState(x, y, State);

**GotoXY**(20, 22);

**Write**('X: ',x:5, ' ( column: ',(x **div** 8):2, ') Y: ',y:5, ' ( row: ',(y **div** 8):2, ')');

**GotoXY**(18, 24); *{left button}*

**If** ( State **and** LButton) = LButton **Then**

*{or: " If LPressed Then". If you use this function, no call to GetMouseState is necessary}*

**Write**(' Down' )

**Else**

**Write**(' Up ' );

**GotoXY**(44, 24); *{right button}*

**If** ( State **and** RButton) = RButton **Then**

*{or: " If RPressed Then"}*

**Write**(' Down' )

**Else**

**Write**(' Up ' );

**GotoXY**(70, 24); *{middle button}*

**If** ( State **and** MButton) = MButton **Then**

*{or: " If MPressed Then"}*

**Write**(' Down' )

**Else**

**Write**(' Up ' )

**Until** KeyPressed;

            HideMouse;

**While** KeyPressed **Do** Readkey

**End**

**End.**

---

## HideMouse

Declaration: Procedure HideMouse ;

Description: HideMouse makes the mouse cursor invisible. Multiple calls to HideMouse will require just as many calls to ShowMouse to make the mouse cursor visible again.

Errors: None.

See also: ShowMouse (278), SetMouseHideWindow (275)

For an example, see ShowMouse (278).

## InitMouse

Declaration: Procedure InitMouse ;

Description: InitMouse Initializes the mouse driver sets the variable MouseFound depending on whether or not a mouse is found. This is Automatically called at the start of your program. You should never have to call it, unless you want to reset everything to its default values.

Errors: None.

See also: MouseFound variable.

---

```
Program Mouse1;

{example for InitMouse and MouseFound}

Uses MsMouse;

Begin
  If MouseFound Then
    Begin
      {go into graphics mode 13h}
      Asm
        movl $0x013, %eax
        pushl %ebp
        int $0x010
        popl %ebp
      End;
      InitMouse;
      ShowMouse; {otherwise it stays invisible}
      WriteIn('Mouse Found! (press enter to quit)');
      ReadIn;
      {back to text mode}
      Asm
        movl $3, %eax
        pushl %ebp
        int $0x010
        popl %ebp
      End
    End
End.
```

---

## LPressed

Declaration: Function LPressed : Boolean;

Description: LPressed returns True if the left mouse button is pressed. This is simply a wrapper for the GetMouseState procedure.

Errors: None.

See also: GetMouseState (271), MPressed (274), RPressed (274)

For an example, see GetMouseState (271).

### MPressed

Declaration: `Function MPressed : Boolean;`

Description: `MPressed` returns `True` if the middle mouse button is pressed. This is simply a wrapper for the `GetMouseState` procedure.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetMouseState` (271), `LPressed` (273), `RPressed` (274)

For an example, see `GetMouseState` (271).

### RPressed

Declaration: `Function RPressed : Boolean;`

Description: `RPressed` returns `True` if the right mouse button is pressed. This is simply a wrapper for the `GetMouseState` procedure.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetMouseState` (271), `LPressed` (273), `MPressed` (274)

For an example, see `GetMouseState` (271).

### SetMouseAscii

Declaration: `Procedure SetMouseAscii (Ascii: Byte);`

Description: `SetMouseAscii` sets the `Ascii` value of the character that depicts the mouse cursor in text mode. The difference between this one and `SetMouseShape` (276), is that the foreground and background colors stay the same and that the `Ascii` code you enter is the character that you will get on screen; there's no XOR'ing.

Errors: None

See also: `SetMouseShape` (276)

---

*{example for SetMouseAscii}*

*{warning: no error checking is performed on the input}*

**Uses** `MsMouse`, `Crt`;

**Var** `ascii` : `Byte`;  
      `x,y` : `Longint`;

**Begin**

**If** `MouseFound` **Then**

**Begin**

`ClrScr`;

`WriteLn`('Press any mouse button to quit after you've entered an Ascii value.');

`WriteLn`;

`WriteLn`('ASCII value of mouse cursor:');

`ShowMouse`;

**Repeat**

```
      GotoXY(30,3);
      ClrEol;
      Readln(ascii);
      SetMouseAscii(ascii)
    Until ( GetLastButtonPress(LButton,x,y) <> 0) Or
          ( GetLastButtonPress(RButton,x,y) <> 0) Or
          ( GetLastButtonPress(MButton,x,y) <> 0);
    HideMouse
  End;
End.
```

---

### SetMouseHideWindow

Declaration: Procedure SetMouseHideWindow (xmin,ymin,xmax,ymax: Longint);

Description: SetMouseHideWindow defines a rectangle on screen with top-left corner at (xmin,ymin) and bottom-right corner at (xmax,ymax), which causes the mouse cursor to be turned off when it is moved into it. When the mouse is moved into the specified region, it is turned off until you call ShowMouse again. However, once you've called ShowMouse (278), you'll have to call SetMouseHideWindow again to redefine the hide window... This may be annoying, but it's the way it's implemented in the mouse driver. While xmin, ymin, xmax and ymax are Longint parameters, only the lower 16 bits are used.

Warning: it seems Win98 SE doesn't (properly) support this function, maybe this already the case with earlier versions too!

Errors: None.

See also: ShowMouse (278), HideMouse (272)

nputlistingmouseex/mouse9.pp

### SetMousePos

Declaration: Procedure SetMousePos (x,y:Longint);

Description: SetMousePos sets the position of the mouse cursor on the screen. x is the horizontal position in pixels, y the vertical position in pixels. The upper-left hand corner of the screen is the origin. While x and y are longints, only the lower 16 bits are used.

Errors: None.

See also: GetMouseState (271)

---

*{example for SetMousePos}*

**Uses** MsMouse, Crt;

**Begin**

**If** MouseFound **Then**

**Begin**

      ShowMouse;

**While** KeyPressed **do** ReadKey;

**Repeat**

        SetMousePos(Random(80\*8), Random(25\*8));

        delay(100);

```
    Until Keypressed;  
    HideMouse;  
    While KeyPressed do ReadKey;  
End;  
End.
```

---

## SetMouseShape

Declaration: Procedure SetMouseShape (ForeColor,BackColor,Ascii: Byte);

Description: SetMouseShape defines how the mouse cursor looks in textmode. The character and its attributes that are on the mouse cursor's position on screen are XOR'ed with resp. ForeColor, BackColor and Ascii. Set them all to 0 for a "transparent" cursor.

Errors: None.

See also: SetMouseAscii (274)

---

*{example for SetMouseShape}*

*{warning: no error checking is performed on the input}*

*{the Ascii value you enter is XOR'ed with the Ascii value of the character on the screen over which you move the cursor. To get a "transparent" cursor, use the Ascii value 0}*

**Uses** MsMouse, Crt;

**Var** ascii, fc, bc: Byte;  
x,y: Longint;

**Begin**

**If** MouseFound **Then**

**Begin**

**ClrScr**;

**WriteLn**('Press any mouse button to quit after you''ve entered a sequence of numbers.');

**WriteLn**;

**WriteLn**('ASCII value of mouse cursor:');

**WriteLn**('Foreground color:');

**WriteLn**('Background color:');

      ShowMouse;

**Repeat**

**GotoXY**(30,3);

**ClrEol**;

**ReadLn**(ascii);

**GotoXY**(18,4);

**ClrEol**;

**ReadLn**(fc);

**GotoXY**(19,5);

**ClrEol**;

**ReadLn**(bc);

        SetMouseShape(fc, bc, ascii)

**Until** ( GetLastButtonPress(LButton,x,y) <> 0) **Or**

              ( GetLastButtonPress(RButton,x,y) <> 0) **Or**

              ( GetLastButtonPress(MButton,x,y) <> 0);

      HideMouse

**End**;

**End.**

---

## SetMouseSpeed

**Declaration:** Procedure SetMouseSpeed (Horizontal, Vertical: Longint);

**Description:** SetMouseSpeed sets the mouse speed in mickeys per 8 pixels. A mickey is the smallest measurement unit handled by a mouse. With this procedure you can set how many mickeys the mouse should move to move the cursor 8 pixels horizontally or vertically. The default values are 8 for horizontal and 16 for vertical movement. While this procedure accepts longint parameters, only the low 16 bits are actually used.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:**

---

**Uses** MsMouse, Crt;

**Var** hor, vert: Longint;  
x, y: Longint;

**Begin**

**If** MouseFound **Then**

**Begin**

**ClrScr**;

**WriteLn**('Click any button to quit after you''ve entered a sequence of numbers.');

**WriteLn**;

**WriteLn**('Horizontal mickey''s per pixel:');

**WriteLn**('Vertical mickey''s per pixel:');

      ShowMouse;

**Repeat**

**GotoXY**(32,3);

**ClrEol**;

**ReadLn**(hor);

**GotoXY**(30,4);

**ClrEol**;

**ReadLn**(vert);

        SetMouseSpeed(hor, vert);

**Until** ( GetLastButtonPress(LButton, x, y) <> 0) **Or**

              ( GetLastButtonPress(RButton, x, y) <> 0) **Or**

              ( GetLastButtonPress(MButton, x, y) <> 0);

**End**

**End.**

---

## SetMouseWindow

**Declaration:** Procedure SetMouseWindow (xmin,ymin,xmax,ymax: Longint);

**Description:** SetMouseWindow defines a rectangle on screen with top-left corner at (xmin, ymin) and bottom-right corner at (xmax, ymax), out of which the mouse cursor can't move. This procedure is simply a wrapper for the SetMouseXRange (278) and SetMouseYRange (278) procedures. While xmin, ymin, xmax and ymax are Longint parameters, only the lower 16 bits are used.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** SetMouseXRange (278), SetMouseYRange (278)

For an example, see `SetMouseXRange` (278).

## **SetMouseXRange**

**Declaration:** `Procedure SetMouseXRange (Min, Max: Longint);`

**Description:** `SetMouseXRange` sets the minimum (Min) and maximum (Max) horizontal coordinates in between which the mouse cursor can move. While Min and Max are Longint parameters, only the lower 16 bits are used.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `SetMouseYRange` (278), `SetMouseWindow` (277)

---

*{example for SetMouseXRange, SetMouseYRange and SetMouseWindow}*

**Uses** MsMouse, Crt;

**Begin**

**If** MouseFound **Then**

**Begin**

`SetMouseXRange(20*8,50*8); {charracter width and height = 8 pixels}`

`SetMouseYRange(10*8,15*8);`

*{the two lines of code have exactly the same effect as  
  SetMouseWindow(20\*8,10\*8,50\*8,15\*8)}*

`WriteIn('Press any key to quit.');`

`ShowMouse;`

**While** KeyPressed **Do** ReadKey;

`Readkey;`

**While** KeyPressed **Do** ReadKey;

`HideMouse`

**End**

**End.**

---

## **SetMouseYRange**

**Declaration:** `Procedure SetMouseYRange (Min, Max: Longint);`

**Description:** `SetMouseYRange` sets the minimum (Min) and maximum (Max) vertical coordinates in between which the mouse cursor can move. While Min and Max are Longint parameters, only the lower 16 bits are used.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `SetMouseXRange` (278), `SetMouseWindow` (277)

For an example, see `SetMouseXRange` (278).

## **ShowMouse**

**Declaration:** `Procedure ShowMouse ;`

**Description:** `ShowMouse` makes the mouse cursor visible. At the start of your program, the mouse cursor is invisible.

Errors: None.

See also: HideMouse (272), SetMouseHideWindow (275)

---

*{example for ShowMouse and HideMouse}*

**Uses** MsMouse;

**Begin**

**ClrScr**;

**If** MouseFound **Then**

**Begin**

**WriteIn**('Now you can see the mouse... (press enter to continue)');

      ShowMouse;

**ReadIn**;

      HideMouse;

**WriteIn**('And now you can''t... (press enter to quit)');

**ReadIn**

**End**

**End.**

---



## Chapter 15

# The Objects unit.

This chapter documents the `objects` unit. The unit was implemented by many people, and was mainly taken from the FreeVision sources. It has been ported to all supported platforms.

The methods and fields that are in a `Private` part of an object declaration have been left out of this documentation.

### 15.1 Constants

The following constants are error codes, returned by the various stream objects.

```
CONST
    stOk          = 0; { No stream error }
    stError       = -1; { Access error }
    stInitError   = -2; { Initialize error }
    stReadError   = -3; { Stream read error }
    stWriteError  = -4; { Stream write error }
    stGetError    = -5; { Get object error }
    stPutError    = -6; { Put object error }
    stSeekError   = -7; { Seek error in stream }
    stOpenError   = -8; { Error opening stream }
```

These constants can be passed to constructors of file streams:

```
CONST
    stCreate      = $3C00; { Create new file }
    stOpenRead    = $3D00; { Read access only }
    stOpenWrite   = $3D01; { Write access only }
    stOpen        = $3D02; { Read/write access }
```

The following constants are error codes, returned by the collection list objects:

```
CONST
    coIndexError = -1; { Index out of range }
    coOverflow   = -2; { Overflow }
```

Maximum data sizes (used in determining how many data can be used).

```
CONST
    MaxBytes = 128*1024*1024;           { Maximum data size }
    MaxWords = MaxBytes DIV SizeOf(Word); { Max word data size }
    MaxPtrs = MaxBytes DIV SizeOf(Pointer); { Max ptr data size }
    MaxCollectionSize = MaxBytes DIV SizeOf(Pointer); { Max collection size }
```

## 15.2 Types

The following auxiliary types are defined:

```
TYPE
    { Character set }
    TCharSet = SET Of Char;
    PCharSet = ^TCharSet;

    { Byte array }
    TByteArray = ARRAY [0..MaxBytes-1] Of Byte;
    PByteArray = ^TByteArray;

    { Word array }
    TWordArray = ARRAY [0..MaxWords-1] Of Word;
    PWordArray = ^TWordArray;

    { Pointer array }
    TPointerArray = Array [0..MaxPtrs-1] Of Pointer;
    PPointerArray = ^TPointerArray;

    { String pointer }
    PString = ^String;

    { Filename array }
    AsciiZ = Array [0..255] Of Char;

    Sw_Word = Cardinal;
    Sw_Integer = LongInt;
```

The following records are used internally for easy type conversion:

```
TYPE
    { Word to bytes }
    WordRec = packed RECORD
        Lo, Hi: Byte;
    END;

    { LongInt to words }
    LongRec = packed RECORD
        Lo, Hi: Word;
    END;

    { Pointer to words }
    PtrRec = packed RECORD
        Ofs, Seg: Word;
    END;
```

The following record is used when streaming objects:

```
TYPE
  PStreamRec = ^TStreamRec;
  TStreamRec = Packed RECORD
    ObjType: Sw_Word;
    VmtLink: pointer;
    Load : Pointer;
    Store: Pointer;
    Next : PStreamRec;
  END;
```

The TPoint basic object is used in the TRect object (see section 15.4, page 285):

```
TYPE
  PPoint = ^TPoint;
  TPoint = OBJECT
    X, Y: Sw_Integer;
  END;
```

## 15.3 Procedures and Functions

### NewStr

Declaration: Function NewStr (Const S: String): PString;

Description: NewStr makes a copy of the string S on the heap, and returns a pointer to this copy.

The allocated memory is not based on the declared size of the string passed to NewStr, but is based on the actual length of the string.

Errors: If not enough memory is available, an 'out of memory' error will occur.

See also: DisposeStr (283)

---

```
Program ex40;

{ Program to demonstrate the NewStr function }

Uses Objects;

Var S : String;
    P : PString;

begin
  S:='Some really cute string';
  Writeln ( 'Memavail : ', Memavail);
  P:=NewStr(S);
  If P^<>S then
    Writeln ( 'Oh-oh... Something is wrong !!' );
  Writeln ( 'Allocated string . Memavail : ', Memavail);
  DisposeStr(P);
  Writeln ( 'Deallocated string . Memavail : ', Memavail);
end.
```

---

## DisposeStr

Declaration: `Procedure DisposeStr (P: PString);`

Description: `DisposeStr` removes a dynamically allocated string from the heap.

Errors: None.

See also: `NewStr` (282)

For an example, see `NewStr` (282).

## Abstract

Declaration: `Procedure Abstract;`

Description: When implementing abstract methods, do not declare them as `abstract`. Instead, define them simply as `virtual`. In the implementation of such abstract methods, call the `Abstract` procedure. This allows explicit control of what happens when an abstract method is called.

The current implementation of `Abstract` terminates the program with a run-time error 211.

Errors: None.

See also: Most abstract types.

## RegisterObjects

Declaration: `Procedure RegisterObjects;`

Description: `RegisterObjects` registers the following objects for streaming:

1. `TCollection`, see section 15.10, page 309.
2. `TStringCollection`, see section 15.12, page 328.
3. `TStrCollection`, see section 15.13, page 330.

Errors: None.

See also: `RegisterType` (283)

## RegisterType

Declaration: `Procedure RegisterType (Var S: TStreamRec);`

Description: `RegisterType` registers a new type for streaming. An object cannot be streamed unless it has been registered first. The stream record `S` needs to have the following fields set:

**ObjType:** `Sw_Word` This should be a unique identifier. Each possible type should have it's own identifier.

**VmtLink:** **pointer** This should contain a pointer to the VMT (Virtual Method Table) of the object you try to register. You can get it with the following expression:

`VmtLink: ofs(TypeOf(MyType)^);`

**Load : Pointer** is a pointer to a method that initializes an instance of that object, and reads the initial values from a stream. This method should accept as it's sole argument a `PStream` type variable.

**Store: Pointer** is a pointer to a method that stores an instance of the object to a stream. This method should accept as its sole argument a `PStream` type variable.

Errors: In case of error (if a object with the same `ObjType`) is already registered), run-time error 212 occurs.

---

**Unit** MyObject;

**Interface**

**Uses** Objects;

**Type**

```
PMYObject = ^TMYObject;
TMYObject = Object (TObject)
  Field : Longint;
  Constructor Init;
  Constructor Load (Var Stream : TStream);
  Destructor Done;
  Procedure Store (Var Stream : TStream);
  Function GetField : Longint;
  Procedure SetField (Value : Longint);
  end;
```

**Implementation**

**Constructor** TMyObject.Init;

**begin**

**Inherited** Init;

  Field := -1;

**end;**

**Constructor** TMyObject.Load (Var Stream : TStream);

**begin**

  Stream.Read (Field, Sizeof (Field));

**end;**

**Destructor** TMyObject.Done;

**begin**

**end;**

**Function** TMyObject.GetField : Longint;

**begin**

  GetField := Field;

**end;**

**Procedure** TMyObject.SetField (Value : Longint);

**begin**

  Field := Value;

**end;**

```
Procedure TMyObject.Store (Var Stream : TStream);
```

```
begin
```

```
    Stream.Write( Field , SizeOf( Field ));
```

```
end;
```

```
Const MyObjectRec : TStreamRec = (
```

```
    Objtype : 666;
```

```
    vmtlink : Ofs( TypeOf( TMyObject )^);
```

```
    Load : @TMyObject.Load;
```

```
    Store : @TMyObject.Store;
```

```
);
```

```
begin
```

```
    RegisterObjects;
```

```
    RegisterType ( MyObjectRec);
```

```
end;
```

---

## LongMul

Declaration: Function LongMul (X, Y: Integer): LongInt;

Description: LongMul multiplies X with Y. The result is of type Longint. This avoids possible overflow errors you would normally get when multiplying X and Y that are too big.

Errors: None.

See also: LongDiv (285)

## LongDiv

Declaration: Function LongDiv (X: Longint; Y: Integer): Integer;

Description: LongDiv divides X by Y. The result is of type Integer instead of type Longint, as you would get normally.

Errors: If Y is zero, a run-time error will be generated.

See also: LongMul (285)

## 15.4 TRect

The TRect object is declared as follows:

```
TRect = OBJECT
    A, B: TPoint;
    FUNCTION Empty: Boolean;
    FUNCTION Equals (R: TRect): Boolean;
    FUNCTION Contains (P: TPoint): Boolean;
    PROCEDURE Copy (R: TRect);
    PROCEDURE Union (R: TRect);
    PROCEDURE Intersect (R: TRect);
    PROCEDURE Move (ADX, ADY: Sw_Integer);
    PROCEDURE Grow (ADX, ADY: Sw_Integer);
    PROCEDURE Assign (XA, YA, XB, YB: Sw_Integer);
END;
```

## TRect.Empty

Declaration: `Function TRect.Empty: Boolean;`

Description: `Empty` returns `True` if the rectangle defined by the corner points A, B has zero or negative surface.

Errors: None.

See also: `TRect.Equals` (286), `TRect.Contains` (287)

---

```
Program ex1;

{ Program to demonstrate TRect.Empty }

Uses objects;

Var ARect, BRect : TRect;
    P : TPoint;

begin
  With ARect.A do
    begin
      X:=10;
      Y:=10;
    end;
  With ARect.B do
    begin
      X:=20;
      Y:=20;
    end;
  { Offset B by (5,5) }
  With BRect.A do
    begin
      X:=15;
      Y:=15;
    end;
  With BRect.B do
    begin
      X:=25;
      Y:=25;
    end;
  { Point }
  With P do
    begin
      X:=15;
      Y:=15;
    end;
  Writeln ( 'A empty : ' , ARect.Empty);
  Writeln ( 'B empty : ' , BRect.Empty);
  Writeln ( 'A Equals B : ' , ARect.Equals(BRect));
  Writeln ( 'A Contains (15,15) : ' , ARect.Contains(P));
end.
```

---

## TRect.Equals

Declaration: `Function TRect.Equals (R: TRect): Boolean;`

**Description:** `Equals` returns `True` if the rectangle has the same corner points A,B as the rectangle R, and `False` otherwise.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `Empty` (286), `Contains` (287)

For an example, see `TRect.Empty` (286)

### **TRect.Contains**

**Declaration:** `Function TRect.Contains (P: TPoint): Boolean;`

**Description:** `Contains` returns `True` if the point P is contained in the rectangle (including borders), `False` otherwise.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `Intersect` (288), `Equals` (286)

### **TRect.Copy**

**Declaration:** `Procedure TRect.Copy (R: TRect);`

**Description:** Assigns the rectangle R to the object. After the call to `Copy`, the rectangle R has been copied to the object that invoked `Copy`.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `Assign` (290)

---

```
Program ex2;

{ Program to demonstrate TRect.Copy }

Uses objects;

Var ARect, BRect, CRect : TRect;

begin
  ARect.Assign(10,10,20,20);
  BRect.Assign(15,15,25,25);
  CRect.Copy(ARect);
  If ARect.Equals(CRect) Then
    WriteLn ( 'ARect equals CRect' )
  Else
    WriteLn ( 'ARect does not equal CRect !' );
end.
```

---

### **TRect.Union**

**Declaration:** `Procedure TRect.Union (R: TRect);`

**Description:** `Union` enlarges the current rectangle so that it becomes the union of the current rectangle with the rectangle R.



Errors: None.

See also: Intersect (288)

---

```
Program ex3;

{ Program to demonstrate TRect.Union }

Uses objects;

Var ARect, BRect, CRect : TRect;

begin
  ARect.Assign(10,10,20,20);
  BRect.Assign(15,15,25,25);
  { CRect is union of ARect and BRect }
  CRect.Assign(10,10,25,25);
  { Calculate it explicitly }
  ARect.Union(BRect);
  If ARect.Equals(CRect) Then
    WriteLn ( 'ARect equals CRect' )
  Else
    WriteLn ( 'ARect does not equal CRect !' );
end.
```

---

### **TRect.Intersect**

Declaration: `Procedure TRect.Intersect (R: TRect);`

Description: `Intersect` makes the intersection of the current rectangle with R. If the intersection is empty, then the rectangle is set to the empty rectangle at coordinate (0,0).

Errors: None.

See also: Union (287)

---

```
Program ex4;

{ Program to demonstrate TRect.Intersect }

Uses objects;

Var ARect, BRect, CRect : TRect;

begin
  ARect.Assign(10,10,20,20);
  BRect.Assign(15,15,25,25);
  { CRect is intersection of ARect and BRect }
  CRect.Assign(15,15,20,20);
  { Calculate it explicitly }
  ARect.Intersect(BRect);
  If ARect.Equals(CRect) Then
    WriteLn ( 'ARect equals CRect' )
  Else
```

```
    WriteLn ( 'ARect does not equal CRect !' );  
    BRect.Assign (25,25,30,30);  
    ARect.Intersect (BRect);  
    If ARect.Empty Then  
        WriteLn ( 'ARect is empty' );  
end.
```

---

### TRect.Move

Declaration: `Procedure TRect.Move (ADX, ADY: Sw_Integer);`

Description: Move moves the current rectangle along a vector with components (ADX, ADY). It adds ADX to the X-coordinate of both corner points, and ADY to both end points.

Errors: None.

See also: Grow (289)

---

```
Program ex5;  
  
    { Program to demonstrate TRect.Move }  
  
Uses objects;  
  
Var ARect, BRect : TRect;  
  
begin  
    ARect.Assign (10,10,20,20);  
    ARect.Move(5,5);  
    // Brect should be where new ARect is .  
    BRect.Assign (15,15,25,25);  
    If ARect.Equals (BRect) Then  
        WriteLn ( 'ARect equals BRect' )  
    Else  
        WriteLn ( 'ARect does not equal BRect !' );  
end.
```

---

### TRect.Grow

Declaration: `Procedure TRect.Grow (ADX, ADY: Sw_Integer);`

Description: Grow expands the rectangle with an amount ADX in the X direction (both on the left and right side of the rectangle, thus adding a length 2\*ADX to the width of the rectangle), and an amount ADY in the Y direction (both on the top and the bottom side of the rectangle, adding a length 2\*ADY to the height of the rectangle).

ADX and ADY can be negative. If the resulting rectangle is empty, it is set to the empty rectangle at (0,0).

Errors: None.

See also: Move (289).

---

```
Program ex6;

{ Program to demonstrate TRect.Grow }

Uses objects;

Var ARect, BRect : TRect;

begin
  ARect.Assign(10,10,20,20);
  ARect.Grow(5,5);
  // Brect should be where new ARect is .
  BRect.Assign(5,5,25,25);
  If ARect.Equals(BRect) Then
    WriteIn ( 'ARect equals BRect' )
  Else
    WriteIn ( 'ARect does not equal BRect !' );
end.
```

---

### **TRect.Assign**

Declaration: Procedure Trect.Assign (XA, YA, XB, YB: Sw\_Integer);

Description: Assign sets the corner points of the rectangle to (XA,YA) and (Xb,Yb).

Errors: None.

See also: Copy (287)

For an example, see TRect.Copy (287).

## **15.5 TObject**

The full declaration of the TObject type is:

```
TYPE
  TObject = OBJECT
    CONSTRUCTOR Init;
    PROCEDURE Free;
    DESTRUCTOR Done;Virtual;
  END;
  PObject = ^TObject;
```

### **TObject.Init**

Declaration: Constructor TObject.Init;

Description: Instantiates a new object of type TObject. It fills the instance up with Zero bytes.

Errors: None.

See also: Free (291), Done (291)

For an example, see Free (291)

## TObject.Free

Declaration: `Procedure TObject.Free;`

Description: `Free` calls the destructor of the object, and releases the memory occupied by the instance of the object.

Errors: No checking is performed to see whether `self` is `nil` and whether the object is indeed allocated on the heap.

See also: `Init` (290), `Done` (291)

---

```
program ex7;

{ Program to demonstrate the TObject.Free call }

Uses Objects;

Var O : PObject;

begin
  Writeln ( 'Memavail : ', Memavail );
  // Allocate memory for object.
  O:=New(PObject, Init );
  Writeln ( 'Memavail : ', Memavail );
  // Free memory of object.
  O^.free;
  Writeln ( 'Memavail : ', Memavail );
end.
```

---

## TObject.Done

Declaration: `Destructor TObject.Done;Virtual;`

Description: `Done`, the destructor of `TObject` does nothing. It is mainly intended to be used in the `TObject.Free` (291) method.

The destructore `Done` does not free the memory occupied by the object.

Errors: None.

See also: `Free` (291), `Init` (290)

---

```
program ex8;

{ Program to demonstrate the TObject.Done call }

Uses Objects;

Var O : PObject;

begin
  Writeln ( 'Memavail : ', Memavail );
  // Allocate memory for object.
  O:=New(PObject, Init );
  Writeln ( 'Memavail : ', Memavail );
  O^.Done;
  Writeln ( 'Memavail : ', Memavail );
end.
```

---

## 15.6 TStream

The TStream object is the ancestor for all streaming objects, i.e. objects that have the capability to store and retrieve data.

It defines a number of methods that are common to all objects that implement streaming, many of them are virtual, and are only implemented in the descendant types.

Programs should not instantiate objects of type TStream directly, but instead instantiate a descendant type, such as TDosStream, TMemoryStream.

This is the full declaration of the TStream object:

```
TYPE
  TStream = OBJECT (TObject)
    Status      : Integer; { Stream status }
    ErrorInfo   : Integer; { Stream error info }
    StreamSize  : LongInt; { Stream current size }
    Position    : LongInt; { Current position }
    FUNCTION Get: PObject;
    FUNCTION StrRead: PChar;
    FUNCTION GetPos: Longint; Virtual;
    FUNCTION GetSize: Longint; Virtual;
    FUNCTION ReadStr: PString;
    PROCEDURE Open (OpenMode: Word); Virtual;
    PROCEDURE Close; Virtual;
    PROCEDURE Reset;
    PROCEDURE Flush; Virtual;
    PROCEDURE Truncate; Virtual;
    PROCEDURE Put (P: PObject);
    PROCEDURE StrWrite (P: PChar);
    PROCEDURE WriteStr (P: PString);
    PROCEDURE Seek (Pos: LongInt); Virtual;
    PROCEDURE Error (Code, Info: Integer); Virtual;
    PROCEDURE Read (Var Buf; Count: Sw_Word); Virtual;
    PROCEDURE Write (Var Buf; Count: Sw_Word); Virtual;
    PROCEDURE CopyFrom (Var S: TStream; Count: Longint);
  END;
  PStream = ^TStream;
```

### TStream.Get

Declaration: Function TStream.Get : PObject;

Description: Get reads an object definition from a stream, and returns a pointer to an instance of this object.

Errors: On error, TStream.Status is set, and NIL is returned.

See also: Put (296)

---

**Program** ex9;

*{ Program to demonstrate TStream.Get and TStream.Put }*

**Uses** Objects, MyObject; *{ Definition and registration of TMyObject }*

```
Var Obj : PMyObject;  
    S : PStream;  
  
begin  
    Obj:=New(PMyObject, Init );  
    Obj^. SetField ($1111) ;  
    Writeln ( ' Field value : ' ,Obj^. GetField );  
    { Since Stream is an abstract type, we instantiate a TMemoryStream }  
    S:=New(PMemoryStream, Init (100,10));  
    S^. Put( Obj );  
    Writeln ( ' Disposing object ' );  
    S^. Seek(0);  
    Dispose( Obj, Done);  
    Writeln ( ' Reading object ' );  
    Obj:=PMyObject(S^. Get);  
    Writeln ( ' Field Value : ' ,Obj^. GetField );  
    Dispose( Obj, Done);  
end.
```

---

### TStream.StrRead

Declaration: Function TStream.StrRead: PChar;

Description: StrRead reads a string from the stream, allocates memory for it, and returns a pointer to a null-terminated copy of the string on the heap.

Errors: On error, Nil is returned.

See also: StrWrite (297), ReadStr (295)

---

```
Program ex10;  
  
{  
Program to demonstrate the TStream.StrRead TStream.StrWrite functions  
}  
  
Uses objects;  
  
Var P : PChar;  
    S : PStream;  
  
begin  
    P:= ' Constant Pchar string ' ;  
    Writeln ( ' Writing to stream : '' ,P, '' ' );  
    S:=New(PMemoryStream, Init (100,10));  
    S^. StrWrite (P);  
    S^. Seek(0);  
    P:= Nil ;  
    P:=S^. StrRead;  
    DisPose ( S, Done);  
    Writeln ( ' Read from stream : '' ,P, '' ' );  
    Freemem(P, Strlen (P)+1);  
end.
```

---

### TStream.GetPos

Declaration: TStream.GetPos : Longint; Virtual;

Description: If the stream's status is stOk, GetPos returns the current position in the stream. Otherwise it returns -1

Errors: -1 is returned if the status is an error condition.

See also: Seek (297), GetSize (294)

---

```
Program ex11;

{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.GetPos function }

Uses objects;

Var L : String;
    S : PStream;

begin
  L:= 'Some kind of string';
  S:=New(PMemoryStream, Init (100,10));
  Writeln ( 'Stream position before write : ', S^.GetPos);
  S^.WriteStr (@L);
  Writeln ( 'Stream position after write : ', S^.GetPos);
  Dispose(S, Done);
end.
```

---

### TStream.GetSize

Declaration: Function TStream.GetSize: Longint; Virtual;

Description: If the stream's status is stOk then GetSize returns the size of the stream, otherwise it returns -1.

Errors: -1 is returned if the status is an error condition.

See also: Seek (297), GetPos (294)

---

```
Program ex12;

{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.GetSize function }

Uses objects;

Var L : String;
    S : PStream;

begin
  L:= 'Some kind of string';
  S:=New(PMemoryStream, Init (100,10));
  Writeln ( 'Stream size before write : ', S^.GetSize);
  S^.WriteStr (@L);
  Writeln ( 'Stream size after write : ', S^.GetSize);
  Dispose(S, Done);
end.
```

---

## TStream.ReadStr

Declaration: `Function TStream.ReadStr: PString;`

Description: `ReadStr` reads a string from the stream, copies it to the heap and returns a pointer to this copy. The string is saved as a pascal string, and hence is NOT null terminated.

Errors: On error (e.g. not enough memory), `Nil` is returned.

See also: `StrRead` (293)

---

**Program** ex13;

```
{  
Program to demonstrate the TStream.ReadStr TStream.WriteStr functions  
}
```

**Uses** objects;

**Var** P : PString;  
     L : **String**;  
     S : PStream;

**begin**

```
  L:=' Constant string line '  
  Writeln ( ' Writing to stream : " ',L, ' "' );  
  S:=New( PMemoryStream, Init (100,10));  
  S^. WriteStr (@L);  
  S^. Seek(0);  
  P:=S^. ReadStr;  
  L:=P^;  
  DisposeStr (P);  
  DisPose ( S, Done);  
  Writeln ( ' Read from stream : " ',L, ' "' );
```

**end.**

---

## TStream.Open

Declaration: `Procedure TStream.Open (OpenMode: Word); Virtual;`

Description: `Open` is an abstract method, that should be overridden by descendent objects. Since opening a stream depends on the stream's type this is not surprising.

Errors: None.

See also: `Close` (295), `Reset` (296)

For an example, see `TDosStream.Open` (302).

## TStream.Close

Declaration: `Procedure TStream.Close; Virtual;`

Description: `Close` is an abstract method, that should be overridden by descendent objects. Since Closing a stream depends on the stream's type this is not surprising.

Errors: None.



See also: [Open \(295\)](#), [Reset \(296\)](#)

for an example, see [TDosStream.Open \(302\)](#).

### **TStream.Reset**

Declaration: `PROCEDURE TStream.Reset;`

Description: `Reset` sets the stream's status to 0, as well as the `ErrorInfo`

Errors: None.

See also: [Open \(295\)](#), [Close \(295\)](#)

### **TStream.Flush**

Declaration: `Procedure TStream.Flush; Virtual;`

Description: `Flush` is an abstract method that should be overridden by descendent objects. It serves to enable the programmer to tell streams that implement a buffer to clear the buffer.

Errors: None.

See also: [Truncate \(296\)](#)

for an example, see [TBufStream.Flush \(305\)](#).

### **TStream.Truncate**

Declaration: `Procedure TStream.Truncate; Virtual;`

Description: `Truncate` is an abstract procedure that should be overridden by descendent objects. It serves to enable the programmer to truncate the size of the stream to the current file position.

Errors: None.

See also: [Seek \(297\)](#)

For an example, see [TDosStream.Truncate \(301\)](#).

### **TStream.Put**

Declaration: `Procedure TStream.Put (P: PObject);`

Description: `Put` writes the object pointed to by `P`. `P` should be non-nil. The object type must have been registered with [RegisterType \(283\)](#).

After the object has been written, it can be read again with [Get \(292\)](#).

Errors: No check is done whether `P` is `Nil` or not. Passing `Nil` will cause a run-time error 216 to be generated. If the object has not been registered, the status of the stream will be set to `stPutError`.

See also: [Get \(292\)](#)

For an example, see [TStream.Get \(292\)](#);

**TStream.StrWrite**

Declaration: `Procedure TStream.StrWrite (P: PChar);`

Description: `StrWrite` writes the null-terminated string `P` to the stream. `P` can only be 65355 bytes long.

Errors: None.

See also: `WriteStr` (297), `StrRead` (293), `ReadStr` (295)

For an example, see `TStream.StrRead` (293).

**TStream.WriteStr**

Declaration: `Procedure TStream.WriteStr (P: PString);`

Description: `StrWrite` writes the pascal string pointed to by `P` to the stream.

Errors: None.

See also: `StrWrite` (297), `StrRead` (293), `ReadStr` (295)

For an example, see `TStream.ReadStr` (295).

**TStream.Seek**

Declaration: `PROCEDURE TStream.Seek (Pos: LongInt); Virtual;`

Description: `Seek` sets the position to `Pos`. This position is counted from the beginning, and is zero based. (i.e. `seek(0)` sets the position pointer on the first byte of the stream)

Errors: If `Pos` is larger than the stream size, `Status` is set to `StSeekError`.

See also: `GetPos` (294), `GetSize` (294)

For an example, see `TDosStream.Seek` (301).

**TStream.Error**

Declaration: `Procedure TStream.Error (Code, Info: Integer); Virtual;`

Description: `Error` sets the stream's status to `Code` and `ErrorInfo` to `Info`. If the `StreamError` procedural variable is set, `Error` executes it, passing `Self` as an argument.

This method should not be called directly from a program. It is intended to be used in descendent objects.

Errors: None.

See also:

## TStream.Read

Declaration: `Procedure TStream.Read (Var Buf; Count: Sw_Word); Virtual;`

Description: Read is an abstract method that should be overridden by descendent objects.

Read reads Count bytes from the stream into Buf. It updates the position pointer, increasing it's value with Count. Buf must be large enough to contain Count bytes.

Errors: No checking is done to see if Buf is large enough to contain Count bytes.

See also: Write (298), ReadStr (295), StrRead (293)

---

```
program ex18;

{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.Read method }

Uses Objects;

Var Buf1, Buf2 : Array[1..1000] of Byte;
    I : longint;
    S : PMemoryStream;

begin
  For I:=1 to 1000 do
    Buf1[I]:=Random(1000);
  Buf2:=Buf1;
  S:=New(PMemoryStream, Init(100,10));
  S^.Write(Buf1, SizeOf(Buf1));
  S^.Seek(0);
  For I:=1 to 1000 do
    Buf1[I]:=0;
  S^.Read(Buf1, SizeOf(Buf1));
  For I:=1 to 1000 do
    If Buf1[I]<>Buf2[I] then
      Writeln('Buffer differs at position ', I);
  Dispose(S, Done);
end.
```

---

## TStream.Write

Declaration: `Procedure TStream.Write (Var Buf; Count: Sw_Word); Virtual;`

Description: Write is an abstract method that should be overridden by descendent objects.

Write writes Count bytes to the stream from Buf. It updates the position pointer, increasing it's value with Count.

Errors: No checking is done to see if Buf actually contains Count bytes.

See also: Read (298), WriteStr (297), StrWrite (297)

For an example, see TStream.Read (298).

## TStream.CopyFrom

Declaration: `Procedure TStream.CopyFrom (Var S: TStream; Count: Longint);`

Description: `CopyFrom` reads `Count` bytes from stream `S` and stores them in the current stream. It uses the `Read` (298) method to read the data, and the `Write` (298) method to write in the current stream.

Errors: None.

See also: `Read` (298), `Write` (298)

---

```
Program ex19;

{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.CopyFrom function }

Uses objects;

Var P : PString;
    L : String;
    S1,S2 : PStream;

begin
  L:= 'Constant string line';
  Writeln ( ' Writing to stream 1 : '' ,L, '' ');
  S1:=New(PMemoryStream, Init (100,10));
  S2:=New(PMemoryStream, Init (100,10));
  S1^. WriteStr (@L);
  S1^. Seek(0);
  Writeln ( ' Copying contents of stream 1 to stream 2' );
  S2^. Copyfrom(S1^, S1^. GetSize);
  S2^. Seek(0);
  P:= S2^. ReadStr;
  L:= P^;
  DisposeStr(P);
  Dispose ( S1, Done);
  Dispose ( S2, Done);
  Writeln ( ' Read from stream 2 : '' ,L, '' ');
end.
```

---

## 15.7 TDosStream

`TDosStream` is a stream that stores it's contents in a file. it overrides a couple of methods of `TStream` for this.

In addition to the fields inherited from `TStream` (see section 15.6, page 292), there are some extra fields, that describe the file. (mainly the name and the OS file handle)

No buffering in memory is done when using `TDosStream`. All data are written directly to the file. For a stream that buffers in memory, see section 15.8, page 303.

Here is the full declaration of the `TDosStream` object:

```
TYPE
  TDosStream = OBJECT (TStream)
    Handle: THandle; { DOS file handle }
    FName : AsciiZ; { AsciiZ filename }
    CONSTRUCTOR Init (FileName: FNameStr; Mode: Word);
    DESTRUCTOR Done; Virtual;
    PROCEDURE Close; Virtual;
    PROCEDURE Truncate; Virtual;
```

```
PROCEDURE Seek (Pos: LongInt); Virtual;  
PROCEDURE Open (OpenMode: Word); Virtual;  
PROCEDURE Read (Var Buf; Count: Sw_Word); Virtual;  
PROCEDURE Write (Var Buf; Count: Sw_Word); Virtual;  
END;  
PDosStream = ^TDosStream;
```

### **TDosStream.Init**

**Declaration:** Constructor `Init (FileName: FNameStr; Mode: Word);`

**Description:** `Init` instantiates an instance of `TDosStream`. The name of the file that contains (or will contain) the data of the stream is given in `FileName`. The `Mode` parameter determines whether a new file should be created and what access rights you have on the file. It can be one of the following constants:

**stCreate** Creates a new file.

**stOpenRead** Read access only.

**stOpenWrite** Write access only.

**stOpenRead** Read and write access.

**Errors:** On error, `Status` is set to `stInitError`, and `ErrorInfo` is set to the DOS error code.

See also: `Done` (300)

For an example, see `TDosStream.Truncate` (301).

### **TDosStream.Done**

**Declaration:** Destructor `TDosStream.Done; Virtual;`

**Description:** `Done` closes the file if it was open and cleans up the instance of `TDosStream`.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `Init` (300), `Close` (300)

for an example, see e.g. `TDosStream.Truncate` (301).

### **TDosStream.Close**

**Declaration:** Procedure `TDosStream.Close; Virtual;`

**Description:** `Close` closes the file if it was open, and sets `Handle` to -1. Contrary to `Done` (300) it does not clean up the instance of `TDosStream`

**Errors:** None.

See also: `TStream.Close` (295), `Init` (300), `Done` (300)

For an example, see `TDosStream.Open` (302).

### TDosStream.Truncate

Declaration: `Procedure TDosStream.Truncate; Virtual;`

Description: If the status of the stream is `stOK`, then `Truncate` tries to truncate the stream size to the current file position.

Errors: If an error occurs, the stream's status is set to `stError` and `ErrorInfo` is set to the OS error code.

See also: `TStream.Truncate` (296), `GetSize` (294)

---

```
Program ex16;

{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.Truncate method }

Uses Objects;

Var L : String;
    P : PString;
    S : PDosStream; { Only one with Truncate implemented. }

begin
  L := 'Some constant string';
  { Buffer size of 100 }
  S := New(PDosStream, Init('test.dat', stcreate));
  Writeln ('Writing "', L, '" to stream with handle ', S^.Handle);
  S^.WriteStr(@L);
  S^.WriteStr(@L);
  { Close calls flush first }
  S^.Close;
  S^.Open(stOpen);
  Writeln ('Size of stream is : ', S^.GetSize);
  P := S^.ReadStr;
  L := P^;
  DisposeStr(P);
  Writeln ('Read "', L, '" from stream with handle ', S^.Handle);
  S^.Truncate;
  Writeln ('Truncated stream . Size is : ', S^.GetSize);
  S^.Close;
  Dispose (S, Done);
end.
```

---

### TDosStream.Seek

Declaration: `Procedure TDosStream.Seek (Pos: LongInt); Virtual;`

Description: If the stream's status is `stOK`, then `Seek` sets the file position to `Pos`. `Pos` is a zero-based offset, counted from the beginning of the file.

Errors: In case an error occurs, the stream's status is set to `stSeekError`, and the OS error code is stored in `ErrorInfo`.

See also: `TStream.Seek` (297), `GetPos` (294)

---

```
Program ex17;

{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.Seek method }

Uses Objects;

Var L : String;
      Marker : Word;
      P : PString;
      S : PDosStream;

begin
  L:= 'Some constant string';
  { Buffer size of 100 }
  S:=New(PDosStream, Init ( ' test . dat', stcreate ));
  Writeln ( ' Writing "', L, '" to stream.' );
  S^. WriteStr (@L);
  Marker:=S^. GetPos;
  Writeln ( ' Set marker at ', Marker);
  L:= 'Some other constant String';
  Writeln ( ' Writing "', L, '" to stream.' );
  S^. WriteStr (@L);
  S^. Close;
  S^. Open ( stOpenRead);
  Writeln ( ' Size of stream is : ', S^. GetSize);
  Writeln ( ' Seeking to marker' );
  S^. Seek(Marker);
  P:=S^. ReadStr;
  L:=P^;
  DisposeStr(P);
  Writeln ( ' Read "', L, '" from stream.' );
  S^. Close;
  Dispose ( S, Done);
end.
```

---

## TDosStream.Open

**Declaration:** `Procedure TDosStream.Open (OpenMode: Word); Virtual;`

**Description:** If the stream's status is `stOK`, and the stream is closed then `Open` re-opens the file stream with mode `OpenMode`. This call can be used after a `Close` (300) call.

**Errors:** If an error occurs when re-opening the file, then `Status` is set to `stOpenError`, and the OS error code is stored in `ErrorInfo`

See also: `TStream.Open` (295), `Close` (300)

---

```
Program ex14;

{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.Close method }

Uses Objects;

Var L : String;
      P : PString;
      S : PDosStream; { Only one with Close implemented. }
```

```
begin
  L:= 'Some constant string';
  S:=New(PDosStream, Init('test.dat', stcreate));
  Writeln('Writing "', L, '" to stream with handle ', S^.Handle);
  S^.WriteStr(@L);
  S^.Close;
  Writeln('Closed stream. File handle is ', S^.Handle);
  S^.Open(stOpenRead);
  P:=S^.ReadStr;
  L:=P^;
  DisposeStr(P);
  Writeln('Read "', L, '" from stream with handle ', S^.Handle);
  S^.Close;
  Dispose(S, Done);
end.
```

---

### **TDosStream.Read**

Declaration: Procedure TDosStream.Read (Var Buf; Count: Sw\_Word); Virtual;

Description: If the Stream is open and the stream status is stOK then Read will read Count bytes from the stream and place them in Buf.

Errors: In case of an error, Status is set to StReadError, and ErrorInfo gets the OS specific error, or 0 when an attempt was made to read beyond the end of the stream.

See also: TStream.Read (298), Write (303)

For an example, see TStream.Read (298).

### **TDosStream.Write**

Declaration: Procedure TDosStream.Write (Var Buf; Count: Sw\_Word); Virtual;

Description: If the Stream is open and the stream status is stOK then Write will write Count bytes from Buf and place them in the stream.

Errors: In case of an error, Status is set to StWriteError, and ErrorInfo gets the OS specific error.

See also: TStream.Write (298), Read (303)

For an example, see TStream.Read (298).

## **15.8 TBufStream**

Bufstream implements a buffered file stream. That is, all data written to the stream is written to memory first. Only when the buffer is full, or on explicit request, the data is written to disk.

Also, when reading from the stream, first the buffer is checked if there is any unread data in it. If so, this is read first. If not the buffer is filled again, and then the data is read from the buffer.

The size of the buffer is fixed and is set when constructing the file.

This is useful if you need heavy throughput for your stream, because it speeds up operations.



## TYPE

```
TBufStream = OBJECT (TDosStream)
    LastMode: Byte;      { Last buffer mode }
    BufSize : Sw_Word;   { Buffer size }
    BufPtr  : Sw_Word;   { Buffer start }
    BufEnd  : Sw_Word;   { Buffer end }
    Buffer   : PByteArray; { Buffer allocated }
    CONSTRUCTOR Init (FileName: FNameStr; Mode, Size: Word);
    DESTRUCTOR Done; Virtual;
    PROCEDURE Close; Virtual;
    PROCEDURE Flush; Virtual;
    PROCEDURE Truncate; Virtual;
    PROCEDURE Seek (Pos: LongInt); Virtual;
    PROCEDURE Open (OpenMode: Word); Virtual;
    PROCEDURE Read (Var Buf; Count: Sw_Word); Virtual;
    PROCEDURE Write (Var Buf; Count: Sw_Word); Virtual;
END;
PBufStream = ^TBufStream;
```

**TBufStream.Init**

Declaration: Constructor Init (FileName: FNameStr; Mode, Size: Word);

Description: Init instantiates an instance of TBufStream. The name of the file that contains (or will contain) the data of the stream is given in FileName. The Mode parameter determines whether a new file should be created and what access rights you have on the file. It can be one of the following constants:

**stCreate** Creates a new file.

**stOpenRead** Read access only.

**stOpenWrite** Write access only.

**stOpen** Read and write access.

The Size parameter determines the size of the buffer that will be created. It should be different from zero.

Errors: On error, Status is set to stInitError, and ErrorInfo is set to the DOS error code.

See also: TDosStream.Init (300), Done (304)

For an example see TBufStream.Flush (305).

**TBufStream.Done**

Declaration: Destructor TBufStream.Done; Virtual;

Description: Done flushes and closes the file if it was open and cleans up the instance of TBufStream.

Errors: None.

See also: TDosStream.Done (300), Init (304), Close (305)

For an example see TBufStream.Flush (305).

### TBufStream.Close

Declaration: `Procedure TBufStream.Close; Virtual;`

Description: `Close` flushes and closes the file if it was open, and sets `Handle` to -1. Contrary to `Done` (304) it does not clean up the instance of `TBufStream`

Errors: None.

See also: `TStream.Close` (295), `Init` (304), `Done` (304)

For an example see `TBufStream.Flush` (305).

### TBufStream.Flush

Declaration: `Procedure TBufStream.Flush; Virtual;`

Description: When the stream is in write mode, the contents of the buffer are written to disk, and the buffer position is set to zero.

When the stream is in read mode, the buffer position is set to zero.

Errors: Write errors may occur if the file was in write mode. see `Write` (307) for more info on the errors.

See also: `TStream.Close` (295), `Init` (304), `Done` (304)

---

**Program** ex15;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.Flush method }*

**Uses** Objects;

**Var** L : **String**;  
P : PString;  
S : PBufStream; *{ Only one with Flush implemented. }*

**begin**

```
L:= 'Some constant string';  
{ Buffer size of 100 }  
S:=New(PBufStream, Init ( ' test.dat', stcreate ,100));  
WriteLn ( ' Writing "',L,'" to stream with handle ',S^.Handle);  
S^.WriteStr(@L);  
{ At this moment, there is no data on disk yet. }  
S^.Flush;  
{ Now there is. }  
S^.WriteStr(@L);  
{ Close calls flush first }  
S^.Close;  
WriteLn ( ' Closed stream. File handle is ',S^.Handle);  
S^.Open ( stOpenRead);  
P:=S^.ReadStr;  
L:=P^;  
DisposeStr (P);  
WriteLn ( ' Read "',L,'" from stream with handle ',S^.Handle);  
S^.Close;  
Dispose ( S, Done);
```

**end.**

---

**TBufStream.Truncate**

Declaration: `Procedure TBufStream.Truncate; Virtual;`

Description: If the status of the stream is `stOK`, then `Truncate` tries to flush the buffer, and then truncates the stream size to the current file position.

Errors: Errors can be those of `Flush` (305) or `TDosStream.Truncate` (301).

See also: `TStream.Truncate` (296), `TDosStream.Truncate` (301), `GetSize` (294)

For an example, see `TDosStream.Truncate` (301).

**TBufStream.Seek**

Declaration: `Procedure TBufStream.Seek (Pos: LongInt); Virtual;`

Description: If the stream's status is `stOK`, then `Seek` sets the file position to `Pos`. `Pos` is a zero-based offset, counted from the beginning of the file.

Errors: In case an error occurs, the stream's status is set to `stSeekError`, and the OS error code is stored in `ErrorInfo`.

See also: `TStream.Seek` (297), `GetPos` (294)

For an example, see `TStream.Seek` (297);

**TBufStream.Open**

Declaration: `Procedure TBufStream.Open (OpenMode: Word); Virtual;`

Description: If the stream's status is `stOK`, and the stream is closed then `Open` re-opens the file stream with mode `OpenMode`. This call can be used after a `Close` (305) call.

Errors: If an error occurs when re-opening the file, then `Status` is set to `stOpenError`, and the OS error code is stored in `ErrorInfo`

See also: `TStream.Open` (295), `Close` (305)

For an example, see `TDosStream.Open` (302).

**TBufStream.Read**

Declaration: `Procedure TBufStream.Read (Var Buf; Count: Sw_Word); Virtual;`

Description: If the Stream is open and the stream status is `stOK` then `Read` will read `Count` bytes from the stream and place them in `Buf`.

`Read` will first try to read the data from the stream's internal buffer. If insufficient data is available, the buffer will be filled before continuing to read. This process is repeated until all needed data has been read.

Errors: In case of an error, `Status` is set to `StReadError`, and `ErrorInfo` gets the OS specific error, or 0 when an attempt was made to read beyond the end of the stream.

See also: `TStream.Read` (298), `Write` (307)

For an example, see `TStream.Read` (298).

### TBufStream.Write

**Declaration:** Procedure TBufStream.Write (Var Buf; Count: Sw\_Word); Virtual;

**Description:** If the Stream is open and the stream status is stOK then Write will write Count bytes from Buf and place them in the stream.

Write will first try to write the data to the stream's internal buffer. When the internal buffer is full, then the contents will be written to disk. This process is repeated until all data has been written.

**Errors:** In case of an error, Status is set to StWriteError, and ErrorInfo gets the OS specific error.

See also: TStream.Write (298), Read (306)

For an example, see TStream.Read (298).

## 15.9 TMemoryStream

The TMemoryStream object implements a stream that stores it's data in memory. The data is stored on the heap, with the possibility to specify the maximum amount of data, and the the size of the memory blocks being used.

TYPE

```
TMemoryStream = OBJECT (TStream)
    BlkCount: Sw_Word;      { Number of segments }
    BlkSize : Word;         { Memory block size }
    MemSize : LongInt;      { Memory alloc size }
    BlkList : PPointerArray; { Memory block list }
    CONSTRUCTOR Init (ALimit: Longint; ABlockSize: Word);
    DESTRUCTOR Done;
    PROCEDURE Truncate;
    PROCEDURE Read (Var Buf; Count: Sw_Word);
    PROCEDURE Write (Var Buf; Count: Sw_Word);
END;
PMemoryStream = ^TMemoryStream;
```

### TMemoryStream.Init

**Declaration:** Constructor TMemoryStream.Init (ALimit: Longint; ABlockSize: Word);

**Description:** Init instantiates a new TMemoryStream object. The memorystreamobject will initially allocate at least ALimit bytes memory, divided into memory blocks of size ABlockSize. The number of blocks needed to get to ALimit bytes is rounded up.

By default, the number of blocks is 1, and the size of a block is 8192. This is selected if you specify 0 as the blocksize.

**Errors:** If the stream cannot allocate the initial memory needed for the memory blocks, then the stream's status is set to stInitError.

See also: Done (308)

For an example, see e.g TStream.CopyFrom (298).

### TMemoryStream.Done

Declaration: Destructor TMemoryStream.Done; Virtual;

Description: Done releases the memory blocks used by the stream, and then cleans up the memory used by the stream object itself.

Errors: None.

See also: Init (307)

For an example, see e.g TStream.CopyFrom (298).

### TMemoryStream.Truncate

Declaration: Procedure TMemoryStream.Truncate; Virtual;

Description: Truncate sets the size of the memory stream equal to the current position. It de-allocates any memory-blocks that are no longer needed, so that the new size of the stream is the current position in the stream, rounded up to the first multiple of the stream blocksize.

Errors: If an error occurs during memory de-allocation, the stream's status is set to stError

See also: TStream.Truncate (296)

---

```
Program ex20;

{ Program to demonstrate the TMemoryStream.Truncate method }

Uses Objects;

Var L : String;
    P : PString;
    S : PMemoryStream;
    I, InitMem : Longint;

begin
  InitMem := Memavail;
  L := 'Some constant string';
  { Buffer size of 100 }
  S := New(PMemoryStream, Init(1000, 100));
  Writeln('Free memory : ', Memavail);
  Writeln('Writing 100 times "', L, '" to stream. ');
  For I := 1 to 100 do
    S^.WriteStr(@L);
  Writeln('Finished. Free memory : ', Memavail);
  S^.Seek(100);
  S^.Truncate;
  Writeln('Truncated at byte 100. Free memory : ', Memavail);
  Dispose(S, Done);
  Writeln('Finished. Lost ', InitMem - Memavail, ' Bytes. ');
end.
```

---

### TMemoryStream.Read

Declaration: Procedure Read (Var Buf; Count: Sw\_Word); Virtual;

**Description:** Read reads Count bytes from the stream to Buf. It updates the position of the stream.

**Errors:** If there is not enough data available, no data is read, and the stream's status is set to stReadError.

**See also:** TStream.Read, Write (309)

For an example, see TStream.Read (298).

### **TMemoryStream.Write**

**Declaration:** Procedure Write (Var Buf; Count: Sw\_Word); Virtual;

**Description:** Write copies Count bytes from Buf to the stream. It updates the position of the stream.

If not enough memory is available to hold the extra Count bytes, then the stream will try to expand, by allocating as much blocks with size BlkSize (as specified in the constructor call Init (307)) as needed.

**Errors:** If the stream cannot allocate more memory, then the status is set to stWriteError

**See also:** TStream.Write (298), Read (308)

For an example, see TStream.Read (298).

## **15.10 TCollection**

The TCollection object manages a collection of pointers or objects. It also provides a series of methods to manipulate these pointers or objects.

Whether or not objects are used depends on the kind of calls you use. All kinds come in 2 flavors, one for objects, one for pointers.

This is the full declaration of the TCollection object:

TYPE

```
TItemList = Array [0..MaxCollectionSize - 1] Of Pointer;  
PItemList = ^TItemList;
```

```
TCollection = OBJECT (TObject)  
  Items: PItemList; { Item list pointer }  
  Count: Sw_Integer; { Item count }  
  Limit: Sw_Integer; { Item limit count }  
  Delta: Sw_Integer; { Inc delta size }  
  Constructor Init (ALimit, ADelta: Sw_Integer);  
  Constructor Load (Var S: TStream);  
  Destructor Done; Virtual;  
  Function At (Index: Sw_Integer): Pointer;  
  Function IndexOf (Item: Pointer): Sw_Integer; Virtual;  
  Function GetItem (Var S: TStream): Pointer; Virtual;  
  Function LastThat (Test: Pointer): Pointer;  
  Function FirstThat (Test: Pointer): Pointer;  
  Procedure Pack;  
  Procedure FreeAll;  
  Procedure DeleteAll;  
  Procedure Free (Item: Pointer);
```

```
Procedure Insert (Item: Pointer); Virtual;  
Procedure Delete (Item: Pointer);  
Procedure AtFree (Index: Sw_Integer);  
Procedure FreeItem (Item: Pointer); Virtual;  
Procedure AtDelete (Index: Sw_Integer);  
Procedure ForEach (Action: Pointer);  
Procedure SetLimit (ALimit: Sw_Integer); Virtual;  
Procedure Error (Code, Info: Integer); Virtual;  
Procedure AtPut (Index: Sw_Integer; Item: Pointer);  
Procedure AtInsert (Index: Sw_Integer; Item: Pointer);  
Procedure Store (Var S: TStream);  
Procedure PutItem (Var S: TStream; Item: Pointer); Virtual;  
END;  
PCollection = ^TCollection;
```

### **TCollection.Init**

**Declaration:** Constructor TCollection.Init (ALimit, ADelta: Sw\_Integer);

**Description:** Init initializes a new instance of a collection. It sets the (initial) maximum number of items in the collection to ALimit. ADelta is the increase size : The number of memory places that will be allocated in case ALimit is reached, and another element is added to the collection.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** Load (310), Done (311)

For an example, see TCollection.ForEach (320).

### **TCollection.Load**

**Declaration:** Constructor TCollection.Load (Var S: TStream);

**Description:** Load initializes a new instance of a collection. It reads from stream S the item count, the item limit count, and the increase size. After that, it reads the specified number of items from the stream.

**Errors:** Errors returned can be those of GetItem (313).

**See also:** Init (310), GetItem (313), Done (311).

---

**Program** ex22;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.Load method }*

**Uses** Objects, MyObject; *{ For TMyObject definition and registration }*

**Var** C : PCollection;  
M : PMyObject;  
I : Longint;  
S : PMemoryStream;

**begin**

C:=New( PCollection, Init (100,10));  
For I:=1 to 100 do  
begin

```
M:=New(PMyObject, Init );
M^. SetField(100-I);
C^. Insert (M);
end;
Writeln ( ' Inserted ',C^.Count, ' objects ');
S:=New(PMemoryStream, Init (1000,10));
C^. Store (S^);
C^. FreeAll;
Dispose(C, Done);
S^. Seek(0);
C^. Load(S^);
Writeln ( ' Read ',C^.Count, ' objects from stream.' );
Dispose(S, Done);
Dispose(C, Done);
end.
```

---

### TCollection.Done

Declaration: Destructor TCollection.Done; Virtual;

Description: Done frees all objects in the collection, and then releases all memory occupied by the instance.

Errors: None.

See also: Init (310), FreeAll (315)

For an example, see TCollection.ForEach (320).

### TCollection.At

Declaration: Function TCollection.At (Index: Sw\_Integer): Pointer;

Description: At returns the item at position Index.

Errors: If Index is less than zero or larger than the number of items in the collection, seepErrorTCollection.Error is called with coIndexError and Index as arguments, resulting in a run-time error.

See also: Insert (317)

---

#### Program ex23;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.At method }*

**Uses** Objects, MyObject; *{ For TMyObject definition and registration }*

**Var** C : PCollection;  
M : PMyObject;  
I : Longint;

**begin**

```
C:=New( PCollection , Init (100,10));
For I:=1 to 100 do
  begin
    M:=New(PMyObject, Init );
    M^. SetField(100-I);
    C^. Insert (M);
```



```
    end;  
    For I:=0 to C^.Count-1 do  
    begin  
        M:=C^.At(I);  
        Writeln ( ' Object ',i,' has field : ',M^.GetField );  
    end;  
    C^.FreeAll;  
    Dispose(C,Done);  
end.
```

---

### **TCollection.IndexOf**

Declaration: Function TCollection.IndexOf (Item: Pointer): Sw\_Integer; Virtual;

Description: IndexOf returns the index of Item in the collection. If Item isn't present in the collection, -1 is returned.

Errors:

See also:

---

```
Program ex24;  
  
    { Program to demonstrate the TCollection.IndexOf method }  
  
    Uses Objects,MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }  
  
    Var C : PCollection;  
        M,Keep : PMyObject;  
        I : Longint;  
  
    begin  
        Randomize;  
        C:=New( PCollection , Init (100,10));  
        Keep:=Nil;  
        For I:=1 to 100 do  
        begin  
            M:=New(PMyObject, Init );  
            M^.SetField(I-1);  
            If Random<0.1 then  
                Keep:=M;  
            C^.Insert(M);  
        end;  
        If Keep=Nil then  
        begin  
            Writeln ( ' Please run again . No object selected ' );  
            Halt(1);  
        end;  
        Writeln ( ' Selected object has field : ',Keep^.GetField);  
        Write ( ' Selected object has index : ',C^.IndexOf(Keep));  
        Writeln ( ' should match it ' 's field .' );  
        C^.FreeAll;  
        Dispose(C,Done);  
    end.
```

---

**TCollection.GetItem**

Declaration: `Function TCollection.GetItem (Var S: TStream): Pointer; Virtual;`

Description: `GetItem` reads a single item off the stream `S`, and returns a pointer to this item. This method is used internally by the `Load` method, and should not be used directly.

Errors: Possible errors are the ones from `TStream.Get` (292).

See also: `TStream.Get` (292), `seep1StoreTCollection.Store`

**TCollection.LastThat**

Declaration: `Function TCollection.LastThat (Test: Pointer): Pointer;`

Description: This function returns the last item in the collection for which `Test` returns a non-nil result. `Test` is a function that accepts 1 argument: a pointer to an object, and that returns a pointer as a result.

Errors: None.

See also: `FirstThat` (314)

---

```
Program ex21;

{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.Foreach method }

Uses Objects, MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }

Var C : PCollection;
    M : PMyObject;
    I : Longint;

Function CheckField (Dummy: Pointer; P : PMyObject) : Longint;

begin
  If P^.GetField<56 then
    Checkfield:=1
  else
    CheckField:=0;
end;

begin
  C:=New(PCollection, Init(100,10));
  For I:=1 to 100 do
    begin
      M:=New(PMyObject, Init);
      M^.SetField(I);
      C^.Insert(M);
    end;
  Writeln ('Inserted ', C^.Count, ' objects');
  Writeln ('Last one for which Field<56 has index (should be 54) : ',
    C^.IndexOf(C^.LastThat(@CheckField)));
  C^.FreeAll;
  Dispose(C, Done);
end.
```

---

### TCollection.FirstThat

Declaration: `Function TCollection.FirstThat (Test: Pointer): Pointer;`

Description: This function returns the first item in the collection for which `Test` returns a non-nil result. `Test` is a function that accepts 1 argument: a pointer to an object, and that returns a pointer as a result.

Errors: None.

See also: `LastThat` (313)

---

```
Program ex21;

{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.FirstThat method }

Uses Objects, MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }

Var C : PCollection;
    M : PMyObject;
    I : Longint;

Function CheckField (Dummy: Pointer; P : PMyObject) : Longint;

begin
    If P^.GetField>56 then
        Checkfield:=1
    else
        CheckField:=0;
    end;

begin
    C:=New(PCollection, Init(100,10));
    For I:=1 to 100 do
        begin
            M:=New(PMyObject, Init);
            M^.SetField(I);
            C^.Insert(M);
        end;
    Writeln ('Inserted ', C^.Count, ' objects ');
    Writeln ('first one for which Field>56 has index (should be 56) : ',
        C^.IndexOf(C^.FirstThat (@CheckField)));
    C^.FreeAll;
    Dispose(C, Done);
end.
```

---

### TCollection.Pack

Declaration: `Procedure TCollection.Pack;`

Description: `Pack` removes all `Nil` pointers from the collection, and adjusts `Count` to reflect this change. No memory is freed as a result of this call. In order to free any memory, you can call `SetLimit` with an argument of `Count` after a call to `Pack`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetLimit` (321)

---

```
Program ex21;

{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.FirstThat method }

Uses Objects, MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }

Var C : PCollection;
      M : PMyObject;
      I : Longint;

Function CheckField (Dummy: Pointer; P : PMyObject) : Longint;

begin
  If P^.GetField>56 then
    Checkfield:=1
  else
    CheckField:=0;
end;

begin
  C:=New( PCollection , Init (100,10));
  For I:=1 to 100 do
    begin
      M:=New( PMyObject, Init );
      M^.SetField(I);
      C^.Insert(M);
    end;
  Writeln ( 'Inserted ', C^.Count, ' objects ');
  Writeln ( 'first one for which Field>56 has index ( should be 56 ) : ',
    C^.IndexOf(C^.FirstThat (@CheckField)));
  C^.FreeAll;
  Dispose(C, Done);
end.
```

---

### TCollection.FreeAll

Declaration: Procedure TCollection.FreeAll;

Description: FreeAll calls the destructor of each object in the collection. It doesn't release any memory occupied by the collection itself, but it does set Count to zero.

Errors:

See also: DeleteAll (316), FreeItem (319)

---

```
Program ex28;

{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.FreeAll method }

Uses Objects, MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }

Var C : PCollection;
      M : PMyObject;
      I, InitMem : Longint;

begin
```

```
Randomize;
C:=New( PCollection , Init (120,10));
InitMem:=Memavail;
Writeln ( ' Initial memory : ' , InitMem);
For I:=1 to 100 do
begin
M:=New( PMyObject, Init );
M^. SetField (I-1);
C^. Insert (M);
end;
Writeln ( ' Added 100 Items . Memory available : ' , Memavail);
Write ( ' Lost : ' , Initmem-Memavail , ' bytes .' );
Write ( '( Should be 100* ' , SizeOf (TMyObject));
Writeln ( '=' , 100* SizeOf (TMyObject) , ' ) ' );
C^. FreeAll;
Writeln ( ' Freed all objects . Memory available : ' , Memavail);
Writeln ( ' Lost : ' , Initmem-Memavail , ' bytes .' );
Dispose (C, Done);
end.
```

---

### TCollection.DeleteAll

Declaration: Procedure TCollection.DeleteAll;

Description: DeleteAll deletes all elements from the collection. It just sets the Count variable to zero.  
Contrary to FreeAll (315), DeleteAll doesn't call the destructor of the objects.

Errors: None.

See also: FreeAll (315), Delete (318)

---

**Program** ex29;

```
{
  Program to demonstrate the TCollection.DeleteAll method
  Compare with example 28, where FreeAll is used.
}
```

**Uses** Objects, MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }

**Var** C : PCollection;  
M : PMyObject;  
I, InitMem : Longint;

```
begin
Randomize;
C:=New( PCollection , Init (120,10));
InitMem:=Memavail;
Writeln ( ' Initial memory : ' , InitMem);
For I:=1 to 100 do
begin
M:=New( PMyObject, Init );
M^. SetField (I-1);
C^. Insert (M);
end;
Writeln ( ' Added 100 Items . Memory available : ' , Memavail);
Write ( ' Lost : ' , Initmem-Memavail , ' bytes .' );
```

```
Write    ('( Should be 100*',SizeOf(TMyObject));
Writeln ('=',100*SizeOf(TMyObject),' ');
C^.DeleteAll;
Writeln ('Deleted all objects. Memory available : ',Memavail);
Writeln ('Lost : ',Initmem-Memavail,' bytes. ');
Dispose(C,Done);
end.
```

---

### TCollection.Free

Declaration: Procedure TCollection.Free (Item: Pointer);

Description: Free Deletes Item from the collection, and calls the destructor Done of the object.

Errors: If the Item is not in the collection, Error will be called with coIndexError.

See also: FreeItem (319),

---

```
Program ex30;

{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.Free method }

Uses Objects,MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }

Var C : PCollection;
    M : PMyObject;
    I,InitMem : Longint;

begin
  Randomize;
  C:=New(PCollection, Init(120,10));
  InitMem:=Memavail;
  Writeln ('Initial memory : ',InitMem);
  For I:=1 to 100 do
    begin
      M:=New(PMyObject, Init);
      M^.SetField(I-1);
      C^.Insert(M);
    end;
  Writeln ('Added 100 Items. Memory available : ',Memavail);
  Write ('Lost : ',Initmem-Memavail,' bytes. ');
  Write    ('( Should be 100*',SizeOf(TMyObject));
  Writeln ('=',100*SizeOf(TMyObject),' ');
  With C^ do
    While Count>0 do Free(At(Count-1));
  Writeln ('Freed all objects. Memory available : ',Memavail);
  Writeln ('Lost : ',Initmem-Memavail,' bytes. ');
  Dispose(C,Done);
end.
```

---

### TCollection.Insert

Declaration: Procedure TCollection.Insert (Item: Pointer); Virtual;

Description: Insert inserts Item in the collection. TCollection inserts this item at the end, but descendent objects may insert it at another place.

Errors: None.

See also: AtInsert (322), AtPut (321),

### **TCollection.Delete**

Declaration: Procedure TCollection.Delete (Item: Pointer);

Description: Delete deletes Item from the collection. It doesn't call the item's destructor, though. For this the Free (317) call is provided.

Errors: If the Item is not in the collection, Error will be called with coIndexError.

See also: AtDelete (319), Free (317)

---

```
Program ex31;

{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.Delete method }

Uses Objects, MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }

Var C : PCollection;
    M : PMyObject;
    I, InitMem : Longint;

begin
  Randomize;
  C:=New( PCollection , Init (120,10));
  InitMem:=Memavail;
  Writeln ( ' Initial memory : ' , InitMem );
  For I:=1 to 100 do
    begin
      M:=New( PMyObject, Init );
      M^. SetField (I-1);
      C^. Insert (M);
    end;
  Writeln ( ' Added 100 Items . Memory available : ' , Memavail );
  Write ( ' Lost : ' , Initmem-Memavail , ' bytes . ' );
  Write ( ' ( Should be 100* ' , SizeOf (TMyObject));
  Writeln ( ' = ' , 100* SizeOf (TMyObject) , ' ) ' );
  With C^ do
    While Count>0 do Delete ( At (Count-1));
  Writeln ( ' Freed all objects . Memory available : ' , Memavail );
  Writeln ( ' Lost : ' , Initmem-Memavail , ' bytes . ' );
  Dispose (C, Done);
end.
```

---

### **TCollection.AtFree**

Declaration: Procedure TCollection.AtFree (Index: Sw\_Integer);

Description: AtFree deletes the item at position Index in the collection, and calls the item's destructor if it is not Nil.

Errors: If Index isn't valid then Error (321) is called with CoIndexError.

See also: Free (317), AtDelete (319)

---

**Program** ex32;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.AtFree method }*

**Uses** Objects, MyObject; *{ For TMyObject definition and registration }*

**Var** C : PCollection;  
M : PMyObject;  
I, InitMem : Longint;

**begin**

Randomize;

C:=New( PCollection, Init (120,10));

InitMem:=Memavail;

Writeln ( ' Initial memory : ', InitMem );

**For** I:=1 **to** 100 **do**

**begin**

M:=New( PMyObject, Init );

M^. SetField (I-1);

C^. Insert (M);

**end**;

Writeln ( ' Added 100 Items . Memory available : ', Memavail );

Write ( ' Lost : ', Initmem-Memavail, ' bytes .' );

Write ( '( Should be 100\*', SizeOf(TMyObject));

Writeln ( '= ', 100\*SizeOf(TMyObject), ' )' );

**With** C^ **do**

**While** Count>0 **do** AtFree (Count-1);

Writeln ( ' Freed all objects . Memory available : ', Memavail );

Writeln ( ' Lost : ', Initmem-Memavail, ' bytes .' );

Dispose(C, Done);

**end**.

---

## **TCollection.FreeItem**

**Declaration:** Procedure TCollection.FreeItem (Item: Pointer); Virtual;

**Description:** FreeItem calls the destructor of Item if it is not nil.

This function is used internally by the TCollection object, and should not be called directly.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** Free (318), seeplAtFreeTCollection.AtFree

## **TCollection.AtDelete**

**Declaration:** Procedure TCollection.AtDelete (Index: Sw\_Integer);

**Description:** AtDelete deletes the pointer at position Index in the collection. It doesn't call the object's destructor.

**Errors:** If Index isn't valid then Error (321) is called with CoIndexError.

**See also:** Delete (318)



---

```
Program ex33;

{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.Delete method }

Uses Objects, MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }

Var C : PCollection;
    M : PMyObject;
    I, InitMem : Longint;

begin
  Randomize;
  C:=New(PCollection, Init (120,10));
  InitMem:=Memavail;
  Writeln ( ' Initial memory : ', InitMem );
  For I:=1 to 100 do
    begin
      M:=New(PMyObject, Init );
      M^.SetField (I-1);
      C^.Insert (M);
    end;
  Writeln ( ' Added 100 Items. Memory available : ', Memavail );
  Write ( ' Lost : ', Initmem-Memavail, ' bytes.' );
  Write ( '( Should be 100*', SizeOf(TMyObject));
  Writeln ( '=', 100*SizeOf(TMyObject), ')' );
  With C^ do
    While Count>0 do AtDelete (Count-1);
  Writeln ( ' Freed all objects. Memory available : ', Memavail );
  Writeln ( ' Lost : ', Initmem-Memavail, ' bytes.' );
  Dispose(C, Done);
end.
```

---

## TCollection.ForEach

Declaration: Procedure TCollection.ForEach (Action: Pointer);

Description: ForEach calls Action for each element in the collection, and passes the element as an argument to Action.

Action is a procedural type variable that accepts a pointer as an argument.

Errors: None.

See also: FirstThat (314), LastThat (313)

---

```
Program ex21;

{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.ForEach method }

Uses Objects, MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }

Var C : PCollection;
    M : PMyObject;
    I : Longint;

Procedure PrintField (Dummy: Pointer; P : PMyObject);
```

```
begin
  Writeln ( ' Field : ' , P^.GetField );
end;

begin
  C:=New( PCollection , Init (100,10));
  For I:=1 to 100 do
    begin
      M:=New( PMyObject , Init );
      M^.SetField (100-I);
      C^.Insert (M);
    end;
  Writeln ( ' Inserted ' , C^.Count , ' objects ' );
  C^.ForEach ( @PrintField );
  C^.FreeAll;
  Dispose (C, Done);
end.
```

---

### **TCollection.SetLimit**

Declaration: Procedure TCollection.SetLimit (ALimit: Sw\_Integer); Virtual;

Description: SetLimit sets the maximum number of elements in the collection. ALimit must not be less than Count, and should not be larger than MaxCollectionSize

Errors: None.

See also: Init (310)

For an example, see Pack (314).

### **TCollection.Error**

Declaration: Procedure TCollection.Error (Code, Info: Integer); Virtual;

Description: Error is called by the various TCollection methods in case of an error condition. The default behaviour is to make a call to RunError with an error of 212-Code.

This method can be overridden by descendent objects to implement a different error-handling.

Errors:

See also: Abstract (283)

### **TCollection.AtPut**

Declaration: Procedure TCollection.AtPut (Index: Sw\_Integer; Item: Pointer);

Description: AtPut sets the element at position Index in the collection to Item. Any previous value is overwritten.

Errors: If Index isn't valid then Error (321) is called with CoIndexError.

See also:

For an example, see Pack (314).

**TCollection.AtInsert**

Declaration: `Procedure TCollection.AtInsert (Index: Sw_Integer; Item: Pointer);`

Description: `AtInsert` inserts `Item` in the collection at position `Index`, shifting all elements by one position.  
In case the current limit is reached, the collection will try to expand with a call to `SetLimit`

Errors: If `Index` isn't valid then `Error (321)` is called with `CoIndexError`. If the collection fails to expand, then `coOverflow` is passed to `Error`.

See also: `Insert (317)`

---

```
Program ex34;

{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.AtInsert method }

Uses Objects, MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }

Var C : PCollection;
    M : PMyObject;
    I : Longint;

Procedure PrintField (Dummy: Pointer; P : PMyObject);

begin
    Writeln ( ' Field : ' , P^.GetField );
end;

begin
    Randomize;
    C:=New( PCollection, Init (120,10));
    Writeln ( ' Inserting 100 records at random places.' );
    For I:=1 to 100 do
        begin
            M:=New( PMyObject, Init );
            M^.SetField ( I-1 );
            If I=1 then
                C^.Insert (M)
            else
                With C^ do
                    AtInsert (Random( Count ), M);
            end;
            Writeln ( ' Values : ' );
            C^.Foreach ( @PrintField );
            Dispose (C, Done);
end.
```

---

**TCollection.Store**

Declaration: `Procedure TCollection.Store (Var S: TStream);`

Description: `Store` writes the collection to the stream `S`. It does this by writing the current `Count`, `Limit` and `Delta` to the stream, and then writing each item to the stream.

The contents of the stream are then suitable for instantiating another collection with `Load (310)`.

Errors: Errors returned are those by `TStream.Put (296)`.

See also: Load (310), PutItem (323)

For an example, see `seepLoadTCollection.Load`.

### **TCollection.PutItem**

Declaration: `Procedure TCollection.PutItem (Var S: TStream; Item: Pointer); Virtual;`

Description: `PutItem` writes `Item` to stream `S`. This method is used internally by the `TCollection` object, and should not be called directly.

Errors: Errors are those returned by `TStream.Put` (296).

See also: Store (322), GetItem (313).

## **15.11 TSortedCollection**

`TSortedCollection` is an abstract class, implementing a sorted collection. You should never use an instance of `TSortedCollection` directly, instead you should declare a descendent type, and override the `Compare` (325) method.

Because the collection is ordered, `TSortedCollection` overrides some `TCollection` methods, to provide faster routines for lookup.

The `Compare` (325) method decides how elements in the collection should be ordered. Since `TCollection` has no way of knowing how to order pointers, you must override the compare method.

Additionally, `TCollection` provides a means to filter out duplicates. if you set `Duplicates` to `False` (the default) then duplicates will not be allowed.

Here is the complete declaration of `TSortedCollection`

```
TYPE
  TSortedCollection = OBJECT (TCollection)
    Duplicates: Boolean; { Duplicates flag }
    Constructor Init (ALimit, ADelta: Sw_Integer);
    Constructor Load (Var S: TStream);
    Function KeyOf (Item: Pointer): Pointer; Virtual;
    Function IndexOf (Item: Pointer): Sw_Integer; Virtual;
    Function Compare (Key1, Key2: Pointer): Sw_Integer; Virtual;
    Function Search (Key: Pointer; Var Index: Sw_Integer): Boolean; Virtual;
    Procedure Insert (Item: Pointer); Virtual;
    Procedure Store (Var S: TStream);
  END;
  PSortedCollection = ^TSortedCollection;
```

In the subsequent examples, the following descendent of `TSortedCollection` is used:

---

**Unit** `MySortC`;

**Interface**

**Uses** `Objects`;

**Type**

```
PMysortedCollection = ^ TMySortedCollection ;  
TMySortedCollection = Object ( TSortedCollection )  
    Function Compare ( Key1,Key2 : Pointer ) : Sw_integer ; virtual ;  
    end ;
```

### Implementation

**Uses** MyObject ;

**Function** TMySortedCollection . Compare ( Key1,Key2 : Pointer ) : sw\_integer ;

**begin**

Compare:= PMyobject ( Key1 ) ^ . GetField – PMyObject ( Key2 ) ^ . GetField ;  
**end** ;

**end** .

---

## TSortedCollection.Init

**Declaration:** Constructor TSortedCollection . Init ( ALimit , ADelta : Sw\_Integer ) ;

**Description:** Init calls the inherited constructor (see TCollection . Init (310)) and sets the Duplicates flag to false.

You should not call this method directly, since TSortedCollection is a abstract class. Instead, the descendent classes should call it via the inherited keyword.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** Load (324), Done (311)

For an example, see

## TSortedCollection.Load

**Declaration:** Constructor Load ( Var S : TStream ) ;

**Description:** Load calls the inherited constructor (see TCollection . Load (310)) and reads the Duplicates flag from the stream..

You should not call this method directly, since TSortedCollection is a abstract class. Instead, the descendent classes should call it via the inherited keyword.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** Init (324), Done (311)

For an example, see TCollection . Load (310).

## TSortedCollection.KeyOf

**Declaration:** Function TSortedCollection . KeyOf ( Item : Pointer ) : Pointer ; Virtual ;

**Description:** KeyOf returns the key associated with Item. TSortedCollection returns the item itself as the key, descendent objects can override this method to calculate a (unique) key based on the item passed (such as hash values).

Keys are used to sort the objects, they are used to search and sort the items in the collection. If descendent types override this method then it allows possibly for faster search/sort methods based on keys rather than on the objects themselves.

Errors: None.

See also: [IndexOf \(325\)](#), [Compare \(325\)](#).

### **TSortedCollection.IndexOf**

**Declaration:** `Function TSortedCollection.IndexOf (Item: Pointer): Sw_Integer; Virtual;`

**Description:** `IndexOf` returns the index of `Item` in the collection. It searches for the object based on it's key. If duplicates are allowed, then it returns the index of last object that matches `Item`. In case `Item` is not found in the collection, -1 is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: [Search \(326\)](#), [Compare \(325\)](#).

For an example, see [TCollection.IndexOf \(312\)](#)

### **TSortedCollection.Compare**

**Declaration:** `Function TSortedCollection.Compare (Key1, Key2: Pointer): Sw_Integer; Virtual;`

**Description:** `Compare` is an abstract method that should be overridden by descendent objects in order to compare two items in the collection. This method is used in the [Search \(326\)](#) method and in the [Insert \(327\)](#) method to determine the ordering of the objects.

The function should compare the two keys of items and return the following function results:

**Result < 0**If `Key1` is logically before `Key2` (`Key1<Key2`)

**Result = 0**If `Key1` and `Key2` are equal. (`Key1=Key2`)

**Result > 0**If `Key1` is logically after `Key2` (`Key1>Key2`)

Errors: An 'abstract run-time error' will be generated if you call `TSortedCollection.Compare` directly.

See also: [IndexOf \(325\)](#), [Search \(326\)](#)

---

**Unit** `MySortC`;

**Interface**

**Uses** `Objects`;

**Type**

`PMySortedCollection` = `^ TMySortedCollection`;

`TMySortedCollection` = **Object**( `TSortedCollection` )

**Function** `Compare` ( `Key1, Key2 : Pointer` ): `Sw_integer`; **virtual**;  
**end**;

**Implementation**

**Uses** MyObject;

**Function** TMySortedCollection.Compare ( Key1,Key2 : Pointer ) : sw\_integer;

**begin**

    Compare:= PMyObject (Key1)^. GetField – PMyObject (Key2)^. GetField;

**end;**

**end.**

---

### **TSortedCollection.Search**

**Declaration:** Function TSortedCollection.Search (Key: Pointer; Var Index: Sw\_Integer): Boolean;Virtual;

**Description:** Search looks for the item with key Key and returns the position of the item (if present) in the collection in Index.

Instead of a linear search as TCollection does, TSortedCollection uses a binary search based on the keys of the objects. It uses the **Compare** (325) function to implement this search.

If the item is found, Search returns True, otherwise False is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: IndexOf (312).

---

**Program** ex36;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TSortedCollection.Insert method }*

**Uses** Objects, MyObject, MySortC;

*{ For TMyObject, TMySortedCollection definition and registration }*

**Var** C : PSortedCollection;

    M : PMyObject;

    I : Longint;

**Procedure** PrintField (Dummy: Pointer;P : PMyObject);

**begin**

    Writeln ( ' Field : ' ,P^. GetField );

**end;**

**begin**

    Randomize;

    C:=New( PMySortedCollection , Init (120,10));

    C^. Duplicates :=True;

    Writeln ( ' Inserting 100 records at random places.' );

    For I:=1 to 100 do

**begin**

            M:=New( PMyObject, Init );

            M^. SetField (Random(100));

            C^. Insert (M)

**end;**

    M:=New( PMyObject, Init );

    Repeat;

```
Write ( 'Value to search for (-1 stops) :' );
read ( I );
If I <> -1 then
  begin
    M^.SetField(i);
    If Not C^.Search (M,I) then
      Writeln ( 'No such value found' )
    else
      begin
        Write ( 'Value ', PMyObject(C^.At(I))^ .GetField );
        Writeln ( ' present at position ', I );
      end;
    end;
  Until I=-1;
  Dispose(M, Done);
  Dispose(C, Done);
end.
```

---

### **TSortedCollection.Insert**

Declaration: Procedure TSortedCollection.Insert (Item: Pointer); Virtual;

Description: Insert inserts an item in the collection at the correct position, such that the collection is ordered at all times. You should never use AtInsert (322), since then the collection ordering is not guaranteed.

If Item is already present in the collection, and Duplicates is False, the item will not be inserted.

Errors: None.

See also: AtInsert (322)

---

**Program** ex35;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TSortedCollection.Insert method }*

**Uses** Objects, MyObject, MySortC;

*{ For TMyObject, TMySortedCollection definition and registration }*

**Var** C : PSortedCollection ;

    M : PMyObject;

    I : Longint;

**Procedure** PrintField (Dummy: Pointer; P : PMyObject);

**begin**

    Writeln ( ' Field : ', P^.GetField );

**end;**

**begin**

    Randomize;

    C:=New(PMySortedCollection, Init (120,10));

    Writeln ( ' Inserting 100 records at random places.' );

    For I:=1 to 100 do

**begin**

            M:=New(PMyObject, Init );



```
    M^.SetField(Random(100));  
    C^.Insert(M)  
  end;  
  Writeln('Values : ');  
  C^.Foreach(@PrintField);  
  Dispose(C, Done);  
end.
```

---

### **TSortedCollection.Store**

Declaration: Procedure TSortedCollection.Store (Var S: TStream);

Description: Store writes the collection to the stream S. It does this by calling the inherited TCollection.Store (322), and then writing the Duplicates flag to the stream.

After a Store, the collection can be loaded from the stream with the constructor Load (324)

Errors: Errors can be those of TStream.Put (296).

See also: Load (324)

For an example, see TCollection.Load (310).

## **15.12 TStringCollection**

The TStringCollection object manages a sorted collection of pascal strings. To this end, it overrides the Compare (325) method of TSortedCollection, and it introduces methods to read/write strings from a stream.

Here is the full declaration of the TStringCollection object:

```
TYPE  
  TStringCollection = OBJECT (TSortedCollection)  
    Function GetItem (Var S: TStream): Pointer; Virtual;  
    Function Compare (Key1, Key2: Pointer): Sw_Integer; Virtual;  
    Procedure FreeItem (Item: Pointer); Virtual;  
    Procedure PutItem (Var S: TStream; Item: Pointer); Virtual;  
  END;  
  PStringCollection = ^TStringCollection;
```

### **TStringCollection.GetItem**

Declaration: Function TStringCollection.GetItem (Var S: TStream): Pointer; Virtual;

Description: GetItem reads a string from the stream S and returns a pointer to it. It doesn't insert the string in the collection.

This method is primarily introduced to be able to load and store the collection from and to a stream.

Errors: The errors returned are those of TStream.ReadStr (295).

See also: PutItem (330)

### TStringCollection.Compare

Declaration: Function TStringCollection.Compare (Key1, Key2: Pointer): Sw\_Integer;  
Virtual;

Description: TStringCollection overrides the Compare function so it compares the two keys as if they were pointers to strings. The compare is done case sensitive. It returns the following results:

-1 if the first string is alphabetically earlier than the second string.

0 if the two strings are equal.

1 if the first string is alphabetically later than the second string.

Errors: None.

See also: TSortedCollection.Compare (325)

---

```
Program ex37;  
  
  { Program to demonstrate the TStringCollection.Compare method }  
  
Uses Objects;  
  
Var C : PStringCollection;  
    S : String;  
    I : longint;  
  
begin  
  Randomize;  
  C:=New(PStringCollection, Init(120,10));  
  C^.Duplicates:=True; { Duplicates allowed }  
  Writeln('Inserting 100 records at random places.');
```

```
  For I:=1 to 100 do  
    begin  
      Str(Random(100),S);  
      S:='String with value '+S;  
      C^.Insert(NewStr(S));  
    end;  
  For I:=0 to 98 do  
    With C^ do  
      If Compare(At(i),At(i+1))=0 then  
        Writeln('Duplicate string found at position ',i);  
  Dispose(C,Done);  
end.
```

---

### TStringCollection.FreeItem

Declaration: Procedure TStringCollection.FreeItem (Item: Pointer); Virtual;

Description: TStringCollection overrides FreeItem so that the string pointed to by Item is disposed from memory.

Errors: None.

See also: TCollection.FreeItem (319)

**TStringCollection.PutItem**

**Declaration:** `Procedure TStringCollection.PutItem (Var S: TStream; Item: Pointer); Virtual;`

**Description:** PutItem writes the string pointed to by Item to the stream S.

This method is primarily used in the Load and Store methods, and should not be used directly.

**Errors:** Errors are those of TStream.WriteString (297).

**See also:** GetItem (328)

**15.13 TStrCollection**

The TStrCollection object manages a sorted collection of null-terminated strings (pchar strings). To this end, it overrides the Compare (325) method of TSortedCollection, and it introduces methods to read/write strings from a stream.

Here is the full declaration of the TStrCollection object:

```
TYPE
  TStrCollection = OBJECT (TSortedCollection)
    Function Compare (Key1, Key2: Pointer): Sw_Integer; Virtual;
    Function GetItem (Var S: TStream): Pointer; Virtual;
    Procedure FreeItem (Item: Pointer); Virtual;
    Procedure PutItem (Var S: TStream; Item: Pointer); Virtual;
  END;
  PStrCollection = ^TStrCollection;
```

**TStrCollection.GetItem**

**Declaration:** `Function TStrCollection.GetItem (Var S: TStream): Pointer; Virtual;`

**Description:** GetItem reads a null-terminated string from the stream S and returns a pointer to it. It doesn't insert the string in the collection.

This method is primarily introduced to be able to load and store the collection from and to a stream.

**Errors:** The errors returned are those of TStream.StrRead (293).

**See also:** PutItem (331)

**TStrCollection.Compare**

**Declaration:** `Function TStrCollection.Compare (Key1, Key2: Pointer): Sw_Integer; Virtual;`

**Description:** TStrCollection overrides the Compare function so it compares the two keys as if they were pointers to strings. The compare is done case sensitive. It returns

-1 if the first string is alphabetically earlier than the second string.

0 if the two strings are equal.

1 if the first string is alphabetically later than the second string.

**Errors:** None.

See also: TSortedCollection.Compare (325)

---

```
Program ex38;

{ Program to demonstrate the TStrCollection.Compare method }

Uses Objects, Strings;

Var C : PStrCollection;
    S : String;
    I : longint;
    P : Pchar;

begin
  Randomize;
  C:=New( PStrCollection, Init (120,10));
  C^.Duplicates:=True; { Duplicates allowed }
  Writeln ( ' Inserting 100 records at random places.' );
  For I:=1 to 100 do
    begin
      Str(Random(100),S);
      S:=' String with value '+S;
      P:= StrAlloc (Length(S)+1);
      C^. Insert (StrPCopy(P,S));
    end;
  For I:=0 to 98 do
    With C^ do
      If Compare ( At(I), At(I+1))=0 then
        Writeln ( ' Duplicate string found at position ',I);
  Dispose(C,Done);
end.
```

---

### TStrCollection.FreeItem

Declaration: Procedure TStrCollection.FreeItem (Item: Pointer); Virtual;

Description: TStrCollection overrides FreeItem so that the string pointed to by Item is disposed from memory.

Errors: None.

See also: TCollection.FreeItem (319)

### TStrCollection.PutItem

Declaration: Procedure TStrCollection.PutItem (Var S: TStream; Item: Pointer); Virtual;

Description: PutItem writes the string pointed to by Item to the stream S.

This method is primarily used in the Load and Store methods, and should not be used directly.

Errors: Errors are those of TStream.StrWrite (297).

See also: GetItem (330)

## 15.14 TUnSortedStrCollection

The TUnSortedStrCollection object manages an unsorted list of objects. To this end, it overrides the TSortedCollection.Insert (327) method to add strings at the end of the collection, rather than in the alphabetically correct position.

Take care, the Search (326) and IndexOf (312) methods will not work on an unsorted string collection.

Here is the full declaration of the TUnsortedStrCollection object:

```
TYPE
  TUnSortedStrCollection = OBJECT (TStringCollection)
    Procedure Insert (Item: Pointer); Virtual;
  END;
  PUnSortedStrCollection = ^TUnSortedStrCollection;
```

### TUnSortedStrCollection.Insert

Declaration: Procedure TUnSortedStrCollection.Insert (Item: Pointer); Virtual;

Description: Insert inserts a string at the end of the collection, instead of on its alphabetical place, resulting in an unsorted collection of strings.

Errors:

See also:

---

```
Program ex39;

{ Program to demonstrate the TUnsortedStrCollection.Insert method }

Uses Objects, Strings;

Var C : PUnsortedStrCollection;
    S : String;
    I : longint;
    P : Pchar;

begin
  Randomize;
  C:=New(PUnsortedStrCollection, Init(120,10));
  Writeln('Inserting 100 records at random places. ');
  For I:=1 to 100 do
    begin
      Str(Random(100), S);
      S:='String with value '+S;
      P:=StrAlloc(Length(S)+1);
      C^.Insert(StrPCopy(P,S));
    end;
  For I:=0 to 99 do
    Writeln(I:2, ': ', PChar(C^.At(I)));
  Dispose(C, Done);
end.
```

---

## 15.15 TResourceCollection

A TResourceCollection manages a collection of resource names. It stores the position and the size of a resource, as well as the name of the resource. It stores these items in records that look like this:

```
TYPE
  TResourceItem = packed RECORD
    Posn: LongInt;
    Size: LongInt;
    Key : String;
  End;
  PResourceItem = ^TResourceItem;
```

It overrides some methods of TStringCollection in order to accomplish this.

Remark that the TResourceCollection manages the names of the resources and their associated positions and sizes, it doesn't manage the resources themselves.

Here is the full declaration of the TResourceCollection object:

```
TYPE
  TResourceCollection = OBJECT (TStringCollection)
    Function KeyOf (Item: Pointer): Pointer; Virtual;
    Function GetItem (Var S: TStream): Pointer; Virtual;
    Procedure FreeItem (Item: Pointer); Virtual;
    Procedure PutItem (Var S: TStream; Item: Pointer); Virtual;
  END;
  PResourceCollection = ^TResourceCollection;
```

### TResourceCollection.KeyOf

Declaration: Function TResourceCollection.KeyOf (Item: Pointer): Pointer; Virtual;

Description: KeyOf returns the key of an item in the collection. For resources, the key is a pointer to the string with the resource name.

Errors: None.

See also: TStringCollection.Compare (329)

### TResourceCollection.GetItem

Declaration: Function TResourceCollection.GetItem (Var S: TStream): Pointer; Virtual;

Description: GetItem reads a resource item from the stream S. It reads the position, size and name from the stream, in that order. It DOES NOT read the resource itself from the stream.

The resulting item is not inserted in the collection. This call is mainly for internal use by the TCollection.Load (310) method.

Errors: Errors returned are those by TStream.Read (298)

See also: TCollection.Load (310), TStream.Read (298)

### TResourceCollection.FreeItem

Declaration: `Procedure TResourceCollection.FreeItem (Item: Pointer); Virtual;`

Description: `FreeItem` releases the memory occupied by `Item`. It de-allocates the name, and then the resource item record.

It does NOT remove the item from the collection.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.FreeItem` (319)

### TResourceCollection.PutItem

Declaration: `Procedure TResourceCollection.PutItem (Var S: TStream; Item: Pointer); Virtual;`

Description: `PutItem` writes `Item` to the stream `S`. It does this by writing the position and size and name of the resource item to the stream.

This method is used primarily by the `Store` (322) method.

Errors: Errors returned are those by `TStream.Write` (298).

See also: `Store` (322)

## 15.16 TResourceFile

TYPE

```
TResourceFile = OBJECT (TObject)
    Stream : PStream; { File as a stream }
    Modified: Boolean; { Modified flag }
    Constructor Init (AStream: PStream);
    Destructor Done; Virtual;
    Function Count: Sw_Integer;
    Function KeyAt (I: Sw_Integer): String;
    Function Get (Key: String): PObject;
    Function SwitchTo (AStream: PStream; Pack: Boolean): PStream;
    Procedure Flush;
    Procedure Delete (Key: String);
    Procedure Put (Item: PObject; Key: String);
END;
PResourceFile = ^TResourceFile;
```

### TResourceFile Fields

`TResourceFile` has the following fields:

**Stream** contains the (file) stream that has the executable image and the resources. It can be initialized by the `Init` (335) constructor call.

**Modified** is set to `True` if one of the resources has been changed. It is set by the `SwitchTo` (335), `Delete` (336) and `Put` (336) methods. Calling `Flush` (336) will clear the `Modified` flag.

**TResourceFile.Init**

Declaration: Constructor `TResourceFile.Init (AStream: PStream);`

Description: `Init` instantiates a new instance of a `TResourceFile` object. If `AStream` is not `nil` then it is considered as a stream describing an executable image on disk.

`Init` will try to position the stream on the start of the resources section, and read all resources from the stream.

Errors: None.

See also: `Done` (335)

**TResourceFile.Done**

Declaration: Destructor `TResourceFile.Done; Virtual;`

Description: `Done` cleans up the instance of the `TResourceFile` Object. If `Stream` was specified at initialization, then `Stream` is disposed of too.

Errors: None.

See also: `Init` (335)

**TResourceFile.Count**

Declaration: Function `TResourceFile.Count: Sw_Integer;`

Description: `Count` returns the number of resources. If no resources were read, zero is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `Init` (335)

**TResourceFile.KeyAt**

Declaration: Function `TResourceFile.KeyAt (I: Sw_Integer): String;`

Description: `KeyAt` returns the key (the name) of the `I`-th resource.

Errors: In case `I` is invalid, `TCollection.Error` will be executed.

See also: `Get` (335)

**TResourceFile.Get**

Declaration: Function `TResourceFile.Get (Key: String): PObject;`

Description: `Get` returns a pointer to a instance of a resource identified by `Key`. If `Key` cannot be found in the list of resources, then `Nil` is returned.

Errors: Errors returned may be those by `TStream.Get`

See also:



**TResourceFile.SwitchTo**

Declaration: `Function TResourceFile.SwitchTo (AStream: PStream; Pack: Boolean): PStream;`

Description: `SwitchTo` switches to a new stream to hold the resources in. `AStream` will be the new stream after the call to `SwitchTo`.

If `Pack` is true, then all the known resources will be copied from the current stream to the new stream (`AStream`). If `Pack` is False, then only the current resource is copied.

The return value is the value of the original stream: `Stream`.

The `Modified` flag is set as a consequence of this call.

Errors: Errors returned can be those of `TStream.Read` (298) and `TStream.Write` (298).

See also: `Flush` (336)

**TResourceFile.Flush**

Declaration: `Procedure TResourceFile.Flush;`

Description: If the `Modified` flag is set to `True`, then `Flush` writes the resources to the stream `Stream`. It sets the `Modified` flag to true after that.

Errors: Errors can be those by `TStream.Seek` (297) and `TStream.Write` (298).

See also: `SwitchTo` (336)

**TResourceFile.Delete**

Declaration: `Procedure TResourceFile.Delete (Key: String);`

Description: `Delete` deletes the resource identified by `Key` from the collection. It sets the `Modified` flag to true.

Errors: None.

See also: `Flush` (336)

**TResourceFile.Put**

Declaration: `Procedure TResourceFile.Put (Item: PObject; Key: String);`

Description: `Put` sets the resource identified by `Key` to `Item`. If no such resource exists, a new one is created. The item is written to the stream.

Errors: Errors returned may be those by `TStream.Put` (296) and `TStream.Seek`

See also: `Get` (335)

## 15.17 TStringList

A `TStringList` object can be used to read a collection of strings stored in a stream. If you register this object with the `RegisterType` (283) function, you cannot register the `TStrListMaker` object.

This is the public declaration of the `TStringList` object:

```
TYPE
  TStrIndexRec = Packed RECORD
    Key, Count, Offset: Word;
  END;

  TStrIndex = Array [0..9999] Of TStrIndexRec;
  PStrIndex = ^TStrIndex;

  TStringList = OBJECT (TObject)
    Constructor Load (Var S: TStream);
    Destructor Done; Virtual;
    Function Get (Key: Sw_Word): String;
  END;
  PStringList = ^TStringList;
```

### **TStringList.Load**

Declaration: Constructor TStringList.Load (Var S: TStream);

Description: The Load constructor reads the TStringList object from the stream S. It also reads the descriptions of the strings from the stream. The string descriptions are stored as an array of TStrIndexrec records, where each record describes a string on the stream. These records are kept in memory.

Errors: If an error occurs, a stream error is triggered.

See also: Done (337)

### **TStringList.Done**

Declaration: Destructor TStringList.Done; Virtual;

Description: The Done destructor frees the memory occupied by the string descriptions, and destroys the object.

Errors: None.

See also: Load (337), TObject.Done (291)

### **TStringList.Get**

Declaration: Function TStringList.Get (Key: Sw\_Word): String;

Description: Get reads the string with key Key from the list of strings on the stream, and returns this string. If there is no string with such a key, an empty string is returned.

Errors: If no string with key Key is found, an empty string is returned. A stream error may result if the stream doesn't contain the needed strings.

See also: TStrListMaker.Put (338)

## **15.18 TStrListMaker**

The TStrListMaker object can be used to generate a stream with strings, which can be read with the TStringList object. If you register this object with the RegisterType (283) function, you cannot register the TStringList object.

This is the public declaration of the TStrListMaker object:

```
TYPE
  TStrListMaker = OBJECT (TObject)
    Constructor Init (AStrSize, AIndexSize: Sw_Word);
    Destructor Done; Virtual;
    Procedure Put (Key: Sw_Word; S: String);
    Procedure Store (Var S: TStream);
  END;
  PStrListMaker = ^TStrListMaker;
```

### **TStrListMaker.Init**

Declaration: Constructor TStrListMaker.Init (AStrSize, AIndexSize: Sw\_Word);

Description: The Init constructor creates a new instance of the TStrListMaker object. It allocates AStrSize bytes on the heap to hold all the strings you wish to store. It also allocates enough room for AIndexSize key description entries (of the type TStrIndexrec).

AStrSize must be large enough to contain all the strings you wish to store. If not enough memory is allocated, other memory will be overwritten. The same is true for AIndexSize : maximally AIndexSize strings can be written to the stream.

Errors: None.

See also: TObject.Init (290), Done (338)

### **TStrListMaker.Done**

Declaration: Destructor TStrListMaker.Done; Virtual;

Description: The Done destructor de-allocates the memory for the index description records and the string data, and then destroys the object.

Errors: None.

See also: TObject.Done (291), Init (338)

### **TStrListMaker.Put**

Declaration: Procedure TStrListMaker.Put (Key: Sw\_Word; S: String);

Description: Put adds the string S with key Key to the collection of strings. This action doesn't write the string to a stream. To write the strings to the stream, see the Store (338) method.

Errors: None.

See also: Store (338).

### **TStrListMaker.Store**

Declaration: Procedure TStrListMaker.Store (Var S: TStream);

Description: Store writes the collection of strings to the stream S. The collection can then be read with the TStringList object.

Errors: A stream error may occur when writing the strings to the stream.

See also: TStringList.Load (337), Put (338).

## Chapter 16

# The PORTS unit

### 16.1 Introduction

The ports unit implements the `port` constructs found in Turbo Pascal. It uses classes and default array properties to do this.

The unit exists on LINUX, OS/2 and DOS. It is implemented only for compatibility with Turbo Pascal. It's usage is discouraged, because using ports is not portable programming, and the operating system may not even allow it (for instance WINDOWS 32-BIT).

Under LINUX, your program must be run as root, or the `IOPerm` call must be set in order to set appropriate permissions on the port access.

### 16.2 Types, constants and variables

#### Types

The following types are defined to implement the port access.

```
tport = class
  protected
    procedure writeport(p : longint; data : byte);
    function readport(p : longint) : byte;
  public
    property pp[w : longint] : byte read readport write writeport; default;
end;
```

```
tportw = class
  protected
    procedure writeport(p : longint; data : word);
    function readport(p : longint) : word;
  public
    property pp[w : longint] : word read readport write writeport; default;
end;
```

```
tportl = class
  Protected
    procedure writeport(p : longint; data : longint);
    function readport(p : longint) : longint;
```

```
Public
  property pp[w : Longint] : longint read readport write writeport;default;
end;
```

Each of these types allows access to the ports using respectively, a byte, a word or a longint sized argument.

Since there is a default property for each of this types, a sentence as

```
port[221]:=12;
```

Will result in the byte 12 being written to port 221, if port is defined as a variable of type tport

### **variables**

The following variables are defined:

```
port,
portb : tport;
portw : tportw;
portl : tportl;
```

They allow access to the ports in a Turbo Pascal compatible way.

## Chapter 17

# The PRINTER unit.

This chapter describes the PRINTER unit for Free Pascal. It was written for DOS by Florian klämpfl, and it was written for LINUX by Michaël Van Canneyt, and has been ported to WINDOWS 32-BIT as well. Its basic functionality is the same for both systems, although there are minor differences on LINUX.

The chapter is divided in 2 sections:

- The first section lists types, constants and variables from the interface part of the unit.
- The second section describes the functions defined in the unit.

### 17.1 Types, Constants and variables :

```
var
  lst : text;
```

Lst is the standard printing device.

On LINUX, Lst is set up using `AssignLst ( '/tmp/PID.lst' )`. You can change this behaviour at compile time, setting the `DefFile` constant.

### 17.2 Procedures and functions

#### AssignLst

Declaration: `Procedure AssignLst ( Var F : text; ToFile : string[255]);`

Description: LINUX only.

Assigns to F a printing device. ToFile is a string with the following form:

- `'|filename options'` : This sets up a pipe with the program filename, with the given options, such as in the `popen()` call.
- `'filename'` : Prints to file filename. Filename can contain the string 'PID' (No Quotes), which will be replaced by the PID of your program. When closing lst, the file will be sent to lpr and deleted. (lpr should be in PATH)
- `'filename|'` : Idem as previous, only the file is NOT sent to lpr, nor is it deleted. (useful for opening `/dev/printer` or for later printing)

Errors: Errors are reported in Linuxerror.

See also: `lpr` (1)

---

```
program testprn ;

uses printer ;

var i : integer ;
    f : text ;

begin
  writeln ( 'Test of printer unit' );
  writeln ( 'Writing to lst...' );
  for i:=1 to 80 do writeln ( lst, 'This is line ', i, '.' #13);
  close ( lst );
  writeln ( 'Done.' );
  { $ifdef linux }
  writeln ( 'Writing to pipe...' );
  assignlst ( f, '|/ usr/bin/lpr -m' );
  rewrite ( f );
  for i:=1 to 80 do writeln ( f, 'This is line ', i, '.' #13);
  close ( f );
  writeln ( 'Done.' )
  { $endif }
end.
```

---

## Chapter 18

# The SOCKETS unit.

This chapter describes the SOCKETS unit for Free Pascal. it was written for LINUX by Michaël Van Canneyt, and ported to WINDOWS 32-BIT by Florian Klaempfl. The chapter is divided in 2 sections:

- The first section lists types, constants and variables from the interface part of the unit.
- The second section describes the functions defined in the unit.

### 18.1 Types, Constants and variables :

The following constants identify the different socket types, as needed in the `Socket` (353) call.

```
SOCK_STREAM      = 1; { stream (connection) socket    }
SOCK_DGRAM       = 2; { datagram (conn.less) socket   }
SOCK_RAW         = 3; { raw socket                     }
SOCK_RDM         = 4; { reliably-delivered message    }
SOCK_SEQPACKET   = 5; { sequential packet socket     }
SOCK_PACKET      = 10;
```

The following constants determine the socket domain, they are used in the `Socket` (353) call.

```
AF_UNSPEC        = 0;
AF_UNIX          = 1; { Unix domain sockets           }
AF_INET          = 2; { Internet IP Protocol          }
AF_AX25          = 3; { Amateur Radio AX.25           }
AF_IPX           = 4; { Novell IPX                    }
AF_APPLETALK     = 5; { Appletalk DDP                 }
AF_NETROM        = 6; { Amateur radio NetROM          }
AF_BRIDGE        = 7; { Multiprotocol bridge          }
AF_AAL5          = 8; { Reserved for Werner's ATM     }
AF_X25           = 9; { Reserved for X.25 project     }
AF_INET6         = 10; { IP version 6                 }
AF_MAX           = 12;
```

The following constants determine the protocol family, they are used in the `Socket` (353) call.

```
PF_UNSPEC        = AF_UNSPEC;
PF_UNIX          = AF_UNIX;
```



```
PF_INET      = AF_INET;
PF_AX25      = AF_AX25;
PF_IPX       = AF_IPX;
PF_APPLETALK = AF_APPLETALK;
PF_NETROM    = AF_NETROM;
PF_BRIDGE    = AF_BRIDGE;
PF_AAL5      = AF_AAL5;
PF_X25       = AF_X25;
PF_INET6     = AF_INET6;
PF_MAX       = AF_MAX;
```

The following types are used to store different kinds of addresses for the `Bind` (346), `Recv` (351) and `Send` (351) calls.

```
TSockAddr = packed Record
  family:word;
  data :array [0..13] of char;
end;
TUnixSockAddr = packed Record
  family:word;
  path:array[0..108] of char;
end;
TInetSockAddr = packed Record
  family:Word;
  port :Word;
  addr :Cardinal;
  pad :array [1..8] of byte;
end;
```

The following type is returned by the `SocketPair` (353) call.

```
TSockArray = Array[1..2] of Longint;
```

## 18.2 Functions and Procedures

### Accept

**Declaration:** `Function Accept (Sock:Longint;Var Addr;Var Addrlen:Longint) : Longint;`

**Description:** `Accept` accepts a connection from a socket `Sock`, which was listening for a connection. If a connection is accepted, a file descriptor is returned. On error `-1` is returned. The returned socket may NOT be used to accept more connections. The original socket remains open.

The `Accept` call fills the address of the connecting entity in `Addr`, and sets its length in `Addrlen`. `Addr` should be pointing to enough space, and `Addrlen` should be set to the amount of space available, prior to the call.

**Errors:** On error, `-1` is returned, and errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

**SYS\_EBADF**The socket descriptor is invalid.

**SYS\_ENOTSOCK**The descriptor is not a socket.

**SYS\_EOPNOTSUPP**The socket type doesn't support the `Listen` operation.

**SYS\_EFAULT**`Addr` points outside your address space.

**SYS\_EWOULDBLOCK**The requested operation would block the process.

See also: Listen (350), Connect (347)

---

```
Program server;  
  
{  
  Program to test Sockets unit by Michael van Canneyt and Peter Vreman  
  Server Version, First Run sock_svr to let it create a socket and then  
  sock_cli to connect to that socket  
}  
  
uses Linux, Sockets;  
const  
  SPath='ServerSoc';  
  
Var  
  FromName : string;  
  Buffer    : string[255];  
  S         : Longint;  
  Sin, Sout : Text;  
  
procedure perror (const S:string);  
begin  
  writeln (S, SocketError);  
  halt (100);  
end;  
  
begin  
  S:=Socket ( AF_UNIX, SOCK_STREAM, 0);  
  if SocketError<>0 then  
    Perror ( 'Server : Socket : ' );  
  UnLink(SPath);  
  if not Bind(S, SPath) then  
    Perror ( 'Server : Bind : ' );  
  if not Listen (S, 1) then  
    Perror ( 'Server : Listen : ' );  
  Writeln ('Waiting for Connect from Client , run now sock_cli in an other tty');  
  if not Accept (S, FromName, Sin, Sout) then  
    Perror ( 'Server : Accept : ' +fromname);  
  Reset(Sin);  
  ReWrite(Sout);  
  Writeln (Sout, 'Message From Server');  
  Flush(SOut);  
  while not eof(sin) do  
    begin  
      Readln(Sin, Buffer);  
      Writeln('Server : read : ', buffer);  
    end;  
  UnLink (SPath);  
end.
```

---

### Accept

**Declaration:** `Function Accept (Sock:longint;var addr:string;var SockIn,SockOut:text) : Boolean;`

**Description:** This is an alternate form of the `Accept` (344) command. It is equivalent to subsequently calling the regular `Accept` (344) function and the `Sock2Text` (353) function. The function returns `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

**Errors:** The errors are those of `Accept` (344).

**See also:** `Accept` (344)

### Accept

**Declaration:** `Function Accept (Sock:longint;var addr:string;var SockIn,SockOut:File) : Boolean;`

**Description:** This is an alternate form of the `Accept` (344) command. It is equivalent to subsequently calling the regular `Accept` (344) function and the `Sock2File` (352) function. The `Addr` parameter contains the name of the unix socket file to be opened. The function returns `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

**Errors:** The errors are those of `Accept` (344).

**See also:** `Accept` (344)

### Accept

**Declaration:** `Function Accept (Sock:longint;var addr:TInetSockAddr;var SockIn,SockOut:File) : Boolean;`

**Description:** This is an alternate form of the `Accept` (344) command. It is equivalent to subsequently calling the regular `Accept` (344) function and the `Sock2File` (352) function. The `Addr` parameter contains the parameters of the internet socket that should be opened. The function returns `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

**Errors:** The errors are those of `Accept` (344).

**See also:** `Accept` (344)

### Bind

**Declaration:** `Function Bind (Sock:Longint;Var Addr;AddrLen:Longint) : Boolean;`

**Description:** `Bind` binds the socket `Sock` to address `Addr`. `Addr` has length `AddrLen`. The function returns `True` if the call was successful, `False` if not.

**Errors:** Errors are returned in `SocketError` and include the following:

**SYS\_EBADF**The socket descriptor is invalid.

**SYS\_EINVAL**The socket is already bound to an address,

**SYS\_EACCESS**Address is protected and you don't have permission to open it.

More errors can be found in the Unix man pages.

**See also:** `Socket` (353)

## Bind

**Declaration:** `Function Bind (Sock:longint;const addr:string) : boolean;`

**Description:** This is an alternate form of the Bind command. This form of the Bind command is equivalent to subsequently calling `Str2UnixSockAddr` (353) and the regular `Bind` (346) function. The function returns `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

**Errors:** Errors are those of the regular `Bind` (346) command.

See also: `Bind` (346)

## Connect

**Declaration:** `Function Connect (Sock:Longint;Var Addr;AddrLen:Longint) : Longint;`

**Description:** `Connect` opens a connection to a peer, whose address is described by `Addr`. `AddrLen` contains the length of the address. The type of `Addr` depends on the kind of connection you're trying to make, but is generally one of `TSockAddr` or `TUnixSockAddr`.

The `Connect` function returns a file descriptor if the call was successful, `-1` in case of error.

**Errors:** On error, `-1` is returned and errors are reported in `SocketError`.

See also: `Listen` (350), `Bind` (346), `Accept` (344)

---

**Program** Client;

```
{  
  Program to test Sockets unit by Michael van Canneyt and Peter Vreman  
  Client Version, First Run sock_svr to let it create a socket and then  
  sock_cli to connect to that socket  
}
```

**uses** Sockets, Linux;

```
procedure PError(const S : string);  
begin  
  writeln(S, SocketError);  
  halt(100);  
end;
```

**Var**

```
Saddr   : String[25];  
Buffer  : string[255];  
S       : Longint;  
Sin, Sout : Text;  
i       : integer;
```

**begin**

```
S:=Socket ( AF_UNIX, SOCK_STREAM, 0);  
if SocketError<>0 then  
  PError(' Client : Socket : ' );  
Saddr:=' ServerSoc';  
if not Connect ( S, Saddr, Sin, Sout) then  
  PError(' Client : Connect : ' );  
Reset(Sin);  
ReWrite(Sout);
```

```
Buffer:='This is a textstring sent by the Client.';
for i:=1 to 10 do
  Writeln (Sout, Buffer);
  Flush(Sout);
  Readln (SIn, Buffer);
  Writeln (Buffer);
  Close (sout);
end.
```

---

### Connect

**Declaration:** Function Connect (Sock:longint;const addr:string;var SockIn,SockOut:text)  
: Boolean;

**Description:** This is an alternate form of the **Connect** (347) command. It is equivalent to subsequently calling the regular **Connect** (347) function and the **Sock2Text** (353) function. The function returns True if successfull, False otherwise.

**Errors:** The errors are those of **Connect** (347).

**See also:** **Connect** (347)

### Connect

**Declaration:** Function Connect (Sock:longint;const addr:string;var SockIn,SockOut:file)  
: Boolean;

**Description:** This is an alternate form of the **Connect** (347) command. The parameter **addr** contains the name of the unix socket file to be opened. It is equivalent to subsequently calling the regular **Connect** (347) function and the **Sock2File** (352) function. The function returns True if successfull, False otherwise.

**Errors:** The errors are those of **Connect** (347).

**See also:** **Connect** (347)

### Connect

**Declaration:** Function Connect (Sock:longint;const addr: TInetSockAddr;var SockIn,SockOut:file)  
: Boolean;

**Description:** This is another alternate form of the **Connect** (347) command. It is equivalent to subsequently calling the regular **Connect** (347) function and the **Sock2File** (352) function. The **Addr** parameter contains the parameters of the internet socket to connect to. The function returns True if successfull, False otherwise.

**Errors:** The errors are those of **Connect** (347).

**See also:** **Connect** (347)

---

```
program pfinger ;

uses sockets , errors ;

Var Addr : TInetSockAddr;
```

```
S : Longint;  
  Sin, Sout : Text;  
  Line : string;  
  
begin  
  Addr.family:=AF_INET;  
  { port 79 in network order }  
  Addr.port:=79 shl 8;  
  { localhost : 127.0.0.1 in network order }  
  Addr.addr:=((1 shl 24) or 127);  
  S:=Socket(AF_INET,SOCK_STREAM,0);  
  If Not Connect ( S,ADDR,SIN,SOUT) Then  
    begin  
      Writeln ( 'Couldn't connect to localhost' );  
      Writeln ( 'Socket error : ',strerror(SocketError));  
      halt(1);  
    end;  
    rewrite ( sout);  
    reset(sin);  
    writeln ( sout,paramstr(1));  
    flush(sout);  
    while not eof(sin) do  
      begin  
        readln ( Sin, line );  
        writeln ( line );  
      end;  
    Shutdown(s,2);  
    close ( sin);  
    close ( sout);  
  end.
```

---

## GetPeerName

Declaration: Function GetPeerName (Sock:Longint;Var Addr;Var Addrlen:Longint) : Longint;

Description: GetPeerName returns the name of the entity connected to the specified socket Sock. The Socket must be connected for this call to work. Addr should point to enough space to store the name, the amount of space pointed to should be set in Addrlen. When the function returns successfully, Addr will be filled with the name, and Addrlen will be set to the length of Addr.

Errors: Errors are reported in SocketError, and include the following:

**SYS\_EBADF**The socket descriptor is invalid.

**SYS\_ENOBUFS**The system doesn't have enough buffers to perform the operation.

**SYS\_ENOTSOCK**The descriptor is not a socket.

**SYS\_EFAULT**Addr points outside your address space.

**SYS\_ENOTCONN**The socket isn't connected.

See also: Connect (347), Socket (353), connect (2)

## GetSocketName

Declaration: Function GetSocketName (Sock:Longint;Var Addr;Var Addrlen:Longint) : Longint;

**Description:** `GetSockName` returns the current name of the specified socket `Sock`. `Addr` should point to enough space to store the name, the amount of space pointed to should be set in `AddrLen`. When the function returns successfully, `Addr` will be filled with the name, and `AddrLen` will be set to the length of `Addr`.

**Errors:** Errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

**SYS\_EBADF**The socket descriptor is invalid.

**SYS\_ENOBUFS**The system doesn't have enough buffers to perform the operation.

**SYS\_ENOTSOCK**The descriptor is not a socket.

**SYS\_EFAULT**`Addr` points outside your address space.

See also: `Bind` (346)

## GetSocketOptions

**Declaration:** `Function GetSocketOptions (Sock,Level,OptName:Longint;Var OptVal;optlen:longint) : Longint;`

**Description:** `GetSocketOptions` gets the connection options for socket `Sock`. The socket may be obtained from different levels, indicated by `Level`, which can be one of the following:

**SOL\_SOCKET**From the socket itself.

**XXX**set `Level` to `XXX`, the protocol number of the protocol which should interpret the option.

For more information on this call, refer to the unix manual page `getsockopt` (2).

**Errors:** Errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

**SYS\_EBADF**The socket descriptor is invalid.

**SYS\_ENOTSOCK**The descriptor is not a socket.

**SYS\_EFAULT**`OptVal` points outside your address space.

See also: `GetSocketOptions` (350)

## Listen

**Declaration:** `Function Listen (Sock,MaxConnect:Longint) : Boolean;`

**Description:** `Listen` listens for up to `MaxConnect` connections from socket `Sock`. The socket `Sock` must be of type `SOCK_STREAM` or `Sock_SEQPACKET`. The function returns `True` if a connection was accepted, `False` if an error occurred.

**Errors:** Errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

**SYS\_EBADF**The socket descriptor is invalid.

**SYS\_ENOTSOCK**The descriptor is not a socket.

**SYS\_EOPNOTSUPP**The socket type doesn't support the `Listen` operation.

See also: `Socket` (353), `Bind` (346), `Connect` (347)

## Recv

**Declaration:** `Function Recv (Sock:Longint;Var Addr;AddrLen,Flags:Longint) : Longint;`

**Description:** Recv reads at most AddrLen bytes from socket Sock into address Addr. The socket must be in a connected state. Flags can be one of the following:

- 1:** Process out-of band data.
- 4:** Bypass routing, use a direct interface.
- ??:** Wait for full request or report an error.

The functions returns the number of bytes actually read from the socket, or -1 if a detectable error occurred.

**Errors:** Errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

- SYS\_EBADF**The socket descriptor is invalid.
- SYS\_ENOTCONN**The socket isn't connected.
- SYS\_ENOTSOCK**The descriptor is not a socket.
- SYS\_EFAULT**The address is outside your address space.
- SYS EMSGSIZE**The message cannot be sent atomically.
- SYS\_EWOULDBLOCK**The requested operation would block the process.
- SYS\_ENOBUFS**The system doesn't have enough free buffers available.

See also: Send (351)

## Send

**Declaration:** `Function Send (Sock:Longint;Var Addr;AddrLen,Flags:Longint) : Longint;`

**Description:** Send sends AddrLen bytes starting from address Addr to socket Sock. Sock must be in a connected state. The function returns the number of bytes sent, or -1 if a detectable error occurred. Flags can be one of the following:

- 1:** Process out-of band data.
- 4:** Bypass routing, use a direct interface.

**Errors:** Errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

- SYS\_EBADF**The socket descriptor is invalid.
- SYS\_ENOTSOCK**The descriptor is not a socket.
- SYS\_EFAULT**The address is outside your address space.
- SYS EMSGSIZE**The message cannot be sent atomically.
- SYS\_EWOULDBLOCK**The requested operation would block the process.
- SYS\_ENOBUFS**The system doesn't have enough free buffers available.

See also: Recv (351), send (2)



## SetSocketOptions

**Declaration:** `Function SetSocketOptions (Sock,Level,OptName:Longint;Var OptVal;optlen:longint)  
: Longint;`

**Description:** `SetSocketOptions` sets the connection options for socket `Sock`. The socket may be manipulated at different levels, indicated by `Level`, which can be one of the following:

**SOL\_SOCKET**To manipulate the socket itself.

**XXX**set `Level` to `XXX`, the protocol number of the protocol which should interpret the option.

For more information on this call, refer to the unix manual page `setsockopt (2)`.

**Errors:** Errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

**SYS\_EBADF**The socket descriptor is invalid.

**SYS\_ENOTSOCK**The descriptor is not a socket.

**SYS\_EFAULT**`OptVal` points outside your address space.

See also: `GetSocketOptions` (350)

## Shutdown

**Declaration:** `Function Shutdown (Sock:Longint;How:Longint) : Longint;`

**Description:** `Shutdown` closes one end of a full duplex socket connection, described by `Sock`. `How` determines how the connection will be shut down, and can be one of the following:

**0:** Further receives are disallowed.

**1:** Further sends are disallowed.

**2:** Sending nor receiving are allowed.

On succes, the function returns 0, on error -1 is returned.

**Errors:** `SocketError` is used to report errors, and includes the following:

**SYS\_EBADF**The socket descriptor is invalid.

**SYS\_ENOTCONN**The socket isn't connected.

**SYS\_ENOTSOCK**The descriptor is not a socket.

See also: `Socket` (353), `Connect` (347)

## Sock2File

**Declaration:** `Procedure Sock2File (Sock:Longint;Var SockIn,SockOut:File);`

**Description:** `Sock2File` transforms a socket `Sock` into 2 Pascal file descriptors of type `File`, one for reading from the socket (`SockIn`), one for writing to the socket (`SockOut`).

**Errors:** None.

See also: `Socket` (353), `Sock2Text` (353)

### Sock2Text

**Declaration:** `Procedure Sock2Text (Sock:Longint;Var SockIn,SockOut: Text);`

**Description:** `Sock2Text` transforms a socket `Sock` into 2 Pascal file descriptors of type `Text`, one for reading from the socket (`SockIn`), one for writing to the socket (`SockOut`).

**Errors:** None.

See also: `Socket` (353), `Sock2File` (352)

### Socket

**Declaration:** `Function Socket (Domain,SocketType,Protocol:Longint) : Longint;`

**Description:** `Socket` creates a new socket in domain `Domain`, from type `SocketType` using protocol `Protocol`. The `Domain`, `Socket` type and `Protocol` can be specified using predefined constants (see the section on constants for available constants) If succesfull, the function returns a socket descriptor, which can be passed to a subsequent `Bind` (346) call. If unsuccessful, the function returns -1.

**Errors:** Errors are returned in `SocketError`, and include the following:

**SYS\_EPROTONOSUPPORT**The protocol type or the specified protocol is not supported within this domain.

**SYS\_EMFILE**The per-process descriptor table is full.

**SYS\_ENFILE**The system file table is full.

**SYS\_EACCESS**Permission to create a socket of the specified type and/or protocol is denied.

**SYS\_ENOBUFS**Insufficient buffer space is available. The socket cannot be created until sufficient resources are freed.

See also: `SocketPair` (353), `socket` (2)

for an example, see `Accept` (344).

### SocketPair

**Declaration:** `Function SocketPair (Domain,SocketType,Protocol:Longint;var Pair:TSockArray) : Longint;`

**Description:** `SocketPair` creates 2 sockets in domain `Domain`, from type `SocketType` and using protocol `Protocol`. The pair is returned in `Pair`, and they are indistinguishable. The function returns -1 upon error and 0 upon success.

**Errors:** Errors are reported in `SocketError`, and are the same as in `Socket` (353)

See also: `Str2UnixSockAddr` (353)

### Str2UnixSockAddr

**Declaration:** `Procedure Str2UnixSockAddr(const addr:string;var t:TUnixSockAddr;var len:longint)`

**Description:** `Str2UnixSockAddr` transforms a Unix socket address in a string to a `TUnixSockAddr` structure which can be passed to the `Bind` (346) call.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `Socket` (353), `Bind` (346)

## Chapter 19

# The STRINGS unit.

This chapter describes the STRINGS unit for Free Pascal. This unit is system independent, and therefore works on all supported platforms.

Since the unit only provides some procedures and functions, there is only one section, which gives the declarations of these functions, together with an explanation.

### 19.1 Functions and procedures.

#### StrAlloc

Declaration: `Function StrAlloc (Len : Longint);PChar`

Description: StrAlloc reserves memory on the heap for a string with length Len, terminating #0 included, and returns a pointer to it.

Errors: If there is not enough memory, a run-time error occurs.

See also: StrNew (361), StrPCopy (362).

#### StrCat

Declaration: `Function StrCat (Dest,Source : PChar) : PChar;`

Description: Attaches Source to Dest and returns Dest.

Errors: No length checking is performed.

See also: Concat ()

---

**Program** Example11;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrCat function . }*

**Const** P1 : PChar = 'This is a PChar String .';

**Var** P2 : PChar;

```
begin
  P2:= StrAlloc ( StrLen(P1)*2+1);
  StrMove ( P2,P1,StrLen(P1)+1); { P2=P1 }
  StrCat ( P2,P1);                { Append P2 once more }
  WriteLn ( 'P2 : ',P2);
end.
```

---

## StrComp

Declaration: `Function StrComp (S1,S2 : PChar) : Longint;`

Description: Compares the null-terminated strings S1 and S2. The result is

- A negative Longint when S1<S2.
- 0 when S1=S2.
- A positive Longint when S1>S2.

Errors: None.

See also: StrLComp (358), StrComp (357), StrLComp (360)

For an example, see StrLComp (358).

## StrCopy

Declaration: `Function StrCopy (Dest,Source : PChar) : PChar;`

Description: Copy the null terminated string in Source to Dest, and returns a pointer to Dest. Dest needs enough room to contain Source, i.e. StrLen(Source)+1 bytes.

Errors: No length checking is performed.

See also: StrPCopy (362), StrLCopy (359), StrECopy (356)

---

```
Program Example4;

Uses strings;

{ Program to demonstrate the StrCopy function. }

Const P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string.';

var PP : PChar;

begin
  PP:= StrAlloc ( StrLen (P)+1);
  StrCopy ( PP,P);
  If StrComp ( PP,P)<>0 then
    WriteLn ( 'Oh-oh problems...' )
  else
    WriteLn ( 'All is well : PP=',PP);
end.
```

---

## StrDispose

Declaration: `Procedure StrDispose (P : PChar);`

Description: Removes the string in P from the heap and releases the memory.

Errors: None.

See also: `Dispose()`, `StrNew` (361)

---

```
Program Example17;

Uses strings;

{ Program to demonstrate the StrDispose function. }

Const P1 : PChar = 'This is a PChar string';

var P2 : PChar;

begin
  Writeln ('Before StrNew : Memory available : ', MemAvail);
  P2:=StrNew (P1);
  Writeln ('After StrNew : Memory available : ', MemAvail);
  Writeln ('P2 : ', P2);
  StrDispose(P2);
  Writeln ('After StrDispose : Memory available : ', MemAvail);
end.
```

---

## StrECopy

Declaration: `Function StrECopy (Dest,Source : PChar) : PChar;`

Description: Copies the Null-terminated string in Source to Dest, and returns a pointer to the end (i.e. the terminating Null-character) of the copied string.

Errors: No length checking is performed.

See also: `StrLCopy` (359), `StrCopy` (355)

---

```
Program Example6;

Uses strings;

{ Program to demonstrate the StrECopy function. }

Const P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string.';

Var PP : PChar;

begin
  PP:= StrAlloc ( StrLen(P)+1);
  If Longint(StrECopy(PP,P)) - Longint(PP) <> StrLen(P) then
    Writeln('Something is wrong here !')
  else
    Writeln ('PP= ', PP);
end.
```

---

## StrEnd

Declaration: `Function StrEnd (P : PChar) : PChar;`

Description: Returns a pointer to the end of P. (i.e. to the terminating null-character.

Errors: None.

See also: StrLen (359)

---

```
Program Example6;

Uses strings;

{ Program to demonstrate the StrEnd function. }

Const P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string.';

begin
  If Longint(StrEnd(P)) - Longint(P) <> StrLen(P) then
    WriteLn('Something is wrong here !')
  else
    WriteLn('All is well..');
end.
```

---

## StrIComp

Declaration: `Function StrIComp (S1,S2 : PChar) : Longint;`

Description: Compares the null-terminated strings S1 and S2, ignoring case. The result is

- A negative Longint when S1<S2.
- 0 when S1=S2.
- A positive Longint when S1>S2.

Errors: None.

See also: StrLComp (358), StrComp (355), StrLIComp (360)

---

```
Program Example8;

Uses strings;

{ Program to demonstrate the StrLComp function. }

Const P1 : PChar = 'This is the first string.';
      P2 : PChar = 'This is the second string.';

Var L : Longint;

begin
  Write ('P1 and P2 are ');
  If StrComp (P1,P2) <> 0 then write ('NOT ');
  write ('equal. The first ');
  L:=1;
  While StrLComp(P1,P2,L)=0 do inc (L);
```

```
    dec(1);  
    Writeln (1, ' characters are the same.');
```

---

```
end.
```

## StrLCat

Declaration: Function StrLCat (Dest, Source : PChar; MaxLen : Longint) : PChar;

Description: Adds MaxLen characters from Source to Dest, and adds a terminating null-character. Returns Dest.

Errors: None.

See also: StrCat (354)

---

```
Program Example12;  
  
Uses strings;  
  
{ Program to demonstrate the StrLCat function. }  
  
Const P1 : PChar = '1234567890';  
  
Var P2 : PChar;  
  
begin  
    P2:= StrAlloc ( StrLen(P1)*2+1);  
    P2^:=#0; { Zero length }  
    StrCat ( P2,P1);  
    StrLCat ( P2,P1,5);  
    Writeln ( ' P2 = ',P2);  
end.
```

---

## StrLComp

Declaration: Function StrLComp (S1,S2 : PChar; L : Longint) : Longint;

Description: Compares maximum L characters of the null-terminated strings S1 and S2. The result is

- A negative Longint when S1<S2.
- 0 when S1=S2.
- A positive Longint when S1>S2.

Errors: None.

See also: StrComp (355), StrlComp (357), StrLIComp (360)

---

```
Program Example8;  
  
Uses strings;  
  
{ Program to demonstrate the StrLComp function. }  
  
Const P1 : PChar = 'This is the first string.';
```

```
    P2 : PChar = 'This is the second string.';

Var L : Longint;

begin
    Write ('P1 and P2 are ');
    If StrComp (P1,P2)<>0 then write ('NOT ');
    write ('equal. The first ');
    L:=1;
    While StrLComp(P1,P2,L)=0 do inc (L);
    dec(L);
    Writeln (L,' characters are the same.');
```

---

```
end.
```

## StrLCopy

Declaration: Function StrLCopy (Dest,Source : PChar; MaxLen : Longint) : PChar;

Description: Copies MaxLen characters from Source to Dest, and makes Dest a null terminated string.

Errors: No length checking is performed.

See also: StrCopy (355), StrECopy (356)

---

```
Program Example5;

Uses strings;

{ Program to demonstrate the StrLCopy function. }

Const P : PChar = '123456789ABCDEF';

var PP : PChar;

begin
    PP:= StrAlloc (11);
    Writeln ('First 10 characters of P : ',StrLCopy (PP,P,10));
end.
```

---

## StrLen

Declaration: Function StrLen (p : PChar) : Longint;

Description: Returns the length of the null-terminated string P.

Errors: None.

See also: Length ()

---

```
Program Example1;

Uses strings;

{ Program to demonstrate the StrLen function. }
```



```
Const P : PChar = 'This is a constant pchar string';

begin
  Writeln ( 'P          : ' ,p);
  Writeln ( 'length (P) : ' ,StrLen(P));
end.
```

---

## StrLComp

Declaration: Function StrLComp (S1,S2 : PChar; L : Longint) : Longint;

Description: Compares maximum L characters of the null-terminated strings S1 and S2, ignoring case. The result is

- A negative Longint when S1<S2.
- 0 when S1=S2.
- A positive Longint when S1>S2.

Errors: None.

See also: StrLComp (358), StrComp (355), StrlComp (357)

For an example, see StrlComp (357)

## StrLower

Declaration: Function StrLower (P : PChar) : PChar;

Description: Converts P to an all-lowercase string. Returns P.

Errors: None.

See also: Upcase () , StrUpper (364)

---

**Program** Example14;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrLower and StrUpper functions. }*

**Const**

```
  P1 : PChar = 'THIS IS AN UPPERCASE PCHAR STRING';
  P2 : PChar = 'this is a lowercase string';
```

**begin**

```
  Writeln ( 'Uppercase : ' ,StrUpper(P2));
  StrLower ( P1);
  Writeln ( 'Lowercase : ' ,P1);
```

**end.**

---

## StrMove

Declaration: `Function StrMove (Dest,Source : PChar; MaxLen : Longint) : PChar;`

Description: Copies MaxLen characters from Source to Dest. No terminating null-character is copied. Returns Dest.

Errors: None.

See also: StrLCopy (359), StrCopy (355)

---

```
Program Example10;

Uses strings;

{ Program to demonstrate the StrMove function. }

Const P1 : PCHAR = 'This is a pchar string.';

Var P2 : PChar;

begin
  P2:= StrAlloc (StrLen(P1)+1);
  StrMove ( P2,P1,StrLen(P1)+1); { P2:=P1 }
  Writeln ( 'P2 = ',P2);
end.
```

---

## StrNew

Declaration: `Function StrNew (P : PChar) : PChar;`

Description: Copies P to the Heap, and returns a pointer to the copy.

Errors: Returns Nil if no memory was available for the copy.

See also: New () , StrCopy (355), StrDispose (356)

---

```
Program Example16;

Uses strings;

{ Program to demonstrate the StrNew function. }

Const P1 : PChar = 'This is a PChar string';

var P2 : PChar;

begin
  P2:=StrNew ( P1);
  If P1=P2 then
    writeln ( 'This can''t be happening...')
  else
    writeln ( 'P2 : ',P2);
end.
```

---

## StrPas

Declaration: `Function StrPas (P : PChar) : String;`

Description: Converts a null terminated string in P to a Pascal string, and returns this string. The string is truncated at 255 characters.

Errors: None.

See also: StrPCopy (362)

---

```
Program Example3;

Uses strings;

{ Program to demonstrate the StrPas function. }

Const P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string';

var S : string;

begin
  S:=StrPas (P);
  Writeln ('S : ',S);
end.
```

---

## StrPCopy

Declaration: `Function StrPCopy (Dest : PChar; Const Source : String) : PChar;`

Description: Converts the Pascal string in Source to a Null-terminated string, and copies it to Dest. Dest needs enough room to contain the string Source, i.e. `Length(Source)+1` bytes.

Errors: No length checking is performed.

See also: StrPas (362)

---

```
Program Example2;

Uses strings;

{ Program to demonstrate the StrPCopy function. }

Const S = 'This is a normal string.';

Var P : Pchar;

begin
  p:=StrAlloc ( length(S)+1);
  if StrPCopy (P,S)<>P then
    Writeln ('This is impossible !!')
  else
    writeln (P);
end.
```

---

## StrPos

Declaration: `Function StrPos (S1,S2 : PChar) : PChar;`

Description: Returns a pointer to the first occurrence of S2 in S1. If S2 does not occur in S1, returns Nil.

Errors: None.

See also: `Pos ()` , `StrScan (363)`, `StrRScan (363)`

---

**Program** Example15;

**Uses** strings ;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrPos function . }*

**Const** P : PChar = 'This is a PChar string .';

      S : PChar = 'is';

**begin**

**WriteLn** ( ' Position of ''is'' in P : ' , longint ( **StrPos** (P,S)) – Longint (P));

**end.**

---

## StrRScan

Declaration: `Function StrRScan (P : PChar; C : Char) : PChar;`

Description: Returns a pointer to the last occurrence of the character C in the null-terminated string P. If C does not occur, returns Nil.

Errors: None.

See also: `Pos ()` , `StrScan (363)`, `StrPos (363)`

For an example, see `StrScan (363)`.

## StrScan

Declaration: `Function StrScan (P : PChar; C : Char) : PChar;`

Description: Returns a pointer to the first occurrence of the character C in the null-terminated string P. If C does not occur, returns Nil.

Errors: None.

See also: `Pos ()` , `StrRScan (363)`, `StrPos (363)`

---

**Program** Example13;

**Uses** strings ;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrScan and StrRScan functions . }*

**Const** P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string .';

      S : Char = 's' ;

**begin**

```
    WriteLn ('P, starting from first ''s'' : ', StrScan(P,s));  
    WriteLn ('P, starting from last ''s'' : ', StrRScan(P,s));  
end.
```

---

## StrUpper

Declaration: Function StrUpper (P : PChar) : PChar;

Description: Converts P to an all-uppercase string. Returns P.

Errors: None.

See also: Upcase () , StrLower (360)

For an example, see StrLower (360)

## Chapter 20

# The SYSUTILS unit.

This chapter describes the `sysutils` unit. The `sysutils` unit was largely written by Gertjan Schouten, and completed by michael Van Canneyt. It aims to be compatible to the Delphi `sysutils` unit, but in contrast with the latter, it is designed to work on multiple platforms. It is implemented on all supported platforms.

This chapter starts out with a definition of all types and constants that are defined, followed by an overview of functions grouped by functionality, and lastly the complete explanation of each function.

### 20.1 Constants and types

The following general-purpose constants are defined:

```
const
  SecsPerDay = 24 * 60 * 60; // Seconds and milliseconds per day
  MSecsPerDay = SecsPerDay * 1000;
  DateDelta = 693594;        // Days between 1/1/0001 and 12/31/1899
  Eoln = #10;
```

The following types are used frequently in date and time functions. They are the same on all platforms.

```
type
  TSystemTime = record
    Year, Month, Day: word;
    Hour, Minute, Second, MilliSecond: word;
  end ;

  TDateTime = double;

  TTimeStamp = record
    Time: integer; { Number of milliseconds since midnight }
    Date: integer; { One plus number of days since 1/1/0001 }
  end ;
```

The following type is used in the `FindFirst` (400), `FindNext` (401) and `FindClose` (400) functions. The `win32` version differs from the other versions. If code is to be portable, that part shouldn't be used.

Type

```
THandle = Longint;
TSearchRec = Record
    Time, Size, Attr : Longint;
    Name : TFileName;
    ExcludeAttr : Longint;
    FindHandle : THandle;
    {$ifdef Win32}
    FindData : TWin32FindData;
    {$endif}
end;
```

The following constants are file-attributes that need to be matched in the findfirst call.

Const

```
faReadOnly    = $00000001;
faHidden      = $00000002;
faSysFile     = $00000004;
faVolumeId    = $00000008;
faDirectory   = $00000010;
faArchive     = $00000020;
faAnyFile     = $0000003f;
```

The following constants can be used in the FileOpen (397) call.

Const

```
fmOpenRead      = $0000;
fmOpenWrite     = $0001;
fmOpenReadWrite = $0002;
```

The following constants can be used in the FileSeek (398) call.

Const

```
fsFromBeginning = 0;
fsFromCurrent   = 1;
fsFromEnd       = 2;
```

The following variables are used in the case translation routines.

type

```
TCaseTranslationTable = array[0..255] of char;
```

var

```
UpperCaseTable: TCaseTranslationTable;
LowerCaseTable: TCaseTranslationTable;
```

The initialization code of the sysutils unit fills these tables with the appropriate values. For the win32 and go32v2 versions, this information is obtained from the operating system.

The following constants control the formatting of dates. For the Win32 version of the sysutils unit, these constants are set according to the internationalization settings of Windows by the initialization code of the unit.

Const

```
DateSeparator: char = '-';
```

```
ShortDateFormat: string = 'd/m/y';
LongDateFormat: string = 'dd" "mmmm" "yyyy';
ShortMonthNames: array[1..12] of string[128] =
  ('Jan', 'Feb', 'Mar', 'Apr', 'May', 'Jun',
   'Jul', 'Aug', 'Sep', 'Oct', 'Nov', 'Dec');
LongMonthNames: array[1..12] of string[128] =
  ('January', 'February', 'March', 'April',
   'May', 'June', 'July', 'August',
   'September', 'October', 'November', 'December');
ShortDayNames: array[1..7] of string[128] =
  ('Sun', 'Mon', 'Tue', 'Wed', 'Thu', 'Fri', 'Sat');
LongDayNames: array[1..7] of string[128] =
  ('Sunday', 'Monday', 'Tuesday', 'Wednesday',
   'Thursday', 'Friday', 'Saturday');
```

The following constants control the formatting of times. For the Win32 version of the `sysutils` unit, these constants are set according to the internationalization settings of Windows by the initialization code of the unit.

Const

```
ShortTimeFormat: string = 'hh:nn';
LongTimeFormat: string = 'hh:nn:ss';
TimeSeparator: char = ':';
TimeAMString: string[7] = 'AM';
TimePMString: string[7] = 'PM';
```

The following constants control the formatting of currencies and numbers. For the Win32 version of the `sysutils` unit, these constants are set according to the internationalization settings of Windows by the initialization code of the unit.

Const

```
DecimalSeparator : Char = '.';
ThousandSeparator : Char = ',';
CurrencyDecimals : Byte = 2;
CurrencyString : String[7] = '$';
{ Format to use when formatting currency :
  0 = $1      1 = 1$      2 = $ 1      3 = 1 $
  4 = Currency string replaces decimal indicator.
    e.g. 1$50
}
CurrencyFormat : Byte = 1;
{ Same as above, only for negative currencies:
  0 = ($1)
  1 = -$1
  2 = $-1
  3 = $1-
  4 = (1$)
  5 = -1$
  6 = 1-$
  7 = 1$-
  8 = -1 $
  9 = -$ 1
 10 = $ 1-
}
NegCurrFormat : Byte = 5;
```



The following types are used in various string functions.

```
type
    PString = ^String;
    TFloatFormat = (ffGeneral, ffExponent, ffFixed, ffNumber, ffCurrency);
```

The following constants are used in the file name handling routines. Do not use a slash or backslash character directly as a path separator; instead use the `OsDirSeparator` character.

```
Const
    DirSeparators : set of char = ['/', '\'];
{$ifdef Linux}
    OSDirSeparator = '/';
{$else}
    OSDirSeparator = '\';
{$endif}
```

## 20.2 Function list by category

What follows is a listing of the available functions, grouped by category. For each function there is a reference to the page where you can find the function.

### String functions

Functions for handling strings.

Name	Description	Page
<code>AnsiCompareStr</code>	Compare two strings	406
<code>AnsiCompareText</code>	Compare two strings, case insensitive	407
<code>AnsiExtractQuotedStr</code>	Removes quotes from string	408
<code>AnsiLastChar</code>	Get last character of string	408
<code>AnsiLowerCase</code>	Convert string to all-lowercase	409
<code>AnsiQuotedStr</code>	Quotes a string	409
<code>AnsiStrComp</code>	Compare strings case-sensitive	409
<code>AnsiStrlComp</code>	Compare strings case-insensitive	410
<code>AnsiStrLComp</code>	Compare L characters of strings case sensitive	412
<code>AnsiStrLIComp</code>	Compare L characters of strings case insensitive	412
<code>AnsiStrLastChar</code>	Get last character of string	411
<code>AnsiStrLower</code>	Convert string to all-lowercase	413
<code>AnsiStrUpper</code>	Convert string to all-uppercase	414
<code>AnsiUpperCase</code>	Convert string to all-uppercase	414
<code>AppendStr</code>	Append 2 strings	415
<code>AssignStr</code>	Assign value of strings on heap	415
<code>CompareStr</code>	Compare two strings case sensitive	417
<code>CompareText</code>	Compare two strings case insensitive	418

DisposeStr	Remove string from heap	418
IsValidIdent	Is string a valid pascal identifier	429
LeftStr	Get first N characters of a string	430
LoadStr	Load string from resources	430
LowerCase	Convert string to all-lowercase	430
NewStr	Allocate new string on heap	431
RightStr	Get last N characters of a string	431
StrAlloc	Allocate memory for string	404
StrBufSize	Reserve memory for a string	404
StrDispose	Remove string from heap	404
StrPas	Convert PChar to pascal string	405
StrPCopy	Copy pascal string	405
StrPLCopy	Copy N bytes of pascal string	405
UpperCase	Convert string to all-uppercase	436

## Formatting strings

Functions for formatting strings.

Name	Description	Page
AdjustLineBreaks	Convert line breaks to line breaks for system	405
FormatBuf	Format a buffer	427
Format	Format arguments in string	422
FmtStr	Format buffer	422
QuotedStr	Quote a string	431
StrFmt	Format arguments in a string	432
StrLFmt	Format maximum L characters in a string	432
TrimLeft	Remove whitespace at the left of a string	435
TrimRight	Remove whitespace at the right of a string	435
Trim	Remove whitespace at both ends of a string	434

## File input/output routines

Functions for reading/writing to file.

Name	Description	Page
FileCreate	Create a file and return handle	394
FileOpen	Open file and return handle	397
FileRead	Read from file	397
FileSeek	Set file position	398
FileTruncate	Truncate file length	399
FileWrite	Write to file	400
FileClose	Close file handle	394

**File handling routines**

Functions for file manipulation.

Name	Description	Page
AddDisk	Add sisk to list of disk drives	386
ChangeFileExt	Change extension of file name	389
CreateDir	Create a directory	386
DeleteFile	Delete a file	389
DiskFree	Free space on disk	387
DiskSize	Total size of disk	387
ExpandFileName	Create full file name	390
ExpandUNCFileName	Create full UNC file name	391
ExtractFileDir	Extract directory part of filename	391
ExtractFileDrive	Extract drive part of filename	392
ExtractFileExt	Extract extension part of filename	392
ExtractFileName	Extract name part of filename	392
ExtractFilePath	Extrct path part of filename	392
ExtractRelativePath	Construct relative path between two files	393
FileAge	Return file age	393
FileDateToDateTime	Convert file date to system date	379
FileExists	Determine whether a file exists on disk	395
FileGetAttr	Get attributes of file	395
FileGetDate	Get date of last file modification	396
FileSearch	Search for file in path	398
FileSetAttr	Get file attributes	399
FileSetDate	Get file dates	399
FindFirst	Start finding a file	400
FindNext	Find next file	401
GetCurrentDir	Return current working directory	388
RemoveDir	Remove a directory from disk	388
RenameFile	Rename a file on disk	402
SetCurrentDir	Set current working directory	388
SetDirSeparators	Set directory separator characters	402
FindClose	Stop searching a file	400
DoDirSeparators	Replace directory separator characters	390

**Date/time routines**

Functions for date and time handling.

Name	Description	Page
------	-------------	------

DateTimeToFileDate	Convert DateTime type to file date	373
DateTimeToStr	Construct string representation of DateTime	374
DateTimeToString	Construct string representation of DateTime	374
DateTimeToSystemTime	Convert DateTime to system time	375
DateTimeToTimeStamp	Convert DateTime to timestamp	375
DateToStr	Construct string representation of date	376
Date	Get current date	373
DayOfWeek	Get day of week	376
DecodeDate	Decode DateTime to year month and day	377
DecodeTime	Decode DateTime to hours, minutes and seconds	377
EncodeDate	Encode year, day and month to DateTime	378
EncodeTime	Encode hours, minutes and seconds to DateTime	378
FormatDateTime	Return string representation of DateTime	379
IncMonth	Add 1 to month	380
IsLeapYear	Determine if year is leap year	380
MSecsToTimeStamp	Convert nr of milliseconds to timestamp	381
Now	Get current date and time	381
StrToDateTime	Convert string to DateTime	382
StrToDate	Convert string to date	382
StrToTime	Convert string to time	383
SystemTimeToDateTime	Convert system time to datetime	384
TimeStampToDateTime	Convert time stamp to DateTime	384
TimeStampToMSecs	Convert Timestamp to number of millicseconds	385
TimeToStr	return string representation of Time	385
Time	Get current tyme	384

## 20.3 Miscellaneous conversion routines

Functions for various conversions.

Name	Description	Page
BCDToInt	Convert BCD number to integer	416
CompareMem	Compare two memory regions	416
FloatToStrF	Convert float to formatted string	419
FloatToStr	Convert float to string	419
FloatToText	Convert float to string	421
GetDirs	Split string in list of directories	401
IntToHex	return hexadecimal representation of integer	428
IntToStr	return decumal representation of integer	428
StrToIntDef	Convert string to integer with default value	433
StrToInt	Convert string to integer	433

## 20.4 Date and time functions

### Date and time formatting characters

Various date and time formatting routines accept a format string, to format the date and or time. The following characters can be used to control the date and time formatting:

**c** : shortdateformat + ' ' + shorttimeformat

**d** : day of month

**dd** : day of month (leading zero)

**ddd** : day of week (abbreviation)

**dddd** : day of week (full)

**dddddd** : shortdateformat

**ddddddd** : longdateformat

**m** : month

**mm** : month (leading zero)

**mmm** : month (abbreviation)

**mmmm** : month (full)

**y** : year (four digits)

**yy** : year (two digits)

**yyyy** : year (with century)

**h** : hour

**hh** : hour (leading zero)

**n** : minute

**nn** : minute (leading zero)

**s** : second

**ss** : second (leading zero)

**t** : shorttimeformat

**tt** : longtimeformat

**am/pm** : use 12 hour clock and display am and pm accordingly

**a/p** : use 12 hour clock and display a and p accordingly

**/** : insert date separator

**:** : insert time separator

**"xx"** : literal text

**'xx'** : literal text

## **TDateTime**

Declaration: `TDateTime = Double;`

Description: Many functions return or require a `TDateTime` type, which contains a date and time in encoded form. The date and time are converted to a double as follows:

## **Date**

Declaration: `Function Date: TDateTime;`

Description: `Date` returns the current date in `TDateTime` format. For more information about the `TDateTime` type, see `TDateTime` (373).

Errors: None.

See also: `Time` (384), `Now` (381), `TDateTime` (373).

---

```
Program Example1;

{ This program demonstrates the Date function }

uses sysutils;

Var YY,MM,DD : Word;

Begin
  WriteLn ( ' Date : ' , Date );
  DecodeDate ( Date ,YY,MM,DD);
  WriteLn ( format ( ' Date is ( DD/MM/YY): % d/%d/%d ' ,[ dd,mm,yy ]));
End.
```

---

## **DateTimeToFileDate**

Declaration: `Function DateTimeToFileDate(DateTime : TDateTime) : Longint;`

Description: `DateTimeToFileDate` function converts a date/time indication in `TDateTime` format to a filedate function, such as returned for instance by the `FileAge` (393) function.

Errors: None.

See also: `Time` (384), `Date` (373), `FileDateToDateTime` (379), `DateTimeToSystemTime` (375), `DateTimeToTimeStamp` (375)

---

```
Program Example2;

{ This program demonstrates the DateTimeToFileDate function }

Uses sysutils;

Begin
  WriteLn ( ' FileTime of now would be: ' , DateTimeToFileDate ( Now ));
End.
```

---

## **DateTimeToStr**

**Declaration:** `Function DateTimeToStr(DateTime: TDateTime): string;`

**Description:** `DateTimeToStr` returns a string representation of `DateTime` using the formatting specified in `ShortDateTimeFormat`. It corresponds to a call to `FormatDateTime('c',DateTime)` (see section 20.4, page 372).

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `FormatDateTime` (379), `TDateTime` (373).

---

**Program** Example3;

*{ This program demonstrates the DateTimeToStr function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Begin**

**WriteLn** ( 'Today is : ', **DateTimeToStr**(**Now**));

**WriteLn** ( 'Today is : ', **FormatDateTime**('c',**Now**));

**End.**

---

## **DateTimeToString**

**Declaration:** `Procedure DateTimeToString(var Result: string; const FormatStr: string; const DateTime: TDateTime);`

**Description:** `DateTimeToString` returns in `Result` a string representation of `DateTime` using the formatting specified in `FormatStr`.

for a list of characters that can be used in the `FormatStr` formatting string, see section 20.4, page 372.

**Errors:** In case a wrong formatting character is found, an `EConvertError` is raised.

**See also:** `FormatDateTime` (379), section 20.4, page 372.

---

**Program** Example4;

*{ This program demonstrates the DateTimeToString function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** today (Fmt : **string**);

**Var** S : **AnsiString**;

**begin**

**DateTimeToString** ( S, Fmt, **Date**);

**WriteLn** ( S);

**end**;

**Procedure** Now (Fmt : **string**);

**Var** S : **AnsiString**;

```
begin
  DateTimeToString ( S,Fmt,Time);
  Writeln ( S);
end;

Begin
  Today ( '' Today is " dddd dd mmmm y' ');
  Today ( '' Today is " d mmm yy' ');
  Today ( '' Today is " d/mmm/yy' ');
  Now ( '' 'The time is ' 'am/pmh:n:s' ');
  Now ( '' 'The time is ' 'hh:nn:ssam/pm' ');
  Now ( '' 'The time is ' 'tt' ');
End.
```

---

### **DateTimeToSystemTime**

Declaration: Procedure DateTimeToSystemTime(DateTime: TDateTime; var SystemTime: TSystemTime);

Description: DateTimeToSystemTime converts a date/time pair in DateTime, with TDateTime format to a system time SystemTime.

Errors: None.

See also: DateTimeToFileDate (373), SystemTimeToDateTime (384), DateTimeToTimeStamp (375)

---

```
Program Example5;

{ This program demonstrates the DateTimeToSystemTime function }

Uses sysutils;

Var ST : TSystemTime;

Begin
  DateTimeToSystemTime(Now,ST);
  With St do
    begin
      Writeln ( 'Today is      ',year,'/',month,'/',Day);
      Writeln ( 'The time is ',Hour,':',minute,':',Second,'.',', MilliSecond );
    end;
End.
```

---

### **DateTimeToTimeStamp**

Declaration: Function DateTimeToTimeStamp(DateTime: TDateTime): TTimeStamp;

Description: DateTimeToSystemTime converts a date/time pair in DateTime, with TDateTime format to a TTimeStamp format.

Errors: None.

See also: DateTimeToFileDate (373), SystemTimeToDateTime (384), DateTimeToSystemTime (375)



---

```
Program Example6;

{ This program demonstrates the DateTimeToTimeStamp function }

Uses sysutils;

Var TS : TTimeStamp;

Begin
    TS:= DateTimeToTimeStamp ( Now);
    With TS do
        begin
            WriteLn ( 'Now is ', time, ' millisecond past midnight' );
            WriteLn ( 'Today is ' , Date, ' days past 1/1/0001' );
        end;
End.
```

---

### DateToStr

Declaration: `Function DateToStr(Date: TDateTime): string;`

Description: `DateToStr` converts `Date` to a string representation. It uses `ShortDateFormat` as it's formatting string. It is hence completely equivalent to a `FormatDateTime('dddd', Date)`.

Errors: None.

See also: `TimeToStr` (385), `DateTimeToStr` (374), `FormatDateTime` (379), `StrToDate` (382)

---

```
Program Example7;

{ This program demonstrates the DateToStr function }

Uses sysutils;

Begin
    WriteLn ( Format ( ' Today is : %s' , [ DateToStr ( Date ) ] ) );
End.
```

---

### DayOfWeek

Declaration: `Function DayOfWeek(DateTime: TDateTime): integer;`

Description: `DayOfWeek` returns the day of the week from `DateTime`. Sunday is counted as day 1, Saturday is counted as day 7. The result of `DayOfWeek` can serve as an index to the `LongDayNames` constant array, to retrieve the name of the day.

Errors: None.

See also: `Date` (373), `DateToStr` (376)

---

```
Program Example8;

{ This program demonstrates the DayOfWeek function }
```

```
Uses sysutils;
```

```
Begin
```

```
  Writeln ( 'Today''s day is ', LongDayNames[ DayOfWeek( Date )]);
```

```
End.
```

---

## DecodeDate

Declaration: Procedure DecodeDate(Date: TDateTime; var Year, Month, Day: word);

Description: DecodeDate decodes the Year, Month and Day stored in Date, and returns them in the Year, Month and Day variables.

Errors: None.

See also: EncodeDate (378), DecodeTime (377).

---

```
Program Example9;
```

```
  { This program demonstrates the DecodeDate function }
```

```
Uses sysutils;
```

```
Var YY,MM,DD : Word;
```

```
Begin
```

```
  DecodeDate( Date, YY,MM,DD);
```

```
  Writeln ( Format ( ' Today is %d/%d/%d' ,[ dd,mm,yy ]));
```

```
End.
```

---

## DecodeTime

Declaration: Procedure DecodeTime(Time: TDateTime; var Hour, Minute, Second, MilliSecond: word);

Description: DecodeDate decodes the hours, minutes, second and milliseconds stored in Time, and returns them in the Hour, Minute and Second and MilliSecond variables.

Errors: None.

See also: EncodeTime (378), DecodeDate (377).

---

```
Program Example10;
```

```
  { This program demonstrates the DecodeTime function }
```

```
Uses sysutils;
```

```
Var HH,MM,SS,MS: Word;
```

```
Begin
```

```
  DecodeTime( Time, HH,MM,SS,MS);
```

```
  Writeln ( format( ' The time is %d:%d:%d.%d' ,[ hh,mm,ss,ms ]));
```

```
End.
```

---

## EncodeDate

**Declaration:** Function EncodeDate(Year, Month, Day :word): TDateTime;

**Description:** EncodeDate encodes the Year, Month and Day variables to a date in TDateTime format. It does the opposite of the DecodeDate (377) procedure.

The parameters must lie within valid ranges (boundaries included):

**Year** must be between 1 and 9999.

**Month** must be within the range 1-12.

**Day** must be between 1 and 31.

**Errors:** In case one of the parameters is out of its valid range, 0 is returned.

See also: EncodeTime (378), DecodeDate (377).

---

```
Program Example11;

{ This program demonstrates the EncodeDate function }

Uses sysutils;

Var YY,MM,DD : Word;

Begin
  DecodeDate ( Date,YY,MM,DD);
  WriteLn ( 'Today is : ',FormatDateTime ( 'dd mmm yyyy' ,EncodeDate(YY,Mm,Dd)));
End.
```

---

## EncodeTime

**Declaration:** Function EncodeTime(Hour, Minute, Second, MilliSecond:word): TDateTime;

**Description:** EncodeTime encodes the Hour, Minute, Second, MilliSecond variables to a TDateTime format result. It does the opposite of the DecodeTime (377) procedure.

The parameters must have a valid range (boundaries included):

**Hour** must be between 0 and 23.

**Minute,second** must both be between 0 and 59.

**Millisecond** must be between 0 and 999.

**Errors:** In case one of the parameters is outside of its valid range, 0 is returned.

See also: EncodeDate (378), DecodeTime (377).

---

```
Program Example12;

{ This program demonstrates the EncodeTime function }

Uses sysutils;

Var Hh,MM,SS,MS : Word;

Begin
  DeCodeTime ( Time,Hh,MM,SS,MS);
  WriteLn ( 'Present Time is : ',FormatDateTime ( 'hh:mm:ss' ,EncodeTime (Hh,MM,SS,MS)));
End.
```

---

### FileDateToDateTime

Declaration: `Function FileDateToDateTime(Filedate : Longint) : TDateTime;`

Description: `FileDateToDateTime` converts the date/time encoded in `filedate` to a `TDateTime` encoded form. It can be used to convert date/time values returned by the `FileAge` (393) or `FindFirst` (400)/`FindNext` (401) functions to `TDateTime` form.

Errors: None.

See also: `DateTimeToFileDate` (373)

---

```
Program Example13;

{ This program demonstrates the FileDateToDateTime function }

Uses sysutils;

Var
  ThisAge : Longint;

Begin
  Write ( 'ex13.pp created on :' );
  ThisAge := FileAge ( 'ex13.pp' );
  Writeln ( DateTimeToStr ( FileDateToDateTime ( ThisAge ) ));
End.
```

---

### FormatDateTime

Declaration: `Function FormatDateTime(FormatStr: string; DateTime: TDateTime):string;`

Description: `FormatDateTime` formats the date and time encoded in `DateTime` according to the formatting given in `FormatStr`. The complete list of formatting characters can be found in section 20.4, page 372.

Errors: On error (such as an invalid character in the formatting string), and `EConvertError` exception is raised.

See also: `DateTimeToStr` (374), `DateToStr` (376), `TimeToStr` (385), `StrToDateTime` (382)

---

```
Program Example14;

{ This program demonstrates the FormatDateTime function }

Uses sysutils;

Var ThisMoment : TDateTime;

Begin
  ThisMoment := Now;
  Writeln ( 'Now : ', FormatDateTime ( 'hh:mm', ThisMoment ) );
  Writeln ( 'Now : ', FormatDateTime ( 'DD MM YYYY', ThisMoment ) );
  Writeln ( 'Now : ', FormatDateTime ( 'c', ThisMoment ) );
End.
```

---

## IncMonth

**Declaration:** Function IncMonth(const DateTime: TDateTime; NumberOfMonths: integer): TDateTime;

**Description:** IncMonth increases the month number in DateTime with NumberOfMonths. It wraps the result as to get a month between 1 and 12, and updates the year accordingly. NumberOfMonths can be negative, and can be larger than 12 (in absolute value).

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** Date (373), Time (384), Now (381)

---

**Program** Example15;

*{ This program demonstrates the IncMonth function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** ThisDay : TDateTime;

**Begin**

    ThisDay := Date;

**Writeln** ( ' ThisDay : ' , DateToStr ( ThisDay ));

**Writeln** ( '6 months ago : ' , DateToStr ( IncMonth ( ThisDay , -6)));

**Writeln** ( '6 months from now : ' , DateToStr ( IncMonth ( ThisDay , 6)));

**Writeln** ( '12 months ago : ' , DateToStr ( IncMonth ( ThisDay , -12)));

**Writeln** ( '12 months from now : ' , DateToStr ( IncMonth ( ThisDay , 12)));

**Writeln** ( '18 months ago : ' , DateToStr ( IncMonth ( ThisDay , -18)));

**Writeln** ( '18 months from now : ' , DateToStr ( IncMonth ( ThisDay , 18)));

**End.**

---

## IsLeapYear

**Declaration:** Function IsLeapYear(Year: Word): boolean;

**Description:** IsLeapYear returns True if Year is a leap year, False otherwise.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** IncMonth (380), Date (373)

---

**Program** Example16;

*{ This program demonstrates the IsLeapYear function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** YY,MM,dd : Word;

**Procedure** TestYear (Y : Word);

**begin**

**Writeln** ( Y, ' is leap year : ' , IsLeapYear(Y));

**end;**

**Begin**

```
DeCodeDate( Date, YY, mm, dd);
TestYear( yy);
TestYear( 2000);
TestYear( 1900);
TestYear( 1600);
TestYear( 1992);
TestYear( 1995);
```

**End.**

---

**MSecsToTimeStamp**

Declaration: Function MSecsToTimeStamp(MSecs: Comp): TTimeStamp;

Description: MSecsToTimeStamp converts the given number of milliseconds to a TTimeStamp date/time notation.

Use TTimeStamp variables if you need to keep very precise track of time.

Errors: None.

See also: TimeStampToMSecs (385), DateTimeToTimeStamp (375),

---

**Program** Example17;

*{ This program demonstrates the MSecsToTimeStamp function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

```
Var MS : Comp;
    TS : TTimeStamp;
    DT : TDateTime;
```

**Begin**

```
TS:= DateTimeToTimeStamp(Now);
Writeln ( 'Now in days since 1/1/0001 : ', TS. Date );
Writeln ( 'Now in millisecs since midnight : ', TS. Time );
MS:= TimeStampToMSecs(TS);
Writeln ( 'Now in millisecs since 1/1/0001 : ', MS);
MS:=MS-1000*3600*2;
TS:= MSecsToTimeStamp(MS);
DT:= TimeStampToDateTime(TS);
Writeln ( 'Now minus 1 day : ', DateTimeToStr(DT));
```

**End.**

---

**Now**

Declaration: Function Now: TDateTime;

Description: Now returns the current date and time. It is equivalent to Date+Time.

Errors: None.

See also: Date (373), Time (384)

---

```
Program Example18;  
  
{ This program demonstrates the Now function }  
  
Uses sysutils;  
  
Begin  
    WriteLn ( 'Now : ', DateTimeToStr(Now));  
End.
```

---

### StrToDate

Declaration: `Function StrToDate(const S: string): TDateTime;`

Description: `StrToDate` converts the string `S` to a `TDateTime` date value. The Date must consist of 1 to three digits, separated by the `DateSeparator` character. If two numbers are given, they are supposed to form the day and month of the current year. If only one number is given, it is supposed to represent the day of the current month. (This is *not supported in Delphi*)

*The order of the digits (y/m/d, m/d/y, d/m/y) is determined from the ShortDateFormat variable.*

*Errors: On error (e.g. an invalid date or invalid character), an `EConvertError` exception is raised.*

See also: `StrToTime` (383), `DateToStr` (376) *n* `TimeToStr` (385).

---

```
Program Example19;  
  
{ This program demonstrates the StrToDate function }  
  
Uses sysutils;  
  
Procedure TestStr (S : String);  
  
begin  
    WriteLn ( S, ' : ', DateToStr(StrToDate(S)));  
end;  
  
Begin  
  
    WriteLn ( 'ShortDateFormat ', ShortDateFormat );  
    TestStr ( DateTimeToStr(Date));  
    TestStr ( '05/05/1999' );  
    TestStr ( '5/5' );  
    TestStr ( '5' );  
End.
```

---

### StrToDateTime

Declaration: `Function StrToDateTime(const S: string): TDateTime;`

Description: `StrToDateTime` converts the string `S` to a `TDateTime` date and time value. The Date must consist of 1 to three digits, separated by the `DateSeparator` character. If two numbers are given, they are supposed to form the day and month of the current year. If only one number is given, it is supposed to represent the day of the current month. (This is *not supported in Delphi*)

*The order of the digits (y/m/d, m/d/y, d/m/y) is determined from the ShortDateFormat variable.*

*Errors: On error (e.g. an invalid date or invalid character), an EConvertError exception is raised.*

*See also: StrToDate (382), StrToTime (383), DateTimeToStr (374)*

---

```
Program Example20;

{ This program demonstrates the StrToDateTime function }

Uses sysutils;

Procedure TestStr ( S : String );

begin
  Writeln ( S, ' : ', DateTimeToStr ( StrToDateTime ( S ) ) );
end;

Begin

  Writeln ( ' ShortDateFormat ', ShortDateFormat );
  TestStr ( DateTimeToStr ( Now ) );
  TestStr ( '05-05-1999 15:50' );
  TestStr ( '5-5 13:30' );
  TestStr ( '5 1:30 PM' );
End.
```

---

## StrToTime

**Declaration:** Function StrToTime(const S: string): TDateTime;

**Description:** StrToTime converts the string S to a TDateTime time value. The time must consist of 1 to 4 digits, separated by the TimeSeparator character. If two numbers are given, they are supposed to form the hour and minutes.

*Errors: On error (e.g. an invalid date or invalid character), an EConvertError exception is raised.*

*See also: StrToDate (382), StrToDateTime (382), TimeToStr (385)*

---

```
Program Example21;

{ This program demonstrates the StrToTime function }

Uses sysutils;

Procedure TestStr ( S : String );

begin
  Writeln ( S, ' : ', TimeToStr ( StrToTime ( S ) ) );
end;

Begin

  teststr ( TimeToStr ( Time ) );
  teststr ( '12:00' );
  teststr ( '15:30' );
  teststr ( '3:30 PM' );
End.
```

---



### SystemTimeToDateTime

Declaration: `Function SystemTimeToDateTime(const SystemTime: TSystemTime): TDateTime;`

Description: `SystemTimeToDateTime` converts a `TSystemTime` record to a `TDateTime` style date/time indication.

Errors: None.

See also: `DateTimeToSystemTime` (375)

---

**Program** Example22;

*{ This program demonstrates the SystemTimeToDateTime function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** ST : TSystemTime;

**Begin**

`DateTimeToSystemTime(Now, ST);`

**With** St **do**

**begin**

`WriteLn ( 'Today is     ', year, '/' , month, '/' , Day);`

`WriteLn ( 'The time is ', Hour, ':' , minute, ':' , Second, '.' , MilliSecond );`

**end**;

`WriteLn ( 'Converted : ', DateTimeToStr ( SystemTimeToDateTime (ST)));`

**End.**

---

### Time

Declaration: `Function Time: TDateTime;`

Description: `Time` returns the current time in `TDateTime` format. The date part of the `TDateTimeValue` is set to zero.

Errors: None.

See also: `Now` (381), `Date` (373)

---

**Program** Example23;

*{ This program demonstrates the Time function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Begin**

`WriteLn ( 'The time is : ', TimeToStr (Time));`

**End.**

---

### TimeStampToDateTime

Declaration: `Function TimeStampToDateTime(const TimeStamp: TTimeStamp): TDateTime;`

Description: `TimeStampToDateTime` converts `TimeStamp` to a `TDateTime` format variable. It is the inverse operation of `DateTimeToTimeStamp` (375).

Errors: None.

See also: [DateTimeToTimeStamp \(375\)](#), [TimeStampToMSecs \(385\)](#)

---

```
Program Example24;

{ This program demonstrates the TimeStampToDateTime function }

Uses sysutils;

Var TS : TTimeStamp;
    DT : TDateTime;

Begin
    TS:= DateTimeToTimeStamp ( Now);
    With TS do
        begin
            WriteLn ( 'Now is ', time, ' millisecond past midnight' );
            WriteLn ( 'Today is ' , Date, ' days past 1/1/0001' );
        end;
    DT:= TimeStampToDateTime(TS);
    WriteLn ( 'Together this is : ' , DateTimeToStr(DT));
End.
```

---

### TimeStampToMSecs

**Declaration:** `Function TimeStampToMSecs(const TimeStamp: TTimeStamp): comp;`

**Description:** `TimeStampToMSecs` converts `TimeStamp` to the number of seconds since 1/1/0001.

Use `TTimeStamp` variables if you need to keep very precise track of time.

Errors: None.

See also: [MSecsToTimeStamp \(381\)](#), [TimeStampToDateTime \(384\)](#)

For an example, see [MSecsToTimeStamp \(381\)](#).

### TimeToStr

**Declaration:** `Function TimeToStr(Time: TDateTime): string;`

**Description:** `TimeToStr` converts the time in `Time` to a string. It uses the `ShortTimeFormat` variable to see what formatting needs to be applied. It is therefor entirely equivalent to a `FormatDateTime('t',Time)` call.

Errors: None.

See also:

---

```
Program Example25;

{ This program demonstrates the TimeToStr function }

Uses sysutils;
```

```
Begin
  WriteLn ( 'The current time is : ' ,TimeToStr(Time));
End.
```

---

## 20.5 Disk functions

### AddDisk (Linux only)

Declaration: `Function AddDisk (Const Path : String) : Longint;`

Description: On Linux both the `DiskFree` (42) and `DiskSize` (42) functions need a file on the specified drive, since is required for the `statfs` system call.

These filenames are set in `drivestr[0..26]`, and the first 4 have been preset to :

**Disk 0** ' . ' default drive - hence current directory is used.

**Disk 1** ' /fd0/ . ' floppy drive 1.

**Disk 2** ' /fd1/ . ' floppy drive 2.

**Disk 3** ' / ' C: equivalent of DOS is the root partition.

Drives 4..26 can be set by your own applications with the `AddDisk` call.

The `AddDisk` call adds `Path` to the names of drive files, and returns the number of the disk that corresponds to this drive. If you add more than 21 drives, the count is wrapped to 4.

Errors: None.

See also: `DiskFree` (387), `DiskSize` (387)

### CreateDir

Declaration: `Function CreateDir(Const NewDir : String) : Boolean;`

Description: `CreateDir` creates a new directory with name `NewDir`. If the directory doesn't contain an absolute path, then the directory is created below the current working directory.

The function returns `True` if the directory was successfully created, `False` otherwise.

Errors: In case of an error, the function returns `False`.

See also: `RemoveDir` (388)

---

**Program** Example26;

```
{ This program demonstrates the CreateDir and RemoveDir functions }
{ Run this program twice in the same directory }
```

**Uses** sysutils;

```
Begin
  If Not FileExists ( 'NewDir' ) then
    If Not CreateDir ( 'NewDir' ) Then
      WriteLn ( 'Failed to create directory !' )
    else
      WriteLn ( 'Created "NewDir" directory ' )
  Else
```

```
    If Not RemoveDir ( ' NewDir' ) Then
        WriteLn ( ' Failed to remove directory !' )
    else
        WriteLn ( ' Removed " NewDir" directory ' );
End.
```

---

## DiskFree

Declaration: `Function DiskFree(Drive : Byte) : Longint;`

Description: `DiskFree` returns the free space (in bytes) on disk `Drive`. `Drive` is the number of the disk drive:

- 0**for the current drive.
- 1**for the first floppy drive.
- 2**for the second floppy drive.
- 3**for the first hard-disk partition.
- 4-26**for all other drives and partitions.

*Remark* Under LINUX, and Unix in general, the concept of disk is different than the DOS one, since the filesystem is seen as one big directory tree. For this reason, the `DiskFree` and `DiskSize` (42) functions must be mimicked using filenames that reside on the partitions. For more information, see `AddDisk` (386)

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `DiskSize` (387), `AddDisk` (386)

---

```
Program Example27;

{ This program demonstrates the DiskFree function }

Uses sysutils;

Begin
    Write ( ' Size of current disk      : ' , DiskSize (0));
    WriteLn ( ' (= ' , DiskSize (0) div 1024, ' k)' );
    Write ( ' Free space of current disk : ' , Diskfree (0));
    WriteLn ( ' (= ' , Diskfree (0) div 1024, ' k)' );
End.
```

---

## DiskSize

Declaration: `Function DiskSize(Drive : Byte) : Longint;`

Description: `DiskSize` returns the size (in bytes) of disk `Drive`. `Drive` is the number of the disk drive:

- 0**for the current drive.
- 1**for the first floppy drive.
- 2**for the second floppy drive.
- 3**for the first hard-disk partition.
- 4-26**for all other drives and partitions.

*Remark* Under LINUX, and Unix in general, the concept of disk is different than the DOS one, since the filesystem is seen as one big directory tree. For this reason, the `DiskFree` (42) and `DiskSize` functions must be mimicked using filenames that reside on the partitions. For more information, see `AddDisk` (386)

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `DiskFree` (387), `AddDisk` (386)

For an example, see `DiskFree` (387).

## GetCurrentDir

Declaration: `Function GetCurrentDir : String;`

Description: `GetCurrentDir` returns the current working directory.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetCurrentDir` (388), `DiskFree` (42), `DiskSize` (42)

---

```
Program Example28;  
  
  { This program demonstrates the GetCurrentDir function }  
  
Uses sysutils;  
  
Begin  
  WriteLn ( 'Current Directory is : ', GetCurrentDir );  
End.
```

---

## RemoveDir

Declaration: `Function RemoveDir(Const Dir : String) : Boolean;`

Description: `RemoveDir` removes directory `Dir` from the disk. If the directory is not absolute, it is appended to the current working directory.

Errors: In case of error (e.g. the directory isn't empty) the function returns `False`. If successful, `True` is returned.

See also:

For an example, see `CreateDir` (386).

## SetCurrentDir

Declaration: `Function SetCurrentDir(Const NewDir : String) : Boolean;`

Description: `SetCurrentDir` sets the current working directory of your program to `NewDir`. It returns `True` if the function was successful, `False` otherwise.

Errors: In case of error, `False` is returned.

See also: `GetCurrentDir` (388)

---

```
Program Example29;

{ This program demonstrates the SetCurrentDir function }

Uses sysutils;

Begin
  If SetCurrentDir ( '..' ) Then
    WriteLn ( 'Now in directory ', GetCurrentDir )
  else
    WriteLn ( 'Change directory to .. failed.' );
End.
```

---

## 20.6 File handling functions

### ChangeFileExt

**Declaration:** `Function ChangeFileExt(const FileName, Extension: string): string;`

**Description:** `ChangeFileExt` changes the file extension in `FileName` to `Extension`. The extension `Extension` includes the starting . (dot). The previous extension of `FileName` are all characters after the last ., the . character included.

If `FileName` doesn't have an extension, `Extension` is just appended.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `ExtractFileName` (392), `ExtractFilePath` (392), `ExpandFileName` (390)

### DeleteFile

**Declaration:** `Function DeleteFile(Const FileName : String) : Boolean;`

**Description:** `DeleteFile` deletes file `FileName` from disk. The function returns `True` if the file was successfully removed, `False` otherwise.

**Errors:** On error, `False` is returned.

See also: `FileCreate` (394), `FileExists` (395)

---

```
Program Example31;

{ This program demonstrates the DeleteFile function }

Uses sysutils;

Var
  Line : String;
  F, I : Longint;

Begin
  F := FileCreate ( ' test . txt ' );
  Line := 'Some string line .' #10;
  For I := 1 to 10 do
    FileWrite ( F, Line [1], Length( Line ));
```

---

```
FileClose (F);
DeleteFile ( ' test . txt ' );
End.
```

---

## DoDirSeparators

Declaration: Procedure DoDirSeparators (Var FileName : String);

Description: This function replaces all directory separators ' and ' / ' to the directory separator character for the current system.

Errors: None.

See also: ExtractFileName (392), ExtractFilePath (392)

---

```
Program Example32;

{ This program demonstrates the DoDirSeparators function }
{$H+}

Uses sysutils;

Procedure Testit ( F : String );

begin
  Writeln ( ' Before : ' , F );
  DoDirSeparators ( F );
  Writeln ( ' After : ' , F );
end;

Begin
  Testit ( GetCurrentDir );
  Testit ( ' c : \ p p \ b i n \ w i n 3 2 ' );
  Testit ( ' / u s r / l i b / f p c ' );
  Testit ( ' \ u s r \ l i b \ f p c ' );
End.
```

---

## ExpandFileName

Declaration: Function ExpandFileName (Const FileName : string): String;

Description: ExpandFileName expands the filename to an absolute filename. It changes all directory separator characters to the one appropriate for the system first.

Errors: None.

See also: ExtractFileName (392), ExtractFilePath (392), ExtractFileDir (391), ExtractFileDrive (392), ExtractFileExt (392), ExtractRelativePath (393)

---

```
Program Example33;

{ This program demonstrates the ExpandFileName function }

Uses sysutils;
```

```
Procedure Testit (F : String);  
  
begin  
  Writeln (F, ' expands to : ', ExpandFileName(F));  
end;  
  
Begin  
  Testit ('ex33.pp');  
  Testit (ParamStr(0));  
  Testit ('/pp/bin/win32/ppc386');  
  Testit ('\\pp\\bin\\win32\\ppc386');  
  Testit ('.');  
End.
```

---

### ExpandUNCFileName

Declaration: `Function ExpandUNCFileName(Const FileName : string): String;`

Description: `ExpandUNCFileName` runs `ExpandFileName` (390) on `FileName` and then attempts to replace the driveletter by the name of a shared disk.

Errors:

See also: `ExtractFileName` (392), `ExtractFilePath` (392), `ExtractFileDir` (391), `ExtractFileDrive` (392), `ExtractFileExt` (392), `ExtractRelativePath` (393)

### ExtractFileDir

Declaration: `Function ExtractFileDir(Const FileName : string): string;`

Description: `ExtractFileDir` returns only the directory part of `FileName`, not including a driveletter. The directory name has NO ending directory separator, in difference with `ExtractFilePath` (392).

Errors: None.

See also: `ExtractFileName` (392), `ExtractFilePath` (392), `ExtractFileDir` (391), `ExtractFileDrive` (392), `ExtractFileExt` (392), `ExtractRelativePath` (393)

---

#### Program Example34;

```
{ This program demonstrates the ExtractFileName function }  
{ $H+ }
```

```
Uses sysutils;
```

```
Procedure Testit(F : String);  
  
begin  
  Writeln ( ' FileName      : ', F);  
  Writeln ( ' Has Name     : ', ExtractFileName(F));  
  Writeln ( ' Has Path     : ', ExtractFilePath(F));  
  Writeln ( ' Has Extension : ', ExtractFileExt(F));  
  Writeln ( ' Has Directory : ', ExtractFileDir(F));  
  Writeln ( ' Has Drive    : ', ExtractFileDrive(F));  
end;
```

```
Begin
```



```
Testit ( Paramstr(0));  
Testit ( '/usr/local/bin/mysql' );  
Testit ( 'c:\pp\bin\win32\ppc386.exe' );  
Testit ( '/pp/bin/win32/ppc386.exe' );  
End.
```

---

### **ExtractFileDrive**

Declaration: `Function ExtractFileDrive(const FileName: string): string;`

Description: `Extract`

Errors:

See also: `ExtractFileName` (392), `ExtractFilePath` (392), `ExtractFileDir` (391), `ExtractFileDrive` (392), `ExtractFileExt` (392), `ExtractRelativePath` (393)

For an example, see `ExtractFileDir` (391).

### **ExtractFileExt**

Declaration: `Function ExtractFileExt(const FileName: string): string;`

Description: `ExtractFileExt` returns the extension (including the `.` (dot) character) of `FileName`.

Errors: None.

See also: `ExtractFileName` (392), `ExtractFilePath` (392), `ExtractFileDir` (391), `ExtractFileDrive` (392), `ExtractFileExt` (392), `ExtractRelativePath` (393)

For an example, see `ExtractFileDir` (391).

### **ExtractFileName**

Declaration: `Function ExtractFileName(const FileName: string): string;`

Description: `ExtractFileName` returns the filename part from `FileName`. The filename consists of all characters after the last directory separator character (`'/'` or `'\'`) or drive letter.

The full filename can always be reconstructed by concatenating the result of `ExtractFilePath` (392) and `ExtractFileName`.

Errors: None.

See also: `ExtractFileName` (392), `ExtractFilePath` (392), `ExtractFileDir` (391), `ExtractFileDrive` (392), `ExtractFileExt` (392), `ExtractRelativePath` (393)

For an example, see `ExtractFileDir` (391).

### **ExtractFilePath**

Declaration: `Function ExtractFilePath(const FileName: string): string;`

**Description:** `ExtractFilePath` returns the path part (including driveletter) from `FileName`. The path consists of all characters before the last directory separator character ('/' or '\'), including the directory separator itself. In case there is only a drive letter, that will be returned.

The full filename can always be reconstructed by concatenating the result of `ExtractFilePath` and `ExtractFileName` (392).

**Errors:** None.

See also: `ExtractFileName` (392), `ExtractFilePath` (392), `ExtractFileDir` (391), `ExtractFileDrive` (392), `ExtractFileExt` (392), `ExtractRelativePath` (393)

For an example, see `ExtractFileDir` (391).

### **ExtractRelativePath**

**Declaration:** `Function ExtractRelativePath(Const BaseName, DestName : String): String;`

**Description:** `ExtractRelativePath` constructs a relative path to go from `BaseName` to `DestName`. If `DestName` is on another drive (Not on Linux) then the whole `Destname` is returned.

*Note:* This function does not exist in the Delphi unit.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `ExtractFileName` (392), `ExtractFilePath` (392), `ExtractFileDir` (391), `ExtractFileDrive` (392), `ExtractFileExt` (392),

---

**Program** Example35;

*{ This program demonstrates the ExtractRelativePath function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** Testit (FromDir, ToDir : **String**);

**begin**

**Write** ( 'From "', FromDir, '" to "', ToDir, '" via " ');

**WriteLn** ( ExtractRelativePath ( FromDir, ToDir ), ' " ');

**end**;

**Begin**

    Testit ( '/ pp/ src/ compiler ', '/ pp/ bin/ win32/ ppc386' );

    Testit ( '/ pp/ bin/ win32/ ppc386 ', '/ pp/ src/ compiler' );

    Testit ( 'e:/ pp/ bin/ win32/ ppc386 ', 'd:/ pp/ src/ compiler' );

    Testit ( 'e:\ pp\ bin\ win32\ ppc386 ', 'd:\ pp\ src\ compiler' );

**End.**

---

### **FileAge**

**Declaration:** `Function FileAge(Const FileName : String): Longint;`

**Description:** `FileAge` returns the last modification time of file `FileName`. The `FileDate` format can be transformed to `TDateTime` format with the `FileDateToDateTime` (379) function.

**Errors:** In case of errors, -1 is returned.

See also: [FileDateTime](#) (379), [FileExists](#) (395), [FileGetAttr](#) (395)

---

```
Program Example36;

{ This program demonstrates the FileAge function }

Uses sysutils;

Var S : TDateTime;
    fa : Longint;
Begin
    fa := FileAge( 'ex36.pp' );
    If fa <> -1 then
        begin
            S := FileDateTime( fa );
            WriteLn ( 'I''m from ', DateTimeToStr(S))
        end;
End.
```

---

## FileClose

**Declaration:** `Procedure FileClose(Handle : Longint);`

**Description:** `FileClose` closes the file handle `Handle`. After this call, attempting to read or write from the handle will result in an error.

**Errors:** None.

See also: [FileCreate](#) (394), [FileWrite](#) (400), [FileOpen](#) (397), [FileRead](#) (397), [FileTruncate](#) (399), [FileSeek](#) (398)

For an example, see [FileCreate](#) (394)

## FileCreate

**Declaration:** `Function FileCreate(Const FileName : String) : Longint;`

**Description:** `FileCreate` creates a new file with name `FileName` on the disk and returns a file handle which can be used to read or write from the file with the [FileRead](#) (397) and [FileWrite](#) (400) functions.

If a file with name `FileName` already existed on the disk, it is overwritten.

**Errors:** If an error occurs (e.g. disk full or non-existent path), the function returns -1.

See also: [FileClose](#) (394), [FileWrite](#) (400), [FileOpen](#) (397), [FileRead](#) (397), [FileTruncate](#) (399), [FileSeek](#) (398)

---

```
Program Example37;

{ This program demonstrates the FileCreate function }

Uses sysutils;

Var I,J,F : Longint;
```

```
Begin
F:= FileCreate ( ' test . dat ' );
If F=-1 then
  Halt (1);
For I:=0 to 100 do
  FileWrite (F, I , SizeOf ( i ));
FileClose ( f );
F:= FileOpen ( ' test . dat ' ,fmOpenRead);
For I:=0 to 100 do
  begin
    FileRead ( F, J, SizeOF (J));
    If J<>I then
      Writeln ( 'Mismatch at file position ' ,I)
    end;
  FileSeek (F,0, fsFromBeginning );
  Randomize;
  Repeat
    FileSeek (F, Random(100)*4, fsFromBeginning );
    FileRead ( F, J, SizeOf (J));
    Writeln ( 'Random read : ' ,j );
  Until J>80;
  FileClose (F);
F:= FileOpen ( ' test . dat ' ,fmOpenWrite);
I:=50* SizeOf ( Longint );
If FileTruncate (F,I) then
  Writeln ( ' Successfully truncated file to ' ,I, ' bytes . ' );
FileClose (F);
End.
```

---

### FileExists

Declaration: Function FileExists(Const FileName : String) : Boolean;

Description: FileExists returns True if a file with name FileName exists on the disk, False otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: FileAge (393), FileGetAttr (395), FileSetAttr (399)

---

```
Program Example38;

{ This program demonstrates the FileExists function }

Uses sysutils;

Begin
  If FileExists (ParamStr (0)) Then
    Writeln ( ' All is well , I seem to exist . ' );
End.
```

---

### FileGetAttr

Declaration: Function FileGetAttr(Const FileName : String) : Longint;

Description: FileGetAttr returns the attribute settings of file FileName. The attribute is a OR-ed combination of the following constants:

**faReadOnly**The file is read-only.

**faHidden**The file is hidden. (On LINUX, this means that the filename starts with a dot)

**faSysFile**The file is a system file (On LINUX, this means that the file is a character, block or FIFO file).

**faVolumeId**Volume Label. Not possible under LINUX.

**faDirectory**File is a directory.

**faArchive**file is an archive. Not possible on LINUX.

Errors: In case of error, -1 is returned.

See also: FileSetAttr (399), FileAge (393), FileGetDate (396).

---

```
Program Example40;

{ This program demonstrates the FileGetAttr function }

Uses sysutils;

Procedure Testit (Name : String);

Var F : Longint;

Begin
  F:= FileGetAttr (Name);
  If F<>-1 then
    begin
      Writeln ( ' Testing : ',Name);
      If (F and faReadOnly)<>0 then
        Writeln ( ' File is ReadOnly' );
      If (F and faHidden)<>0 then
        Writeln ( ' File is hidden' );
      If (F and faSysFile)<>0 then
        Writeln ( ' File is a system file ' );
      If (F and faVolumeID)<>0 then
        Writeln ( ' File is a disk label' );
      If (F and faArchive)<>0 then
        Writeln ( ' File is artchive file ' );
      If (F and faDirectory)<>0 then
        Writeln ( ' File is a directory' );
      end
    else
      Writeln ( 'Error reading attribites of ',Name);
    end;

  begin
    testit ( 'ex40.pp' );
    testit ( ParamStr(0));
    testit ( '.' );
    testit ( '/' );
  End.
```

---

## FileGetDate

Declaration: Function FileGetDate(Handle : Longint) : Longint;

**Description:** `FileGetdate` returns the filetime of the opened file with filehandle `Handle`. It is the same as `FileAge` (393), with this difference that `FileAge` only needs the file name, while `FileGetDate` needs an open file handle.

**Errors:** On error, -1 is returned.

**See also:** `FileAge` (393)

---

```
Program Example39;  
  
  { This program demonstrates the FileGetDate function }  
  
Uses sysutils ;  
  
Var F,D : Longint;  
  
Begin  
  F:= FileCreate ( ' test . dat ' );  
  D:= FileGetDate (D);  
  Writeln ( ' File created on ' , DateTimeToStr ( FileDateToDateTime (D)));  
  FileClose (F);  
  DeleteFile ( ' test . dat ' );  
End.
```

---

## FileOpen

**Declaration:** `Function FileOpen(Const FileName : string; Mode : Integer) : Longint;`

**Description:** `FileOpen` opens a file with name `FileName` with mode `Mode`. `Mode` can be one of the following constants:

**fmOpenRead**The file is opened for reading.

**fmOpenWrite**The file is opened for writing.

**fmOpenReadWrite**The file is opened for reading and writing.

If the file has been successfully opened, it can be read from or written to (depending on the `Mode` parameter) with the `FileRead` (397) and `FileWrite` functions.

Remark that you cannot open a file if it doesn't exist yet, i.e. it will not be created for you. If you want to create a new file, or overwrite an old one, use the `FileCreate` (394) function.

**Errors:** On Error, -1 is returned.

**See also:** `FileClose` (394), `FileWrite` (400), `FileCreate` (394), `FileRead` (397), `FileTruncate` (399), `FileSeek` (398)

For an example, see `FileRead` (397)

## FileRead

**Declaration:** `Function FileRead(Handle : Longint; Var Buffer; Count : longint) : Longint;`

**Description:** `FileRead` reads `Count` bytes from file-handle `Handle` and stores them into `Buffer`. `Buffer` must be at least `Count` bytes long. No checking on this is performed, so be careful not to overwrite any memory. `Handle` must be the result of a `FileOpen` (397) call.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `FileClose` (394), `FileWrite` (400), `FileCreate` (394), `FileOpen` (397), `FileTruncate` (399), `FileSeek` (398)

For an example, see `FileOpen` (397)

## FileSearch

Declaration: `Function FileSearch(Const Name, DirList : String) : String;`

Description: `FileSearch` looks for the file `Name` in `DirList`, where `dirlist` is a list of directories, separated by semicolons or colons. It returns the full filename of the first match found.

Errors: On error, an empty string is returned.

See also: `ExpandFileName` (390), `FindFirst` (400)

---

**Program** Example41;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FileSearch function . }*

**Uses** Sysutils ;

**Const**

*{ \$ifdef linux }*

FN = ' find ' ;

P = ' .:/ bin :/ usr / bin ' ;

*{ \$else }*

FN = ' find . exe ' ;

P = ' c : \ dos ; c : \ windows ; c : \ windows \ system ; c : \ windows \ system32 ' ;

*{ \$endif }*

**begin**

WriteLn ( ' find is in : ' , FileSearch ( FN,P));

**end.**

---

## FileSeek

Declaration: `Function FileSeek(Handle,Offset,Origin : Longint) : Longint;`

Description: `FileSeek` sets the file pointer on position `Offset`, starting from `Origin`. `Origin` can be one of the following values:

**fsFromBeginning** `Offset` is relative to the first byte of the file. This position is zero-based. i.e. the first byte is at offset 0.

**fsFromCurrent** `Offset` is relative to the current position.

**fsFromEnd** `Offset` is relative to the end of the file. This means that `Offset` can only be zero or negative in this case.

If successfull, the function returns the new file position, relative to the beginning of the file.

*Remark:* The abovementioned constants do not exist in Delphi.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `FileClose` (394), `FileWrite` (400), `FileCreate` (394), `FileOpen` (397) `FileRead` (397), `FileTruncate` (399)

---

```
Program Example42;  
  
{ This program demonstrates the FileSetAttr function }  
  
Uses sysutils;  
  
Begin  
  If FileSetAttr ( 'ex40.pp', faReadOnly or faHidden )=0 then  
    WriteLn ( 'Successfully made file hidden and read-only.' )  
  else  
    WriteLn ( 'Couldn''t make file hidden and read-only.' );  
End.
```

---

For an example, see `FileCreate` (394)

### **FileSetAttr (Not on Linux)**

**Declaration:** `Function FileSetAttr( Const Filename : String; Attr: Longint ) : Longint;`

**Description:** `FileSetAttr` sets the attributes of `FileName` to `Attr`. If the function was successful, 0 is returned, -1 otherwise.

`Attr` can be set to an OR-ed combination of the pre-defined `faXXX` constants.

**Errors:** On error, -1 is returned (always on linux).

See also: `FileGetAttr` (395), `FileGetDate` (396), `FileSetDate` (399).

### **FileSetDate (Not on Linux)**

**Declaration:** `Function FileSetDate(Handle, Age : Longint) : Longint;`

**Description:** `FileSetDate` sets the file date of the file with handle `Handle` to `Age`, where `Age` is a DOS date-and-time stamp value.

The function returns zero of successful.

**Errors:** On Linux, -1 is always returned, since this is impossible to implement. On Windows and DOS, a negative error code is returned.

See also:

### **FileTruncate**

**Declaration:** `Function FileTruncate(Handle, Size: Longint) : boolean;`

**Description:** `FileTruncate` truncates the file with handle `Handle` to `Size` bytes. The file must have been opened for writing prior to this call. The function returns `True` is successful, `False` otherwise.

**Errors:** On error, the function returns `False`.

See also: `FileClose` (394), `FileWrite` (400), `FileCreate` (394), `FileOpen` (397) `FileRead` (397), `FileSeek` (398)

For an example, see `FileCreate` (394).



## FileWrite

**Declaration:** `Function FileWrite(Handle : Longint; Var Buffer; Count : Longint) : Longint;`

**Description:** `FileWrite` writes `Count` bytes from `Buffer` to the file with handle `Handle`. Prior to this call, the file must have been opened for writing. `Buffer` must be at least `Count` bytes large, or a memory access error may occur.

The function returns the number of bytes written, or -1 in case of an error.

**Errors:** In case of error, -1 is returned.

**See also:** `FileClose` (394), `FileCreate` (394), `FileOpen` (397) `FileRead` (397), `FileTruncate` (399), `FileSeek` (398)

For an example, see `FileCreate` (394).

## FindClose

**Declaration:** `Procedure FindClose(Var F : TSearchrec);`

**Description:** `FindClose` ends a series of `FindFirst` (400)/`FindNext` (401) calls, and frees any memory used by these calls. It is *absolutely* necessary to do this call, or huge memory losses may occur.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `FindFirst` (400), `FindNext` (401).

For an example, see `FindFirst` (400).

## FindFirst

**Declaration:** `Function FindFirst(Const Path : String; Attr : Longint; Var Rslt : TSearchRec) : Longint;`

**Description:** `FindFirst` looks for files that match the name (possibly with wildcards) in `Path` and attributes `Attr`. It then fills up the `Rslt` record with data gathered about the file. It returns 0 if a file matching the specified criteria is found, a nonzero value (-1 on linux) otherwise.

The `Rslt` record can be fed to subsequent calls to `FindNext`, in order to find other files matching the specifications.

*remark:* A `FindFirst` call must *always* be followed by a `FindClose` (400) call with the same `Rslt` record. Failure to do so will result in memory loss.

**Errors:** On error the function returns -1 on linux, a nonzero error code on Windows.

**See also:** `FindClose` (45)`FindCloseSys`, `FindNext` (401).

---

**Program** Example43;

*{ This program demonstrates the FindFirst function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** Info : TSearchRec;  
Count : Longint;

```
Begin
  Count:=0;
  If FindFirst ( '*.pp', faAnyFile , Info )=0 then
    begin
      Repeat
        Inc ( Count );
        With Info do
          WriteLn ( Name:40, Size:15);
        Until FindNext( info )<>0;
      end;
    FindClose( Info );
    WriteLn ( ' Finished search . Found ', Count, ' matches' );
End.
```

---

## FindNext

Declaration: Function FindNext(Var Rslt : TSearchRec) : Longint;

Description: FindNext finds a next occurrence of a search sequence initiated by FindFirst. If another record matching the criteria in Rslt is found, 0 is returned, a nonzero constant is returned otherwise.

*remark:* The last FindNext call must *always* be followed by a FindClose call with the same Rslt record. Failure to do so will result in memory loss.

Errors: On error (no more file is found), a nonzero constant is returned.

See also: FindFirst (400), FindClose (45)

For an example, see FindFirst (400)

## GetDirs

Declaration: Function GetDirs(Var DirName : String; Var Dirs : Array of pchar)  
: Longint;

Description: GetDirs splits DirName in a null-byte separated list of directory names, Dirs is an array of PChars, pointing to these directory names. The function returns the number of directories found, or -1 if none were found. DirName must contain only OSDirSeparator as Directory separator chars.

Errors: None.

See also: ExtractRelativePath (393)

---

**Program** Example45;

```
{ This program demonstrates the GetDirs function }
{$H+}
```

**Uses** sysutils ;

```
Var Dirs : Array[0..127] of pchar;
    I, Count : longint;
    Dir, NewDir : String;
```

```
Begin
  Dir:= GetCurrentDir;
  WriteLn ( ' Dir : ', Dir);
  NewDir:= '';
  count:= GetDirs ( Dir , Dirs );
  For I:=0 to Count do
    begin
      NewDir:= NewDir+ '/' +StrPas ( Dirs [ I ] );
      WriteLn ( NewDir);
    end;
End.
```

---

## RenameFile

Declaration: Function RenameFile(Const OldName, NewName : String) : Boolean;

Description: RenameFile renames a file from OldName to NewName. The function returns True if successful, False otherwise.

*Remark:* you cannot rename across disks or partitions.

Errors: On Error, False is returned.

See also: DeleteFile (389)

---

```
Program Example44;

{ This program demonstrates the RenameFile function }

Uses sysutils;

Var F : Longint;
     S : String;

Begin
  S:= 'Some short file .';
  F:= FileCreate ( ' test .dap' );
  FileWrite (F, S[1], Length(S));
  FileClose(F);
  If RenameFile ( ' test .dap', ' test .dat' ) then
    WriteLn ( ' Successfully renamed files .' );
End.
```

---

## SetDirSeparators

Declaration: Function SetDirSeparators(Const FileName : String) : String;

Description: SetDirSeparators returns FileName with all possible DirSeparators replaced by OSDirSeparator.

Errors: None.

See also: ExpandFileName (390), ExtractFilePath (392), ExtractFileDir (391)

---

```
Program Example47;
```

```
{ This program demonstrates the SetDirSeparators function }
```

```
Uses sysutils ;
```

```
Begin
```

```
  Writeln ( SetDirSeparators ( '/ pp\ bin / win32\ppc386' ) );
```

```
End.
```

---

## 20.7 PChar functions

### Introduction

Most PChar functions are the same as their counterparts in the **STRINGS** unit. The following functions are the same :

1. **StrCat** (354) : Concatenates two PChar strings.
2. **StrComp** (355) : Compares two PChar strings.
3. **StrCopy** (355) : Copies a PChar string.
4. **StrECopy** (356) : Copies a PChar string and returns a pointer to the terminating null byte.
5. **StrEnd** (357) : Returns a pointer to the terminating null byte.
6. **StrLComp** (357) : Case insensitive compare of 2 PChar strings.
7. **StrLCat** (358) : Appends at most L characters from one PChar to another PChar.
8. **StrLComp** (358) : Case sensitive compare of at most L characters of 2 PChar strings.
9. **StrLCopy** (359) : Copies at most L characters from one PChar to another.
10. **StrLen** (359) : Returns the length (exclusive terminating null byte) of a PChar string.
11. **StrLComp** (360) : Case insensitive compare of at most L characters of 2 PChar strings.
12. **StrLower** (360) : Converts a PChar to all lowercase letters.
13. **StrMove** (361) : Moves one PChar to another.
14. **StrNew** (361) : Makes a copy of a PChar on the heap, and returns a pointer to this copy.
15. **StrPos** (363) : Returns the position of one PChar string in another?
16. **StrRScan** (363) : returns a pointer to the last occurrence of on PChar string in another one.
17. **StrScan** (363) : returns a pointer to the first occurrence of on PChar string in another one.
18. **StrUpper** (364) : Converts a PChar to all uppercase letters.

The subsequent functions are different from their counterparts in **STRINGS**, although the same examples can be used.

## StrAlloc

Declaration: `Function StrAlloc(Size: cardinal): PChar;`

Description: `StrAlloc` reserves memory on the heap for a string with length `Len`, terminating `#0` included, and returns a pointer to it.

Additionally, `StrAlloc` allocates 4 extra bytes to store the size of the allocated memory. Therefore this function is NOT compatible with the `StrAlloc` (354) function of the `Strings` unit.

Errors: None.

See also: `StrBufSize` (404), `StrDispose` (404), `StrAlloc` (354)

For an example, see `StrBufSize` (404).

## StrBufSize

Declaration: `Function StrBufSize(var Str: PChar): cardinal;`

Description: `StrBufSize` returns the memory allocated for `Str`. This function ONLY gives the correct result if `Str` was allocated using `StrAlloc` (404).

Errors: If no more memory is available, a runtime error occurs.

See also: `StrAlloc` (404), `StrDispose` (404).

---

**Program** Example46;

```
{ This program demonstrates the StrBufSize function }  
{ $H+ }
```

**Uses** sysutils;

**Const** S = 'Some nice string';

**Var** P : Pchar;

**Begin**

```
P:= StrAlloc (Length(S)+1);  
StrPCopy(P, S);  
Write (P, ' has length ', length(S));  
WriteLn ( ' and buffer size ', StrBufSize(P));  
StrDispose(P);
```

**End.**

---

## StrDispose

Declaration: `Procedure StrDispose(var Str: PChar);`

Description: `StrDispose` frees any memory allocated for `Str`. This function will only function correctly if `Str` has been allocated using `StrAlloc` (404) from the `SYSUTILS` unit.

Errors: If an invalid pointer is passed, or a pointer not allocated with `StrAlloc`, an error may occur.

See also: `StrBufSize` (404), `StrAlloc` (404), `StrDispose` (356)

For an example, see `StrBufSize` (404).

### StrPCopy

Declaration: `Function StrPCopy(Dest: PChar; Source: string): PChar;`

Description: `StrPCopy` Converts the Ansistring in `Source` to a Null-terminated string, and copies it to `Dest`.  
`Dest` needs enough room to contain the string `Source`, i.e. `Length(Source)+1` bytes.

Errors: No checking is performed to see whether `Dest` points to enough memory to contain `Source`.

See also: `StrPLCopy` (405), `StrPCopy` (362)

For an example, see `StrPCopy` (362).

### StrPLCopy

Declaration: `Function StrPLCopy(Dest: PChar; Source: string; MaxLen: cardinal): PChar;`

Description: `StrPLCopy` Converts maximally `MaxLen` characters of the Ansistring in `Source` to a Null-terminated string, and copies it to `Dest`. `Dest` needs enough room to contain the characters.

Errors: No checking is performed to see whether `Dest` points to enough memory to contain `L` characters of `Source`.

Errors:

See also: `StrPCopy` (405).

### StrPas

Declaration: `Function StrPas(Str: PChar): string;`

Description: Converts a null terminated string in `Str` to an Ansistring, and returns this string. This string is NOT truncated at 255 characters as is the

Errors: None.

See also: `StrPas` (362).

For an example, see `StrPas` (362).

## 20.8 String handling functions

### AdjustLineBreaks

Declaration: `Function AdjustLineBreaks(const S: string): string;`

Description: `AdjustLineBreaks` will change all `#13` characters with `#13#10` on WINDOWS NT and DOS.  
On LINUX, all `#13#10` character pairs are converted to `#10` and single `#13` characters also.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiCompareStr` (406), `AnsiCompareText` (407)

---

**Program** Example48;

*{ This program demonstrates the AdjustLineBreaks function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Const**

S = 'This is a string'#13'with embedded'#10'linefeed and'+  
#13'CR characters';

**Begin**

**WriteLn** ( AdjustLineBreaks(S));

**End.**

---

## AnsiCompareStr

**Declaration:** Function AnsiCompareStr(const S1, S2: string): integer;

**Description:** AnsiCompareStr compares two strings and returns the following result:

<0if S1<S2.

0if S1=S2.

>0if S1>S2.

the comparison takes into account Ansi characters, i.e. it takes care of strange accented characters.  
Contrary to AnsiCompareText (407), the comparison is case sensitive.

Errors: None.

See also: AdjustLineBreaks (405), AnsiCompareText (407)

---

**Program** Example49;

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiCompareStr function }*  
*{ \$H+ }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** TestIt ( S1,S2 : **String** );

**Var** R : Longint;

**begin**

    R:=AnsiCompareStr( S1, S2);

**Write** ( '', S1, ' is ' );

**If** R<0 **then**

**write** ( 'less than ' )

**else If** R=0 **then**

**Write** ( 'equal to ' )

**else**

**Write** ( 'larger than ' );

**WriteLn** ( '', S2, '' );

**end;**

**Begin**

```
Testit('One string','One smaller string');
Testit('One string','one string');
Testit('One string','One string');
Testit('One string','One tall string');
End.
```

---

### AnsiCompareText

Declaration: `Function AnsiCompareText(const S1, S2: string): integer;`

Description:

Description: `AnsiCompareText` compares two strings and returns the following result:

```
<0if S1<S2.
0if S1=S2.
>0if S1>S2.
```

the comparison takes into account Ansi characters, i.e. it takes care of strange accented characters.  
Contrary to `AnsiCompareStr` (406), the comparison is case insensitive.

Errors: None.

See also: `AdjustLineBreaks` (405), `AnsiCompareText` (407)

---

**Program** Example49;

```
{ This program demonstrates the AnsiCompareText function }
{$H+}
```

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** TestIt (S1,S2 : **String**);

**Var** R : Longint;

**begin**

  R:=**AnsiCompareText**(S1,S2);

**Write** ( '', S1, ' is ' );

**If** R<0 **then**

**write** ( 'less than ' )

**else If** R=0 **then**

**Write** ( 'equal to ' )

**else**

**Write** ( 'larger than ' );

**Writeln** ( '', S2, '' );

**end**;

**Begin**

  Testit('One string','One smaller string');

  Testit('One string','one string');

  Testit('One string','One string');

  Testit('One string','One tall string');

**End.**

---



### AnsiExtractQuotedStr

Declaration: `Function AnsiExtractQuotedStr(var Src: PChar; Quote: Char): string;`

Description: `AnsiExtractQuotedStr` Returns `Src` as a string,, with Quote characters removed from the beginning and end of the string, and double Quote characters replaced by a single Quote characters. As such, it reverses the action of `AnsiQuotedStr` (409).

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiQuotedStr` (409)

---

```
Program Example51;

{ This program demonstrates the AnsiQuotedStr function }

Uses sysutils;

Var S : AnsiString;

Begin
  S:='He said " Hello " and walked on';
  S:=AnsiQuotedStr(Pchar(S), ''' );
  Writeln ( S);
  Writeln ( AnsiExtractQuotedStr ( Pchar(S), ''' ));
End.
```

---

### AnsiLastChar

Declaration: `Function AnsiLastChar(const S: string): PChar;`

Description: This function returns a pointer to the last character of `S`. Since multibyte characters are not yet supported, this is the same as `@S[Length(S)]`.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiStrLastChar` (411)

---

```
Program Example52;

{ This program demonstrates the AnsiLastChar function }

Uses sysutils;

Var S : AnsiString;
    L : Longint;

Begin
  S:='This is an ansistring.';
  Writeln ( 'Last character of S is : ',AnsiLastChar(S));
  L:=Longint ( AnsiLastChar(S))- Longint (@S[1])+1;
  Writeln ( 'Length of S is : ',L);
End.
```

---

## AnsiLowerCase

Declaration: `Function AnsiLowerCase(const s: string): string;`

Description: `AnsiLowerCase` converts the string `S` to lowercase characters and returns the resulting string. It takes into account the operating system language settings when doing this, so special characters are converted correctly as well.

*Remark* On linux, no language setting is taken in account yet.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiUpperCase` (414), `AnsiStrLower` (413), `AnsiStrUpper` (414)

---

**Program** Example53;

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiLowerCase function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** Testit (S : String);

**begin**

**WriteLn** (S, ' -> ', **AnsiLowerCase**(S))

**end**;

**Begin**

  Testit ('AN UPPERCASE STRING');

  Testit ('Some mixed STring');

  Testit ('a lowercase string');

**End.**

---

## AnsiQuotedStr

Declaration: `Function AnsiQuotedStr(const S: string; Quote: char): string;`

Description: `AnsiQuotedString` quotes the string `S` and returns the result. This means that it puts the `Quote` character at both the beginning and end of the string and replaces any occurrence of `Quote` in `S` with 2 `Quote` characters. The action of `AnsiQuotedString` can be reversed by `AnsiExtractQuotedStr` (408).

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiExtractQuotedStr` (408)

For an example, see `AnsiExtractQuotedStr` (408)

## AnsiStrComp

Declaration: `Function AnsiStrComp(S1, S2: PChar): integer;`

Description: `AnsiStrComp` compares 2 `PChar` strings, and returns the following result:

<0 if `S1<S2`.

0 if `S1=S2`.

>0 if `S1>S2`.

The comparison of the two strings is case-sensitive. The function does not yet take internationalization settings into account.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiCompareText` (407), `AnsiCompareStr` (406)

---

```
Program Example54;

{ This program demonstrates the AnsiStrComp function }

Uses sysutils;

Procedure TestIt ( S1,S2 : Pchar);

Var R : Longint;

begin
  R:= AnsiStrComp( S1,S2);
  Write ( ''' ,S1, ' is ' );
  If R<0 then
    write ( 'less than ' )
  else If R=0 then
    Write ( 'equal to ' )
  else
    Write ( 'larger than ' );
  Writeln ( ''' ,S2, ''' );
end;

Begin
  Testit('One string ','One smaller string ');
  Testit('One string ','one string ');
  Testit('One string ','One string ');
  Testit('One string ','One tall string ');
End.
```

---

## AnsiStrIComp

**Declaration:** `Function AnsiStrIComp(S1, S2: PChar): integer;`

**Description:** `AnsiStrIComp` compares 2 `PChar` strings, and returns the following result:

<0 if `S1<S2`.

0 if `S1=S2`.

>0 if `S1>S2`.

The comparison of the two strings is case-insensitive. The function does not yet take internationalization settings into account.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiCompareText` (407), `AnsiCompareStr` (406)

---

**Program** Example55;

```
{ This program demonstrates the AnsiStrlComp function }
```

```
Uses sysutils;
```

```
Procedure TestIt (S1,S2 : Pchar);
```

```
Var R : Longint;
```

```
begin
```

```
  R:= AnsiStrlComp (S1,S2);
```

```
  Write ( ''' ,S1, ' is ' );
```

```
  If R<0 then
```

```
    write ( 'less than ' )
```

```
  else If R=0 then
```

```
    Write ( 'equal to ' )
```

```
  else
```

```
    Write ( 'larger than ' );
```

```
  Writeln ( ''' ,S2, ''' );
```

```
end;
```

```
Begin
```

```
  Testit('One string ','One smaller string');
```

```
  Testit('One string ','one string');
```

```
  Testit('One string ','One string');
```

```
  Testit('One string ','One tall string');
```

```
End.
```

---

## AnsiStrLastChar

Declaration: `function AnsiStrLastChar(Str: PChar): PChar;`

Declaration: `AnsiStrLastChar` returns a pointer to the last character of `Str`. Since multibyte characters are not yet supported, this is the same as `StrEnd(Str)-1`.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiLastChar` (408)

---

**Program** Example58;

```
{ This program demonstrates the AnsiStrLastChar function }
```

```
Uses sysutils;
```

```
Var P : Pchar;
```

```
  L : Longint;
```

```
Begin
```

```
  P:= 'This is an PChar string.';
```

```
  Writeln ( 'Last character of P is : ',AnsiStrLastChar(P));
```

```
  L:= Longint ( AnsiStrLastChar(P))- Longint (P)+1;
```

```
  Writeln ( 'Length of P ( ',P, ' ) is : ',L);
```

```
End.
```

---

## AnsiStrLComp

Declaration: Function AnsiStrLComp(S1, S2: PChar; MaxLen: cardinal): integer;

Description: AnsiStrLComp compares the first Maxlen characters of 2 PChar strings, S1 and S2, and returns the following result:

<0if S1<S2.

0if S1=S2.

>0if S1>S2.

The comparison of the two strings is case-sensitive. The function does not yet take internationalization settings into account.

Errors: None.

See also: AnsiCompareText (407), AnsiCompareStr (406)

---

**Program** Example56;

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiStrLComp function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** TestIt (S1,S2 : Pchar; L : longint);

**Var** R : Longint;

**begin**

R:= AnsiStrLComp(S1,S2,L);

**Write** ( ' First ',L, ' characters of "',S1,'" are ' );

**If** R<0 **then**

**write** ( ' less than ' )

**else If** R=0 **then**

**Write** ( ' equal to ' )

**else**

**Write** ( ' larger than ' );

**Writeln** ( ' those of "',S2,'" );

**end;**

**Begin**

Testit('One string ','One smaller string ',255);

Testit('One string ','One String ',4);

Testit('One string ','1 string ',0);

Testit('One string ','One string .',9);

**End.**

---

## AnsiStrLIComp

Declaration: Function AnsiStrLIComp(S1, S2: PChar; MaxLen: cardinal): integer;

Description: AnsiStrLIComp compares the first Maxlen characters of 2 PChar strings, S1 and S2, and returns the following result:

<0if S1<S2.

0if S1=S2.

>0 if S1>S2.

The comparison of the two strings is case-insensitive. The function does not yet take internationalization settings into account.

Errors: None.

See also: AnsiCompareText (407), AnsiCompareStr (406)

---

```
Program Example57;

{ This program demonstrates the AnsiStrLIComp function }

Uses sysutils;

Procedure TestIt ( S1,S2 : Pchar; L : longint );

Var R : Longint;

begin
  R:= AnsiStrLIComp ( S1, S2, L);
  Write ( ' First ',L, ' characters of "',S1,'" are ' );
  If R<0 then
    write ( 'less than ' )
  else If R=0 then
    Write ( 'equal to ' )
  else
    Write ( 'larger than ' );
  Writeln ( ' those of "',S2,'" );
end;

Begin
  Testit ( 'One string ', 'One smaller string ',255);
  Testit ( 'ONE STRING', 'one String ',4);
  Testit ( 'One string ', '1 STRING',0);
  Testit ( 'One STRING', 'one string .',9);
End.
```

---

## AnsiStrLower

Declaration: `Function AnsiStrLower(Str: PChar): PChar;`

Description: `AnsiStrLower` converts the `PChar Str` to lowercase characters and returns the resulting `pchar`. Note that `Str` itself is modified, not a copy, as in the case of `AnsiLowerCase` (409). It takes into account the operating system language settings when doing this, so special characters are converted correctly as well.

*Remark* On linux, no language setting is taken in account yet.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiStrUpper` (414), `AnsiLowerCase` (409)

---

```
Program Example59;

{ This program demonstrates the AnsiStrLower function }
```

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** Testit (S : Pchar);

**begin**

**WriteLn** (S, ' -> ', AnsiStrLower(S))

**end**;

**Begin**

    Testit('AN UPPERCASE STRING');

    Testit('Some mixed STring');

    Testit('a lowercase string');

**End.**

---

## AnsiStrUpper

**Declaration:** Function AnsiStrUpper(Str: PChar): PChar;

**Description:** AnsiStrUpper converts the PChar Str to uppercase characters and returns the resulting string. Note that Str itself is modified, not a copy, as in the case of AnsiUpperCase (414). It takes into account the operating system language settings when doing this, so special characters are converted correctly as well.

*Remark* On linux, no language setting is taken in account yet.

**Errors:** None.

See also: AnsiUpperCase (414), AnsiStrLower (413), AnsiLowerCase (409)

---

**Program** Example60;

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiStrUpper function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** Testit (S : Pchar);

**begin**

**WriteLn** (S, ' -> ', AnsiStrUpper(S))

**end**;

**Begin**

    Testit('AN UPPERCASE STRING');

    Testit('Some mixed STring');

    Testit('a lowercase string');

**End.**

---

## AnsiUpperCase

**Declaration:** Function AnsiUpperCase(const s: string): string;

**Description:** AnsiUpperCase converts the string S to uppercase characters and returns the resulting string. It takes into account the operating system language settings when doing this, so special characters are converted correctly as well.

*Remark* On linux, no language setting is taken in account yet.

Errors: None.

See also: [AnsiStrUpper](#) (414), [AnsiStrLower](#) (413), [AnsiLowerCase](#) (409)

---

```
Program Example60;  
  
  { This program demonstrates the AnsiUpperCase function }  
  
Uses sysutils;  
  
Procedure Testit ( S : String );  
  
  begin  
    Writeln ( S, ' -> ', AnsiUpperCase(S))  
  end;  
  
  Begin  
    Testit ( 'AN UPPERCASE STRING' );  
    Testit ( 'Some mixed SString' );  
    Testit ( 'a lowercase string' );  
  End.
```

---

## AppendStr

Declaration: `Procedure AppendStr(var Dest: String; const S: string);`

Description: `AppendStr` appends `S` to `Dest`.

This function is provided for Delphi compatibility only, since it is completely equivalent to `Dest := Dest+S`.

Errors: None.

See also: [AssignStr](#) (415), [NewStr](#) (282), [DisposeStr](#) (283)

---

```
Program Example62;  
  
  { This program demonstrates the AppendStr function }  
  
Uses sysutils;  
  
Var S : AnsiString;  
  
Begin  
  S:= 'This is an '  
    AppendStr(S, 'AnsiString' );  
    Writeln ( 'S = "', S, '"');  
End.
```

---

## AssignStr

Declaration: `Procedure AssignStr(var P: PString; const S: string);`

Description: `AssignStr` allocates `S` to `P`. The old value of `P` is disposed of.

This function is provided for Delphi compatibility only. `AnsiStrings` are managed on the heap and should be preferred to the mechanism of dynamically allocated strings.



Errors: None.

See also: NewStr (282), AppendStr (415), DisposeStr (283)

---

**Program** Example63;

*{ This program demonstrates the AssignStr function }*  
*{ \$H+ }*

**Uses** sysutils ;

**Var** P : PString ;

**Begin**

P:=NewStr('A first AnsiString');  
**WriteLn** ( ' Before : P = '' ,P^, '' ' );  
AssignStr(P,'A Second ansistring');  
**WriteLn** ( ' After : P = '' ,P^, '' ' );  
**DisposeStr**(P);

**End.**

---

## BCDToInt

Declaration: Function BCDToInt(Value: integer): integer;

Description: BCDToInt converts a BCD coded integer to a normal integer.

Errors: None.

See also: StrToInt (433), IntToStr (428)

---

**Program** Example64;

*{ This program demonstrates the BCDToInt function }*

**Uses** sysutils ;

**Procedure** Testit ( L : longint );  
**begin**  
    **WriteLn** ( L, ' -> ', BCDToInt(L));  
**end;**

**Begin**

    Testit(10);  
    Testit(100);  
    Testit(1000);

**End.**

---

## CompareMem

Declaration: Function CompareMem(P1, P2: Pointer; Length: cardinal): integer;

Description: CompareMem compares, byte by byte, 2 memory areas pointed to by P1 and P2, for a length of L bytes.

It returns the following values:

<0if at some position the byte at P1 is less than the byte at the same position at P2.

0if all L bytes are the same.

3

Errors:

See also:

## CompareStr

Declaration: `Function CompareStr(const S1, S2: string): Integer;`

Description: `CompareStr` compares two strings, S1 and S2, and returns the following result:

<0if S1<S2.

0if S1=S2.

>0if S1>S2.

The comparison of the two strings is case-sensitive. The function does not take internationalization settings into account, it simply compares ASCII values.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiCompareText` (407), `AnsiCompareStr` (406), `CompareText` (418)

---

**Program** Example65;

```
{ This program demonstrates the CompareStr function }
{$H+}
```

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** TestIt ( S1,S2 : **String** );

**Var** R : Longint;

**begin**

  R:= CompareStr(S1,S2);

**Write** ( '', S1, ' is ' );

**If** R<0 **then**

**write** ( 'less than ' )

**else If** R=0 **then**

**Write** ( 'equal to ' )

**else**

**Write** ( 'larger than ' );

**Writeln** ( '', S2, '' );

**end;**

**Begin**

  Testit('One string','One smaller string');

  Testit('One string','one string');

  Testit('One string','One string');

  Testit('One string','One tall string');

**End.**

---

## CompareText

Declaration: `Function CompareText(const S1, S2: string): integer;`

Description: `CompareText` compares two strings, `S1` and `S2`, and returns the following result:

`<0` if `S1<S2`.

`0` if `S1=S2`.

`>0` if `S1>S2`.

The comparison of the two strings is case-insensitive. The function does not take internationalization settings into account, it simply compares ASCII values.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiCompareText` (407), `AnsiCompareStr` (406), `CompareStr` (417)

---

**Program** Example66;

*{ This program demonstrates the CompareText function }*  
*{ \$H+ }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** TestIt ( S1,S2 : **String** );

**Var** R : Longint;

**begin**

  R:= CompareText(S1,S2);

**Write** ( ''' , S1, ' is ' );

**If** R<0 **then**

**write** ( 'less than ' )

**else If** R=0 **then**

**Write** ( 'equal to ' )

**else**

**Write** ( 'larger than ' );

**Writeln** ( ''' , S2, ''' );

**end**;

**Begin**

  Testit('One string','One smaller string');

  Testit('One string','one string');

  Testit('One string','One string');

  Testit('One string','One tall string');

**End.**

---

## DisposeStr

Declaration: `Procedure DisposeStr(S: PString);`

Description: `DisposeStr` removes the dynamically allocated string `S` from the heap, and releases the occupied memory.

This function is provided for Delphi compatibility only. `AnsiStrings` are managed on the heap and should be preferred to the mechanism of dynamically allocated strings.

Errors: None.

See also: [NewStr](#) (282), [AppendStr](#) (415), [AssignStr](#) (415)

For an example, see [DisposeStr](#) (283).

## FloatToStr

**Declaration:** `Function FloatToStr(Value: Extended): String;`

**Description:** `FloatToStr` converts the floating point variable `Value` to a string representation. It will choose the shortest possible notation of the two following formats:

**Fixed format** will represent the string in fixed notation,

**Decimal format** will represent the string in scientific notation.

(more information on these formats can be found in [FloatToStrF](#) (419)) `FloatToStr` is completely equivalent to a `FloatToStrF(Value, ffGeneral, 15, 0);` call.

**Errors:** None.

See also: [FloatToStrF](#) (419)

---

**Program** Example67;

*{ This program demonstrates the FloatToStr function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** Testit (Value : Extended);

**begin**

**Writeln** (Value, ' -> ', **FloatToStr** (Value));

**Writeln** (-Value, ' -> ', **FloatToStr** (-Value));

**end;**

**Begin**

    Testit (0.0);

    Testit (1.1);

    Testit (1.1 e-3);

    Testit (1.1 e-20);

    Testit (1.1 e-200);

    Testit (1.1 e+3);

    Testit (1.1 e+20);

    Testit (1.1 e+200);

**End.**

---

## FloatToStrF

**Declaration:** `Function FloatToStrF(Value: Extended; format: TFloatFormat; Precision, Digits: Integer): String;`

**Description:** `FloatToStrF` converts the floating point number value to a string representation, according to the settings of the parameters `Format`, `Precision` and `Digits`.

The meaning of the `Precision` and `Digits` parameter depends on the `Format` parameter. The format is controlled mainly by the `Format` parameter. It can have one of the following values:

**ffcurrency** Money format. Value is converted to a string using the global variables `CurrencyString`, `CurrencyFormat` and `NegCurrencyFormat`. The `Digits` parameter specifies the number of digits following the decimal point and should be in the range -1 to 18. If `Digits` equals -1, `CurrencyDecimals` is assumed. The `Precision` parameter is ignored.

**ffExponent** Scientific format. Value is converted to a string using scientific notation: 1 digit before the decimal point, possibly preceded by a minus sign if `Value` is negative. The number of digits after the decimal point is controlled by `Precision` and must lie in the range 0 to 15.

**ffFixed** Fixed point format. Value is converted to a string using fixed point notation. The result is composed of all digits of the integer part of `Value`, preceded by a minus sign if `Value` is negative. Following the integer part is `DecimalSeparator` and then the fractional part of `Value`, rounded off to `Digits` numbers. If the number is too large then the result will be in scientific notation.

**ffGeneral** General number format. The argument is converted to a string using `ffExponent` or `ffFixed` format, depending on which one gives the shortest string. There will be no trailing zeroes. If `Value` is less than 0.00001 or if the number of decimals left of the decimal point is larger than `Precision` then scientific notation is used, and `Digits` is the minimum number of digits in the exponent. Otherwise `Digits` is ignored.

**ffnumber** Is the same as `ffFixed`, except that thousand separators are inserted in the resultig string.

Errors: None.

See also: `FloatToStr` (419), `FloatToText` (421)

---

**Program** Example68;

*{ This program demonstrates the FloatToStrF function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Const** `Fmt : Array [ TFloatFormat ] of string [10] =`  
          ( 'general', 'exponent', 'fixed', 'number', 'Currency' );

**Procedure** `Testit ( Value : Extended );`

**Var** `I, J : longint;`  
      `FF : TFloatFormat;`

**begin**

**For** `I:=5 to 15 do`

**For** `J:=1 to 4 do`

**For** `FF:=ffgeneral to ffcurrency do`

**begin**

**Write** ( `Value, '( Prec: ', I:2, ', Dig: ', J, ', fmt: ', Fmt[ ff ], ') : '`  );

**Writeln** ( `FloatToStrf ( Value, FF, I, J )` );

**Write** ( `- Value, '( Prec: ', I:2, ', Dig: ', J, ', fmt: ', Fmt[ ff ], ') : '`  );

**Writeln** ( `FloatToStrf ( -Value, FF, I, J )` );

**end;**

**end;**

**Begin**

`Testit (1.1);`

`Testit (1.1 E1);`

`Testit (1.1 E-1);`

`Testit (1.1 E5);`

`Testit (1.1 E-5);`

```
Testit (1.1 E10);
Testit (1.1 E-10);
Testit (1.1 E15);
Testit (1.1 E-15);
Testit (1.1 E100);
Testit (1.1 E-100);
End.
```

---

## FloatToText

**Declaration:** Function FloatToText(Buffer : Pchar;Value: Extended; Format: TFloatFormat;  
Precision, Digits: Integer): Longint;

**Description:** FloatToText converts the floating point variable Value to a string representation and stores it in Buffer. The conversion is governed by format, Precision and Digits. more information on these parameters can be found in FloatToStrF (419). Buffer should point to enough space to hold the result. No checking on this is performed.

The result is the number of characters that was copied in Buffer.

Errors: None.

See also: FloatToStr (419), FloatToStrF (419)

---

**Program** Example68;

*{ This program demonstrates the FloatToStrF function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Const** Fmt : **Array** [ TFloatFormat ] **of string** [10] =  
('general', 'exponent', 'fixed', 'number', 'Currency');

**Procedure** Testit (Value : Extended);

**Var** I, J : longint;  
FF : TFloatFormat;  
S : ShortString;

**begin**

For I:=5 to 15 do

For J:=1 to 4 do

For FF:=ffgeneral to ffcurrency do

begin

Write ( Value, '( Prec: ', I:2, ', Dig: ', J, ', fmt: ', Fmt[ ff ], ') : ' );

SetLength(S, FloatToText (@S[1], Value, FF, I, J));

WriteLn (S);

Write (- Value, '( Prec: ', I:2, ', Dig: ', J, ', fmt: ', Fmt[ ff ], ') : ' );

SetLength(S, FloatToText (@S[1], - Value, FF, I, J));

WriteLn (S);

end;

**end;**

**Begin**

Testit (1.1);

Testit (1.1 E1);

Testit (1.1 E-1);

```
Testit (1.1 E5);  
Testit (1.1 E-5);  
Testit (1.1 E10);  
Testit (1.1 E-10);  
Testit (1.1 E15);  
Testit (1.1 E-15);  
Testit (1.1 E100);  
Testit (1.1 E-100);  
End.
```

---

## FmtStr

**Declaration:** Procedure (Var Res: String; Const Fmt : String; Const args: Array of const);

**Description:** FmtStr calls Format (422) with Fmt and Args as arguments, and stores the result in Res. For more information on how the resulting string is composed, see Format (422).

**Errors:** In case of error, a EConvertError exception is raised.

See also: Format (422), FormatBuf (427).

---

```
Program Example70;  
  
{ This program demonstrates the FmtStr function }  
  
Uses sysutils;  
  
Var S : AnsiString;  
  
Begin  
  S:= '';  
  FmtStr (S,'For some nice examples of fomattting see %s.',[ 'Format' ]);  
  Writeln (S);  
End.
```

---

## Format

**Declaration:** Function Format(Const Fmt : String; const Args : Array of const) : String;

**Description:** Format replaces all placeholders in Fmt with the arguments passed in Args and returns the resulting string. A placeholder looks as follows:

'%' [Index':''] ['-' ] [Width] ['.' Precision] ArgType

elements between single quotes must be typed as shown without the quotes, and elements between square brackets [ ] are optional. The meaning of the different elements is shown below:

'%' starts the placeholder. If you want to insert a literal % character, then you must insert two of them : %%.

**Index ':'** takes the Index-th element in the argument array as the element to insert.

**'-'** tells Format to left-align the inserted text. The default behaviour is to right-align inserted text. This can only take effect if the Width element is also specified.

**Width**the inserted string must have at least have `Width` characters. If not, the inserted string will be padded with spaces. By default, the string is left-padded, resulting in a right-aligned string. This behaviour can be changed by the `'-'` character.

**.' Precision**Indicates the precision to be used when converting the argument. The exact meaning of this parameter depends on `ArgType`.

The `Index`, `Width` and `Precision` parameters can be replaced by `*`, in which case their value will be read from the next element in the `Args` array. This value must be an integer, or an `EConvertError` exception will be raised.

The argument type is determined from `ArgType`. It can have one of the following values (case insensitive):

**D**Decimal format. The next argument in the `Args` array should be an integer. The argument is converted to a decimal string,. If precision is specified, then the string will have at least `Precision` digits in it. If needed, the string is (left) padded with zeroes.

**E**scientific format. The next argument in the `Args` array should be a Floating point value. The argument is converted to a decimal string using scientific notation, using `FloatToStrF` (419), where the optional precision is used to specify the total number of decimals. (default a value of 15 is used). The exponent is formatted using maximally 3 digits.

In short, the `E` specifier formats it's argument as follows:

```
FloatToStrF(Argument, ffExponent, Precision, 3)
```

**F**fixed point format. The next argument in the `Args` array should be a floating point value. The argument is converted to a decimal string, using fixed notation (see `FloatToStrF` (419)). `Precision` indicates the number of digits following the decimal point.

In short, the `F` specifier formats it's argument as follows:

```
FloatToStrF(Argument, ffFixed, fixed, 9999, Precision)
```

**G**General number format. The next argument in the `Args` array should be a floating point value. The argument is converted to a decimal string using fixed point notation or scientific notation, depending on which gives the shortest result. `Precision` is used to determine the number of digits after the decimal point.

In short, the `G` specifier formats it's argument as follows:

```
FloatToStrF(Argument, ffGeneral, Precision, 3)
```

**M**Currency format. the next argument in the `varArgs` array must be a floating point value. The argument is converted to a decimal string using currency notation. This means that fixed-point notation is used, but that the currency symbol is appended. If precision is specified, then then it overrides the `CurrencyDecimals` global variable used in the `FloatToStrF` (419)

In short, the `M` specifier formats it's argument as follows:

```
FloatToStrF(Argument, ffCurrency, 9999, Precision)
```

**N**Number format. This is the same as fixed point format, except that thousand separators are inserted in the resulting string.

**P**Pointer format. The next argument in the `Args` array must be a pointer (typed or untyped). The pointer value is converted to a string of length 8, representing the hexadecimal value of the pointer.

**S**String format. The next argument in the `Args` array must be a string. The argument is simply copied to the result string. If `Precision` is specified, then only `Precision` characters are copied to the result string.



**X**hexadecimal format. The next argument in the *Args* array must be an integer. The argument is converted to a hexadecimal string with just enough characters to contain the value of the integer. If *Precision* is specified then the resulting hexadecimal representation will have at least *Precision* characters in it (with a maximum value of 32).

**Errors:** In case of error, an *EConversionError* exception is raised. Possible errors are:

- 1.Errors in the format specifiers.
- 2.The next argument is not of the type needed by a specifier.
- 3.The number of arguments is not sufficient for all format specifiers.

See also: *FormatBuf* (427)

---

```
Program example71;

{$mode objfpc}

{ This program demonstrates the Format function }

Uses sysutils;

Var P : Pointer;
    fmt,S : string;

Procedure TestInteger;

begin
  Try
    Fmt:='[%d]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[10]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:='[%%]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[10]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:='[%10d]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[10]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    fmt:='[%.4d]'; S:=Format ( fmt,[10]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:='[%10.4d]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[10]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:='[%0:d]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[10]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:='[%0:10d]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[10]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:='[%0:10.4d]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[10]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:='[%0:-10d]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[10]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:='[%0:-10.4d]'; S:=Format ( fmt,[10]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:='[%-*.d]'; S:=Format ( fmt,[4,5,10]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
  except
    On E : Exception do
      begin
        Writeln ( 'Exception caught : ',E.Message);
      end;
    end;
  writeln ( 'Press enter');
  readln;
end;

Procedure TestHexaDecimal;

begin
  try
    Fmt:='[%x]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[10]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:='[%10x]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[10]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:='[%10.4x]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[10]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:='[%0:x]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[10]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
```

```

    Fmt:='[%0:10x]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[10]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[%0:10.4x]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[10]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[%0:-10x]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[10]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[%0:-10.4x]'; S:=Format ( fmt,[10]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[%-*.*x]'; S:=Format ( fmt,[4,5,10]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
except
  On E : Exception do
    begin
      Writeln ( 'Exception caught : ',E.Message);
    end;
end;
writeln ( 'Press enter');
readln;
end;

Procedure TestPointer;

begin
  P:=Pointer (1234567);
  try
    Fmt:='[0 x%p]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[ P]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[0 x%10p]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[ P]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[0 x%10.4p]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[ P]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[0 x%0:p]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[ P]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[0 x%0:10p]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[ P]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[0 x%0:10.4p]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[ P]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[0 x%0:-10p]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[ P]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[0 x%0:-10.4p]'; S:=Format ( fmt,[ P]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[%-*.*p]'; S:=Format ( fmt,[4,5, P]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
  except
    On E : Exception do
      begin
        Writeln ( 'Exception caught : ',E.Message);
      end;
    end;
  end;
  writeln ( 'Press enter');
  readln;
end;

Procedure TestString;

begin
  try
    Fmt:='[%s]'; S:=Format(fmt,[' This is a string ']); Writeln (fmt:12, '=> ', s);
    fmt:='[%0:s]'; s:=Format(fmt,[' This is a string ']); Writeln (fmt:12, '=> ', s);
    fmt:='[%0:18s]'; s:=Format(fmt,[' This is a string ']); Writeln (fmt:12, '=> ', s);
    fmt:='[%0:-18s]'; s:=Format(fmt,[' This is a string ']); Writeln (fmt:12, '=> ', s);
    fmt:='[%0:18.12s]'; s:=Format(fmt,[' This is a string ']); Writeln (fmt:12, '=> ', s);
    fmt:='[%-*.*s]'; s:=Format(fmt,[18,12, ' This is a string ']); Writeln (fmt:12, '=> ', s);
  except
    On E : Exception do
      begin
        Writeln ( 'Exception caught : ',E.Message);
      end;
    end;
  end;
  writeln ( 'Press enter');
  readln;
end;

```

**Procedure** TestExponential ;

```
begin
  Try
    Fmt:='[%e]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[%10e]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[%10.4e]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[%0:e]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[%0:10e]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[%0:10.4e]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[%0:-10e]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[%0:-10.4e]'; S:=Format ( fmt,[1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[%-*.e]'; S:=Format ( fmt,[4,5,1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
  except
    On E : Exception do
      begin
        Writeln ( 'Exception caught : ',E.Message);
      end;
    end;
  writeln ( 'Press enter');
  readln;
end;
```

**Procedure** TestNegativeExponential ;

```
begin
  Try
    Fmt:='[%e]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[-1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[%10e]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[-1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[%10.4e]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[-1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[%0:e]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[-1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[%0:10e]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[-1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[%0:10.4e]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[-1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[%0:-10e]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[-1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[%0:-10.4e]'; S:=Format ( fmt,[-1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[%-*.e]'; S:=Format ( fmt,[4,5,-1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
  except
    On E : Exception do
      begin
        Writeln ( 'Exception caught : ',E.Message);
      end;
    end;
  writeln ( 'Press enter');
  readln;
end;
```

**Procedure** TestSmallExponential ;

```
begin
  Try
    Fmt:='[%e]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[%10e]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[%10.4e]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[%0:e]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[%0:10e]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[%0:10.4e]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[%0:-10e]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[0.0123]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
```

```
    Fmt:='[%0:-10.4e]'; S:=Format ( fmt,[0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[%-*.*e]'; S:=Format ( fmt,[4,5,0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
except
  On E : Exception do
    begin
      Writeln ( 'Exception caught : ',E.Message);
    end;
end;
writeln ( 'Press enter');
readln;
end;

Procedure TestSmallNegExponential;

begin
  Try
    Fmt:='[%e]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[-0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[%10e]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[-0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[%10.4e]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[-0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[%0:e]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[-0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[%0:10e]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[-0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[%0:10.4e]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[-0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[%0:-10e]'; S:=Format ( Fmt,[-0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[%0:-10.4e]'; S:=Format ( fmt,[-0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:='[%-*.*e]'; S:=Format ( fmt,[4,5,-0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
  except
    On E : Exception do
      begin
        Writeln ( 'Exception caught : ',E.Message);
      end;
    end;
    writeln ( 'Press enter');
    readln;
  end;

  begin
    TestInteger;
    TestHexadecimal;
    TestPointer;
    TestExponential;
    TestNegativeExponential;
    TestSmallExponential;
    TestSmallNegExponential;
  end.
```

---

## FormatBuf

Declaration: `Function FormatBuf(Var Buffer; BufLen : Cardinal; Const Fmt; fmtLen : Cardinal; Const Args : Array of const) : Cardinal;`

Description: `Format`

Errors:

See also:

---

**Program** Example72;

```
{ This program demonstrates the FormatBuf function }

Uses sysutils;

Var
  S : ShortString;

Const
  Fmt : ShortString = 'For some nice examples of fomatting see %s.';

Begin
  S:= '';
  SetLength (S, FormatBuf (S[1],255, Fmt[1], Length(Fmt),[ 'Format' ]));
  WriteLn (S);
End.
```

---

## IntToHex

Declaration: `Function IntToHex(Value: integer; Digits: integer): string;`

Description: `IntToHex` converts `Value` to a hexadecimal string representation. The result will contain at least `Digits` characters. If `Digits` is less than the needed number of characters, the string will NOT be truncated. If `Digits` is larger than the needed number of characters, the result is padded with zeroes.

Errors: None.

See also: `IntToStr` (428), `StrToInt`

---

```
Program Example73;

{ This program demonstrates the IntToHex function }

Uses sysutils;

Var I : longint;

Begin
  For I:=0 to 31 do
    begin
      WriteLn ( IntToHex(1 shl I,8));
      WriteLn ( IntToHex(15 shl I,8))
    end;
End.
```

---

## IntToStr

Declaration: `Function IntToStr(Value: integer): string;`

Description: `IntToStr` coverts `Value` to it's string representation. The resulting string has only as much characters as needed to represent the value. If the value is negative a minus sign is prepended to the string.

Errors: None.

See also: [IntToHex \(428\)](#), [StrToInt \(433\)](#)

---

```
Program Example74;

{ This program demonstrates the IntToStr function }

Uses sysutils;

Var I : longint;

Begin
  For I:=0 to 31 do
    begin
      WriteLn ( IntToStr(1 shl I));
      WriteLn ( IntToStr(15 shl I));
    end;
End.
```

---

### IsValidIdent

**Declaration:** `Function IsValidIdent(const Ident: string): boolean;`

**Description:** IsValidIdent returns True if Ident can be used as a component name. It returns False otherwise. Ident must consist of a letter or underscore, followed by a combination of letters, numbers or underscores to be a valid identifier.

**Errors:** None.

See also:

---

```
Program Example75;

{ This program demonstrates the IsValidIdent function }

Uses sysutils;

Procedure Testit (S : String);

begin
  Write ( ''' ,S, ' is ' );
  If not IsValidIdent(S) then
    Write('NOT ');
  WriteLn ( 'a valid identifier ' );
end;

Begin
  Testit ( '_MyObj' );
  Testit ( 'My__Obj1' );
  Testit ( 'My_1_Obj' );
  Testit ( '1 MyObject' );
  Testit ( 'My@Object' );
  Testit ( 'M123' );
End.
```

---

### LeftStr

Declaration: `Function LeftStr(const S: string; Count: integer): string;`

Description: `LeftStr` returns the `Count` leftmost characters of `S`. It is equivalent to a call to `Copy ( S , 1 , Count )`.

Errors: None.

See also: `RightStr` (431), `TrimLeft` (435), `TrimRight` (435), `Trim` (434)

---

**Program** Example76;

*{ This program demonstrates the LeftStr function }*

**Uses** sysutils ;

**Begin**

**WriteLn** ( LeftStr ( ' abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz ' ,20));

**WriteLn** ( LeftStr ( ' abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz ' ,15));

**WriteLn** ( LeftStr ( ' abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz ' ,1));

**WriteLn** ( LeftStr ( ' abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz ' ,200));

**End.**

---

### LoadStr

Declaration: `Function LoadStr(Ident: integer): string;`

Description: This function is not yet implemented. resources are not yet supported.

Errors:

See also:

### LowerCase

Declaration: `Function LowerCase(const s: string): string;`

Description: `LowerCase` returns the lowercase equivalent of `S`. Ansi characters are not taken into account, only ASCII codes below 127 are converted. It is completely equivalent to the lowercase function of the system unit, and is provided for compatibility only.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiLowerCase` (409), `UpperCase` (436), `AnsiUpperCase` (414)

---

**Program** Example77;

*{ This program demonstrates the LowerCase function }*

**Uses** sysutils ;

**Begin**

**WriteLn** ( **LowerCase**( ' THIS WILL COME out all LoWeRcAsE !' ));

**End.**

---

## NewStr

Declaration: `Function NewStr(const S: string): PString;`

Description: `NewStr` assigns a new dynamic string on the heap, copies `S` into it, and returns a pointer to the newly assigned string.

This function is obsolete, and shouldn't be used any more. The `AnsiString` mechanism also allocates anisstrings on the heap, and should be preferred over this mechanism.

Errors: If not enough memory is present, an `EOutOfMemory` exception will be raised.

See also: `AssignStr` (415), `DisposeStr` (418)

For an example, see `AssignStr` (415).

## QuotedStr

Declaration: `Function QuotedStr(const S: string): string;`

Description: `QuotedStr` returns the string `S`, quoted with single quotes. This means that `S` is enclosed in single quotes, and every single quote in `S` is doubled. It is equivalent to a call to `AnsiQuotedStr(s, '"')`.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiQuotedStr` (409), `AnsiExtractQuotedStr` (408).

---

**Program** Example78;

*{ This program demonstrates the QuotedStr function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** S : AnsiString;

**Begin**

S:='He said ' ' Hello ' ' and walked on';

**Writeln** (S);

**Writeln** ( ' becomes' );

**Writeln** ( QuotedStr(S));

**End.**

---

## RightStr

Declaration: `Function RightStr(const S: string; Count: integer): string;`

Description: `RightStr` returns the `Count` rightmost characters of `S`. It is equivalent to a call to `Copy(S, Length(S)+1-Count, Count)`.

If `Count` is larger than the actual length of `S` only the real length will be used.

Errors: None.

See also: `LeftStr` (430), `Trim` (434), `TrimLeft` (435), `TrimRight` (435)



---

**Program** Example79;

*{ This program demonstrates the RightStr function }*

**Uses** sysutils ;

**Begin**

**Writeln** ( RightStr ( ' abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz ',20));

**Writeln** ( RightStr ( ' abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz ',15));

**Writeln** ( RightStr ( ' abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz ',1));

**Writeln** ( RightStr ( ' abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz ',200));

**End.**

---

## StrFmt

**Declaration:** Function StrFmt(Buffer,Fmt : PChar; Const args: Array of const) : PChar;

**Description:** StrFmt will format fmt with Args, as the **Format** (422) function does, and it will store the result in Buffer. The function returns Buffer. Buffer should point to enough space to contain the whole result.

**Errors:** for a list of errors, see **Format** (422).

See also: StrLFmt (432), FmtStr (422), Format (422), FormatBuf (427)

---

**Program** Example80;

*{ This program demonstrates the StrFmt function }*

**Uses** sysutils ;

**Var** S : AnsiString ;

**Begin**

SetLength (S,80);

**Writeln** ( **StrFmt** (@S[1], 'For some nice examples of fomatting see %s.', ['Format']));

**End.**

---

## StrLFmt

**Declaration:** Function StrLFmt(Buffer : PChar; Maxlen : Cardinal;Fmt : PChar; Const args: Array of const) : PChar;

**Description:** StrLFmt will format fmt with Args, as the **Format** (422) function does, and it will store maximally Maxlen characters of the result in Buffer. The function returns Buffer. Buffer should point to enough space to contain MaxLen characters.

**Errors:** for a list of errors, see **Format** (422).

See also: StrFmt (432), FmtStr (422), Format (422), FormatBuf (427)

---

```
Program Example80;

{ This program demonstrates the StrFmt function }

Uses sysutils;

Var S : AnsiString;

Begin
  SetLength(S,80);
  Writeln ( StrLFmt (@S[1],80, 'For some nice examples of fomattng see %s.',[ 'Format' ]));
End.
```

---

### StrToInt

**Declaration:** Function StrToInt(const s: string): integer;

**Description:** StrToInt will convert the string Sto an integer. If the string contains invalid characters or has an invalid format, then an EConvertError is raised.

To be successfully converted, a string can contain a combination of numerical characters, possibly preceded by a minus sign (-). Spaces are not allowed.

**Errors:** In case of error, an EConvertError is raised.

See also: IntToStr (428), StrToIntDef (433)

---

```
Program Example82;

{$mode objfpc}

{ This program demonstrates the StrToInt function }

Uses sysutils;

Begin
  Writeln ( StrToInt ('1234'));
  Writeln ( StrToInt ('-1234'));
  Writeln ( StrToInt ('0'));
  Try
    Writeln ( StrToInt ('12345678901234567890'));
  except
    On E : EConvertError do
      Writeln ( 'Invalid number encountered');
  end;
End.
```

---

### StrToIntDef

**Declaration:** Function StrToIntDef(const S: string; Default: integer): integer;

**Description:** StrToIntDef will convert a string to an integer. If the string contains invalid characters or has an invalid format, then Default is returned.

To be successfully converted, a string can contain a combination of numerical characters, possibly preceded by a minus sign (-). Spaces are not allowed.

Errors: None.

See also: `IntToStr` (428), `StrToInt` (433)

---

```
Program Example82;

{$mode objfpc}

{ This program demonstrates the StrToInt function }

Uses sysutils;

Begin
  Writeln ( StrToIntDef ('1234',0));
  Writeln ( StrToIntDef ('-1234',0));
  Writeln ( StrToIntDef ('0',0));
  Try
    Writeln ( StrToIntDef ('12345678901234567890',0));
  except
    On E : EConvertError do
      Writeln ( 'Invalid number encountered' );
  end;
End.
```

---

## Trim

Declaration: `Function Trim(const S: string): string;`

Description: `Trim` strips blank characters (spaces) at the beginning and end of `S` and returns the resulting string. Only #32 characters are stripped.

If the string contains only spaces, an empty string is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TrimLeft` (435), `TrimRight` (435)

---

```
Program Example84;

{ This program demonstrates the Trim function }

Uses sysutils;
{$H+}

Procedure Testit ( S : String );

begin
  Writeln ( ''' , Trim(S), ''' );
end;

Begin
  Testit ( ' ha ha what gets lost ? ' );
  Testit ( #10#13 'haha ' );
  Testit ( '          ' );
End.
```

---

## TrimLeft

Declaration: `Function TrimLeft(const S: string): string;`

Description: `TrimLeft` strips blank characters (spaces) at the beginning of `S` and returns the resulting string. Only #32 characters are stripped.

If the string contains only spaces, an empty string is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `Trim` (434), `TrimRight` (435)

---

**Program** Example85;

*{ This program demonstrates the TrimLeft function }*

**Uses** sysutils;  
{ \$H+ }

**Procedure** Testit ( S : String );

**begin**  
    **WriteLn** ( '' , TrimLeft(S), '' );  
**end**;

**Begin**  
    Testit ( ' ha ha what gets lost ? ' );  
    Testit ( #10#13'haha ' );  
    Testit ( ' ' );

**End.**

---

## TrimRight

Declaration: `Function TrimRight(const S: string): string;`

Description: `Trim` strips blank characters (spaces) at the end of `S` and returns the resulting string. Only #32 characters are stripped.

If the string contains only spaces, an empty string is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `Trim` (434), `TrimLeft` (435)

---

**Program** Example86;

*{ This program demonstrates the TrimRight function }*

**Uses** sysutils;  
{ \$H+ }

**Procedure** Testit ( S : String );

**begin**  
    **WriteLn** ( '' , TrimRight(S), '' );  
**end**;

**Begin**

```
Testit ( '  ha ha what gets lost ? ' );  
Testit (#10#13'haha ' );  
Testit ( '          ' );
```

**End.**

---

**UpperCase**

Declaration: `Function UpperCase(const s: string): string;`

Description: `UpperCase` returns the uppercase equivalent of `S`. Ansi characters are not taken into account, only ASCII codes below 127 are converted. It is completely equivalent to the `UpCase` function of the system unit, and is provided for compatibility only.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiLowerCase` (409), `LowerCase` (430), `AnsiUpperCase` (414)

Errors:

See also:

---

**Program** Example87;

*{ This program demonstrates the UpperCase function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Begin**

```
WriteLn ( UpperCase('this will come OUT ALL uPpErCaSe !' ));
```

**End.**

---

# Index

Abstract, 283  
Accept, 344, 346  
Access, 168  
AddDisk, 41  
AddDisk (Linux only), 386  
AdjustLineBreaks, 405  
Alarm, 169  
allocate\_ldt\_descriptors, 81  
allocate\_memory\_block, 83  
AnsiCompareStr, 406  
AnsiCompareText, 407  
AnsiExtractQuotedStr, 408  
AnsiLastChar, 408  
AnsiLowerCase, 409  
AnsiQuotedStr, 409  
AnsiStrComp, 409  
AnsiStrlComp, 410  
AnsiStrLastChar, 411  
AnsiStrLComp, 412  
AnsiStrLIComp, 412  
AnsiStrLower, 413  
AnsiStrUpper, 414  
AnsiUpperCase, 414  
AppendStr, 415  
Arc, 115  
arccos, 238  
arcosh, 238  
arcsin, 239  
arctan2, 240  
arsinh, 240  
artanh, 241  
AssignCrt, 26  
AssignLst, 341  
AssignPipe, 169  
AssignStr, 415  
AssignStream, 170  
  
Bar, 115  
Bar3D, 115  
BaseName, 172  
BCDToInt, 416  
Bind, 346, 347  
  
ceil, 241  
CFMakeRaw, 172  
  
CFSetISpeed, 173  
CFSetOSpeed, 173  
ChangeFileExt, 389  
Chmod, 174  
Chown, 173  
Circle, 116  
ClearDevice, 116  
ClearViewPort, 116  
Clone, 175  
CloseDir, 176  
CloseGraph, 116  
ClrEol, 27  
ClrScr, 28  
CompareMem, 416  
CompareStr, 417  
CompareText, 418  
Connect, 347, 348  
copyfromdos, 83  
copytodos, 84  
cosh, 242  
cotan, 242  
create\_code\_segment\_alias\_descriptor, 84  
CreateDir, 386  
CreateShellArgV, 176  
CursorBig, 27  
CursorOff, 28  
CursorOn, 28  
cycletorad, 242  
  
Date, 373  
DateTimeToFileDate, 373  
DateTimeToStr, 374  
DateTimeToString, 374  
DateTimeToSystemTime, 375  
DateTimeToTimeStamp, 375  
DateToStr, 376  
DayOfWeek, 376  
DecodeDate, 377  
DecodeTime, 377  
degtograd, 243  
degtorad, 243  
Delay, 28  
DeleteFile, 389  
DellLine, 29  
DetectGraph, 116

DirName, 177  
disable, 84  
DiskFree, 42, 387  
DiskSize, 42, 387  
DisposeStr, 283, 418  
DoDirSeparators, 390  
DosExitCode, 43  
dosmemfillchar, 85  
dosmemfillword, 86  
dosmemget, 86  
dosmemmove, 86  
dosmemput, 87  
DosVersion, 43  
DrawPoly, 117  
DumpHeap, 135  
Dup, 178  
Dup2, 178  
dx\_load, 56  
  
Ellipse, 117  
Emms, 268  
enable, 87  
EncodeDate, 378  
EncodeTime, 378  
EnvCount, 44  
EnvStr, 44  
EpochToLocal, 179  
Exec, 45  
Execl, 180  
Execl, 180  
Execlp, 181  
Execv, 182  
Execve, 183  
Execvp, 184  
ExpandFileName, 390  
ExpandUNCFileName, 391  
ExtractFileDir, 391  
ExtractFileDrive, 392  
ExtractFileExt, 392  
ExtractFileName, 392  
ExtractFilePath, 392  
ExtractRelativePath, 393  
  
Fcntl, 193, 194  
FD\_Clr, 185  
FD\_IsSet, 185  
FD\_Set, 185  
FD\_ZERO, 184  
fdClose, 185  
fdFlush, 186  
fdOpen, 186  
fdRead, 187  
fdSeek, 188  
fdTruncate, 188  
  
fdWrite, 189  
FExpand, 45, 189  
FileAge, 393  
FileClose, 394  
FileCreate, 394  
FileDateToDateTime, 379  
FileExists, 395  
FileGetAttr, 395  
FileGetDate, 396  
FileOpen, 397  
FileRead, 397  
FileSearch, 398  
FileSeek, 398  
FileSetAttr (Not on Linux), 399  
FileSetDate (Not on Linux), 399  
FileTruncate, 399  
FileWrite, 400  
FillEllipse, 117  
FillPoly, 117  
FindClose, 45, 400  
FindFirst, 46, 400  
FindNext, 47, 401  
FloatToStr, 419  
FloatToStrF, 419  
FloatToText, 421  
FLock, 189  
FloodFill, 117  
floor, 244  
FmtStr, 422  
FNMatch, 190  
Fork, 194  
Format, 422  
FormatBuf, 427  
FormatDateTime, 379  
free\_ldt\_descriptor, 87  
free\_memory\_block, 87  
free\_rm\_callback, 88  
FRename, 194  
frexp, 244  
FSearch, 47, 190  
FSplit, 47, 191  
FSSStat, 191  
FStat, 192  
ftok, 143  
  
get\_cs, 88  
get\_descriptor\_access\_rights, 88  
get\_ds, 88  
get\_linear\_addr, 89  
get\_meminfo, 89  
get\_next\_selector\_increment\_value, 90  
get\_page\_size, 90  
get\_pm\_interrupt, 90  
get\_rm\_callback, 91

---

get\_rm\_interrupt, 94  
get\_run\_mode, 94  
get\_segment\_base\_address, 95  
get\_segment\_limit, 95  
get\_ss, 95  
GetArcCoords, 118  
GetAspectRatio, 118  
GetBkColor, 118  
GetCBreak, 48  
GetColor, 118  
GetCurrentDir, 388  
GetDate, 48, 195  
GetDateTime, 196  
GetDefaultPalette, 118  
GetDirs, 401  
GetDomainName, 196  
GetDriverName, 118  
GetEGid, 196  
GetEnv, 49, 197  
GetEpochTime, 198  
GetEUid, 197  
GetFAttr, 49  
GetFillPattern, 119  
GetFillSettings, 119  
GetFS, 198  
GetFTime, 50  
GetGid, 199  
GetGraphMode, 119  
GetHostName, 199  
GetImage, 119  
GetIntVec, 51  
GetLastButtonPress, 270  
GetLastButtonRelease, 271  
GetLineSettings, 119  
GetLocalTimezone, 200  
GetLongName, 51  
GetLongOpts, 60  
GetMaxColor, 119  
GetMaxMode, 120  
GetMaxX, 120  
GetMaxY, 120  
GetModeName, 120  
GetModeRange, 120  
GetMouseState, 271  
Getopt, 60  
GetPalette, 121  
GetPaletteSize, 121  
GetPeerName, 349  
GetPid, 200  
GetPixel, 121  
GetPPid, 200  
GetPriority, 201  
GetShortName, 51  
GetSocketName, 349  
GetSocketOptions, 350  
GetTextSettings, 121  
GetTime, 51, 201  
GetTimeOfDay, 202  
GetTimezoneFile, 202  
GetUid, 202  
GetVerify, 52  
GetViewSettings, 121  
GetX, 121  
GetY, 122  
Glob, 203  
global\_dos\_alloc, 96  
global\_dos\_free, 97  
GlobFree, 203  
GotoXY, 29  
Gpm\_AnyDouble, 65  
Gpm\_AnySingle, 66  
Gpm\_AnyTriple, 66  
Gpm\_Close, 66  
Gpm\_FitValues, 66  
Gpm\_FitValuesM, 66  
Gpm\_GetEvent, 67  
Gpm\_GetLibVersion, 68  
Gpm\_GetServerVersion, 68  
Gpm\_GetSnapshot, 68  
Gpm\_LowerRoi, 69  
Gpm\_Open, 69  
Gpm\_PopRoi, 69  
Gpm\_PushRoi, 69  
Gpm\_RaiseRoi, 70  
Gpm\_Repeat, 70  
Gpm\_StrictDouble, 70  
Gpm\_StrictSingle, 70  
Gpm\_StrictTriple, 71  
gradtodeg, 245  
gradtorad, 245  
GraphDefaults, 122  
GraphErrorMsg, 122  
GraphResult, 122  
  
HideMouse, 272  
HighVideo, 30  
hypot, 246  
  
ImageSize, 123  
IncMonth, 380  
InitGraph, 123  
InitMouse, 273  
inportb, 97  
inportl, 97  
inportw, 98  
InsLine, 30  
InstallUserDriver, 123  
InstallUserFont, 124



intpower, 246  
Intr, 52  
IntToHex, 428  
IntToStr, 428  
IOctl, 204  
IOperm, 204  
IsATTY, 205  
IsLeapYear, 380  
IsValidIdent, 429  
  
Keep, 52  
KeyPressed, 31  
Kill, 207  
  
ldexp, 247  
LeftStr, 430  
Line, 124  
LineRel, 124  
LineTo, 124  
Link, 208  
Listen, 350  
lnxp1, 247  
LoadStr, 430  
LocalToEpoch, 210  
lock\_code, 98  
lock\_data, 98  
lock\_linear\_region, 99  
log10, 248  
log2, 248  
logn, 249  
LongDiv, 285  
LongMul, 285  
LowerCase, 430  
LowVideo, 31  
LPressed, 273  
LStat, 207  
  
MarkHeap, 135  
max, 249  
maxIntValue, 250  
maxvalue, 250  
mean, 251  
meanandstddev, 252  
min, 253  
minIntValue, 253  
minvalue, 254  
MkFifo, 210  
MMap, 210  
momentskewkurtosis, 255  
MoveRel, 124  
MoveTo, 125  
MPressed, 274  
MSDos, 53  
MSecsToTimeStamp, 381  
  
msgctl, 144  
msgget, 143  
msgrcv, 144  
msgsnd, 143  
MUnMap, 212  
  
NewStr, 282, 431  
Nice, 212  
norm, 255  
NormVideo, 32  
NoSound, 32  
Now, 381  
npxsetup, 58  
  
Octal, 213  
OpenDir, 213  
outportb, 99  
outportl, 99  
outportw, 100  
OutText, 125  
OutTextXY, 125  
  
PackTime, 53  
pause, 214  
PClose, 214  
PieSlice, 125  
POpen, 215  
popnstddev, 256  
popnvariance, 257  
power, 257  
PutImage, 125  
PutPixel, 126  
  
QuotedStr, 431  
  
radtocytle, 258  
radtodeg, 258  
radtograd, 259  
randg, 259  
ReadDir, 216  
ReadKey, 33  
ReadLink, 216  
ReadPort, 217  
ReadPortB, 217  
ReadPortL, 217  
ReadPortW, 218  
ReadTimezoneFile, 218  
realintr, 100  
Rectangle, 126  
Recv, 351  
RegisterBGIDriver, 126  
RegisterBGIFont, 126  
RegisterObjects, 283  
RegisterType, 283  
RemoveDir, 388

---

RenameFile, 402  
RestoreCRTMode, 126  
RightStr, 431  
RPressed, 274  
  
S\_ISBLK, 205  
S\_ISCHR, 205  
S\_ISDIR, 205  
S\_ISFIFO, 205  
S\_ISLNK, 206  
S\_ISREG, 206  
S\_ISSOCK, 206  
Sector, 127  
SeekDir, 218  
seg\_fillchar, 101  
seg\_fillword, 101  
seg\_move, 102  
segment\_to\_descriptor, 102  
Select, 219  
SelectText, 220  
semctl, 148  
semget, 147  
semop, 147  
Send, 351  
set\_descriptor\_access\_rights, 102  
set\_pm\_interrupt, 103  
set\_rm\_interrupt, 104  
set\_segment\_base\_address, 104  
set\_segment\_limit, 104  
SetActivePage, 127  
SetAllPalette, 127  
SetAspectRatio, 127  
SetBkColor, 127  
SetCBreak, 54  
SetColor, 128  
SetCurrentDir, 388  
SetDate, 54  
SetDirSeparators, 402  
SetExtraInfo, 136  
SetFAttr, 54  
SetFillPattern, 128  
SetFillStyle, 128  
SetFTime, 54  
SetGraphBufSize, 128  
SetGraphMode, 129  
SetHeapTraceOutput, 137  
SetIntVec, 55  
SetLineStyle, 129  
SetMouseAscii, 274  
SetMouseHideWindow, 275  
SetMousePos, 275  
SetMouseShape, 276  
SetMouseSpeed, 277  
SetMouseWindow, 277  
  
SetMouseXRange, 278  
SetMouseYRange, 278  
SetPalette, 129  
SetPriority, 220  
SetRGBPalette, 129  
SetSocketOptions, 352  
SetTextJustify, 130  
SetTextStyle, 130  
SetTime, 55  
SetUserCharSize, 130  
SetVerify, 55  
SetViewPort, 131  
SetVisualPage, 131  
SetWriteMode, 131  
Shell, 220  
shmat, 153  
shmctl, 153  
shmdt, 153  
shmget, 152  
ShowMouse, 278  
Shutdown, 352  
SigAction, 221  
Signal, 224  
SigPending, 222  
SigProcMask, 222  
SigRaise, 223  
SigSuspend, 223  
sincos, 260  
sinh, 261  
Sock2File, 352  
Sock2Text, 353  
Socket, 353  
SocketPair, 353  
Sound, 33  
stddev, 261  
Str2UnixSockAddr, 353  
StrAlloc, 354, 404  
StrBufSize, 404  
StrCat, 354  
StrComp, 355  
StrCopy, 355  
StrDispose, 356, 404  
StrECopy, 356  
StrEnd, 357  
StrFmt, 432  
StrIComp, 357  
StringToPPchar, 224  
StrLCat, 358  
StrLComp, 358  
StrLCopy, 359  
StrLen, 359  
StrLFmt, 432  
StrLIComp, 360  
StrLower, 360

---

StrMove, 361  
StrNew, 361  
StrPas, 362, 405  
StrPCopy, 362, 405  
StrPLCopy, 405  
StrPos, 363  
StrRScan, 363  
StrScan, 363  
StrToDate, 382  
StrToDateTime, 382  
StrToInt, 433  
StrToIntDef, 433  
StrToTime, 383  
StrUpper, 364  
sum, 262  
sumofsquares, 262  
sumsandsquares, 263  
SwapVectors, 55  
SymLink, 225  
SysInfo, 226  
SystemTimeToDateTime, 384  
  
tan, 264  
tanh, 264  
tb\_size, 105  
TBufStream.Close, 305  
TBufStream.Done, 304  
TBufStream.Flush, 305  
TBufStream.Init, 304  
TBufStream.Open, 306  
TBufStream.Read, 306  
TBufStream.Seek, 306  
TBufStream.Truncate, 306  
TBufStream.Write, 307  
TCDrain, 227  
TCFlow, 227  
TCFlush, 228  
TCGetAttr, 228  
TCGetPGrp, 229  
TCollection.At, 311  
TCollection.AtDelete, 319  
TCollection.AtFree, 318  
TCollection.AtInsert, 322  
TCollection.AtPut, 321  
TCollection.Delete, 318  
TCollection.DeleteAll, 316  
TCollection.Done, 311  
TCollection.Error, 321  
TCollection.FirstThat, 314  
TCollection.ForEach, 320  
TCollection.Free, 317  
TCollection.FreeAll, 315  
TCollection.FreeItem, 319  
TCollection.GetItem, 313  
TCollection.IndexOf, 312  
TCollection.Init, 310  
TCollection.Insert, 317  
TCollection.LastThat, 313  
TCollection.Load, 310  
TCollection.Pack, 314  
TCollection.PutItem, 323  
TCollection.SetLimit, 321  
TCollection.Store, 322  
TCSendBreak, 229  
TCSetAttr, 229  
TCSetPGrp, 230  
TDateTime, 373  
TDosStream.Close, 300  
TDosStream.Done, 300  
TDosStream.Init, 300  
TDosStream.Open, 302  
TDosStream.Read, 303  
TDosStream.Seek, 301  
TDosStream.Truncate, 301  
TDosStream.Write, 303  
TellDir, 230  
TextBackground, 33  
TextColor, 34  
TextHeight, 131  
TextMode, 34  
TextWidth, 131  
Time, 384  
TimeStampToDateTime, 384  
TimeStampToMsecs, 385  
TimeToStr, 385  
TMemoryStream.Done, 308  
TMemoryStream.Init, 307  
TMemoryStream.Read, 308  
TMemoryStream.Truncate, 308  
TMemoryStream.Write, 309  
TObject.Done, 291  
TObject.Free, 291  
TObject.Init, 290  
totalvariance, 265  
transfer\_buffer, 105  
TRect.Assign, 290  
TRect.Contains, 287  
TRect.Copy, 287  
TRect.Empty, 286  
TRect.Equals, 286  
TRect.Grow, 289  
TRect.Intersect, 288  
TRect.Move, 289  
TRect.Union, 287  
TResourceCollection.FreeItem, 334  
TResourceCollection.GetItem, 333  
TResourceCollection.KeyOf, 333  
TResourceCollection.PutItem, 334

TResourceFile.Count, 335  
TResourceFile.Delete, 336  
TResourceFile.Done, 335  
TResourceFile.Flush, 336  
TResourceFile.Get, 335  
TResourceFile.Init, 335  
TResourceFile.KeyAt, 335  
TResourceFile.Put, 336  
TResourceFile.SwitchTo, 336  
Trim, 434  
TrimLeft, 435  
TrimRight, 435  
TSortedCollection.Compare, 325  
TSortedCollection.IndexOf, 325  
TSortedCollection.Init, 324  
TSortedCollection.Insert, 327  
TSortedCollection.KeyOf, 324  
TSortedCollection.Load, 324  
TSortedCollection.Search, 326  
TSortedCollection.Store, 328  
TStrCollection.Compare, 330  
TStrCollection.FreeItem, 331  
TStrCollection.GetItem, 330  
TStrCollection.PutItem, 331  
TStream.Close, 295  
TStream.CopyFrom, 298  
TStream.Error, 297  
TStream.Flush, 296  
TStream.Get, 292  
TStream.GetPos, 294  
TStream.GetSize, 294  
TStream.Open, 295  
TStream.Put, 296  
TStream.Read, 298  
TStream.ReadStr, 295  
TStream.Reset, 296  
TStream.Seek, 297  
TStream.StrRead, 293  
TStream.StrWrite, 297  
TStream.Truncate, 296  
TStream.Write, 298  
TStream.WriteStr, 297  
TStringCollection.Compare, 329  
TStringCollection.FreeItem, 329  
TStringCollection.GetItem, 328  
TStringCollection.PutItem, 330  
TStringList.Done, 337  
TStringList.Get, 337  
TStringList.Load, 337  
TStrListMaker.Done, 338  
TStrListMaker.Init, 338  
TStrListMaker.Put, 338  
TStrListMaker.Store, 338  
TTYName, 230  
TUnSortedStrCollection.Insert, 332  
Umask, 230  
Uname, 231  
UnLink, 231  
unlock\_code, 105  
unlock\_data, 105  
unlock\_linear\_region, 106  
UnPackTime, 55  
UpperCase, 436  
Utime, 231  
  
variance, 265  
  
WaitPid, 232  
WhereX, 35  
WhereY, 35  
Window, 35  
WritePort, 233  
WritePortB, 233  
WritePortL, 233  
WritePortW, 233